Intermediate
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills





Learn and practise English vocabulary

HRH
The Duke
of Edinburgh
ESU English Language
Book Award 2009

R

Contents

Intr	oduction	5		
Sta	rter unit	7	Daily life	
Lea 1	reviations and symbols Arning I can talk about vocabulary learning I can describe my progress and aims	9 10 12	16 I can describe a range of food 17 I can talk about diets and cooking 18 I can talk about money 19 I can talk about sleep 20 I can talk about injuries 55	4 6 8
2 3 4	I can describe my progress and aims I can understand a learner's dictionary I can talk about English punctuation Review	14 16	21 I can talk about cars and driving 62 22 I can describe travel problems 64 and accidents 23 I can talk about clothes and fashion 62	4
	ople	(4)	Review 70	0
5 6 7 8 9	I can talk about appearance I can talk about character I can describe my feelings I can talk about relationships I can talk about families I can talk about weddings and funerals	20 22 24 26 28 30	Getting things done 24 I can describe a visit to the dentist 25 I can describe hospital procedures 26 I can explain household tasks 27 I can describe housework 28 I can talk to a hairdresser 78	4 6 8
	Review	33	Review 80)
Th	e world around us		Describing things	
11 12 13 14 15	I can describe the universe I can talk about rivers and the sea I can describe the climate I can describe natural disasters I can describe animals and insects Review	36 38 41 44 46 49	29 I can describe urban life 82 30 I can describe parts of a building 84 31 I can describe objects 86 32 I can describe the senses 88 33 I can describe a painting 90 34 I can describe actions 92	1 6 8
			Review 94	Ł

So	ocial and political issues		Social English	
35 36 37 38 39 40	I can describe the justice system I can discuss health issues I can talk about politics I can talk about war and peace	96 98 100 102 104 106	 60 I can explain similarities and differences 61 I can make arrangements to meet 62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes 63 I can give my opinion 64 I can talk about rules 	152 153 154 155 156 158
	Review	107	The state of the s	160 162
M	edia and entertainment		67 I can understand warnings	164 165
41 42 43 44	I can understand newspapers I can talk about films I can talk about art and photography I can talk about music	110 112 114 116	Language	168
45	I can talk about people and places in sport I can describe sporting events	118	69 I can use a range of adjectives 1 70 I can express time and place 1	71
47 48	I can talk about books I can describe festivals	122 124	72 I can use prefixes 1	.76 .78 .80
	Review	126	74 I can use verb patterns 1	82 84
W	ork and study		pater sette committee se configuration and consideration and consi	88
49 50 51	I can get through exams I can describe university life I can apply for a job	129 130 132	Styles of English	00
52 53 54	I can describe jobs I can describe a career I can describe working conditions	134 136 138	78 I can write a formal letter 19	91 94 96
	Review	139	and short forms 80 I can understand American English	98
Bu	siness		Review 20	00
55	I can talk about finance	142	Vocabulary building tables 20	02
	I can talk about companies	144	Answer key 20)3
57 58	I can describe a successful business I can discuss marketing	$\frac{146}{148}$	Answer key to review units 22	23
30		HERETS AND	List of spotlight boxes 23	32
	Review	150	Word list / Index 23	33
			Acknowledgements 25	54

Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

 $Oxford\ Word\ Skills$ is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000TM, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. don't bother, I haven't a clue, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. a filling at the dentist's.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

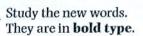
- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while
 you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can
 use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

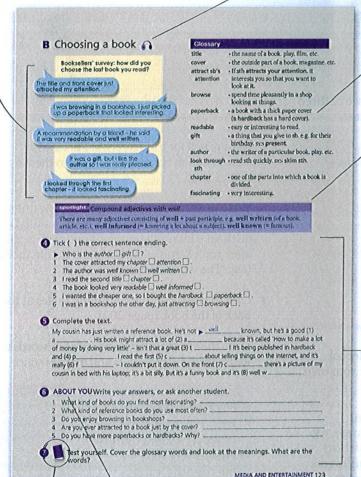
The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first: For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

Starter

A How to use a unit



You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (page 233) to find out how to say the words.



A **glossary** explains the new words.

A 'spotlight' tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).



Use the **cover card** to test yourself.

Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in 'ABOUT' YOU' or 'ABOUT' YOUR COUNTRY'.

In the time correct column.

If a nevel is readable, it incens that you have definitely read if.

I Reference books are useful when you want to get information.

I have its often a picture on the cover of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

I have been presented in the properties of a book.

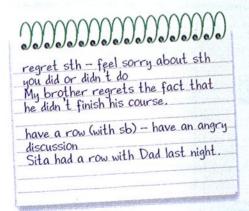
I have been presented

There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.

B How to learn new words



 Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.



- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (a serious relationship) or constructions with verbs (regret the fact that). Write your own example sentences.

Perfect Weekend Channel Five Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's lust the beginning ...

get to know so med become friends. one another each of get together (of two social reason. go wrong used who situation or relatio realize sth bogin to know before. have nothing in con no interests that a common.

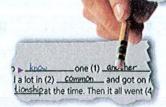
regret sth / doing s

Glossary

 Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.

Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ___know____ one (1) __another__ when we won summer. We had a lot in (2) __common__ and got on really well, but serious (3) __clationship at the time. Then it all went (4) __wrong had a big (5) __argument__ and he (6) __split___ up with her. We stout with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) __regrett_ed relationship with Inez. He (9) __realized__ he was still in love with her, was a big mistake.



- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.
- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Wordpower Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.



C Abbreviations and symbols

N	noun	USU	usually	
v	verb	C	countable noun (A countable noun can be	
ADJ	adjective		used with a/an and can have a plural form.)	
ADV	adverb	U	uncountable noun (An uncountable noun	
OPP	opposite (for example, modest is the opposite of arrogant)		cannot usually be used with a/an and usually has no plural form.)	
SYN			past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)	
	synonym of disadvantage)	PP	past participle	
INF	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. regret sth)	
FML	or people you know well.) formal (If a word or phrase is formal , you	sb	somebody (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. dismiss sb)	
use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)		etc.	used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all	
PL	plural	e.g.	for example (as in: jewellery, e.g. earrings,	
SING	singular	R. Taraba	necklace)	

Vowels

i:	see	/siː/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
I	sit	/sɪt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
a:	father	/'fa:ðə(r)/
D	got	/gpt/
o:	saw	/so:/
ប	put	/pʊt/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
Λ	cup	/kap/
3:	bird	/b3:d/
э	about	/əˈbaʊt/
eı	say	/seɪ/
ອບ	go	/gəʊ/
aı	five	/faɪv/
aυ	now	/nau/
)IC	boy	/lcd/
ıə	near	/nɪə(r)/
еә	hair	/heə(r)/
ບຈ	sure	/(r)eu/\

Consonants

b bad /bæd/	p	pen	/pen/
d did /dɪd/ k cat /kæt/ g got /gɒt/ tʃ cheap /tʃi:p/ dʒ jam /dʒæm/ f fall /fɔ:l/ v verb /vɜ:b/ θ thin /θɪn/ ŏ this /ŏɪs/ s so /səu/ z zero /zɪərəu/ ʃ shoe /ʃuː/ ʒ television /'telrvɪʒn, telr'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəu/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	b	bad	/bæd/
k cat /kæt/ g got /gpt/ tf cheap /tfi:p/ d3 jam /d3æm/ f fall /f5:1/ v verb /v3:b/ θ thin /θm/ ð this /ðis/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /ziərəʊ/ f shoe /fu:/ g television /'telrvɪʒn, telr'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	t	tea	/ti:/
g got /gpt/ tf cheap /tfi:p/ d3 jam /d3æm/ f fall /fɔ:l/ v verb /v3:b/ θ thin /θιn/ ŏ this /ŏιs/ s so /səu/ z zero /zɪərəu/ f shoe /fu:/ 3 television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəu/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ 1 leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	d	did	/did/
tf cheap /tfi:p/ dʒ jam /dʒæm/ f fall /fɔ:l/ v verb /vɜːb/ θ thin /θɪn/ ð this /ðɪs/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /zɪərəʊ/ f shoe /fuː/ g television /'telrvɪʒn, telr'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	k	cat	/kæt/
tf cheap /tfi:p/ d3 jam /d3æm/ f fall /fo:l/ v verb /v3:b/ θ thin /θιn/ ŏ this /ŏιs/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /zɪərəʊ/ ʃ shoe /ʃuː/ 3 television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	g	got	/gpt/
f fall /fɔ:l/ v verb /vɜ:b/ θ thin /θɪn/ δ this /δɪs/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /zɪərəʊ/ ∫ shoe /ʃuː/ ʒ television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	A	cheap	/tʃi:p/
v verb /v3:b/ thin /θın/ this /ŏıs/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /zɪərəʊ/ ʃ shoe /ʃuː/ ʒ television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	dʒ	jam	/dʒæm/
θ thin /θιπ/ δ this /διs/ s so /səυ/ z zero /zιərəυ/ ∫ shoe /ʃuː/ 3 television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəυ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	f	fall	/fo:1/
ŏ this /ŏɪs/ s so /səʊ/ z zero /zɪərəʊ/ f shoe /fuː/ z television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	v	verb	/v3:b/
S	θ	thin	/θ ɪ n/
z zero /zɪərəʊ/ ʃ shoe /ʃuː/ ʒ television /'telrvɪʒn, telr'vɪʒn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ ŋ sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	ð	this	/ðīs/
f shoe /fu:/ z television /'telrvrzn, telr'vrzn/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəu/ n sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	s	so	/səʊ/
television /'telrvr3n, telr'vr3n/ h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəu/ n sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ n sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	ſ	shoe	/ʃuː/
h hat /hæt/ m map /mæp/ n no /nəʊ/ n sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	3	television	/'telivizn, teli'vizn/
n no /nəu/ n sing /sɪŋ/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/		hat	/hæt/
n sing /sm/ l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	m	map	/mæp/
l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	n	no	/nəʊ/
l leg /leg/ r red /red/ j yes /jes/	ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
j yes /jes/	-	leg	/leg/
A Company of the Comp	r	red	/red/
A Company of the Comp	j	yes	/jes/
		wet	/wet/

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading

Tips for reading

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should try to get the **gist** of the **text**. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again. If so, try this:

- Identify the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to guess the meaning from the context, and/or use a dictionary.
- Keep a record of the words in a notebook, and, if possible, make a note of any special information.
 For example, is the word formal or informal? Is it used in a particular kind of construction, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a translation if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

spotlight formal

We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don't know people well. OPP **informal**. **formality** N. OPP **informality**.

Glossary	
foreign gist	 from a country that is not your own (a person is a foreigner). sing The gist of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
text	 the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
recognize sb/sth	 know who sb is or what sth is because you've seen or heard them before. recognition N.
go through sth	 read sth carefully from beginning to end.
identify sth	 recognize sth and decide what it is.
guess sth	• give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. guess N.
context	 the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
keep a record of sth	 write sth down to help you remember it. record sth v.
make a note of sth	 write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
construction	 the way words are used together in a sentence. construct sth v.
translation	 a text that has been changed from one language into another, translate sth v.

a	Replace the words in	italics with	a single word	that has the sa	me meaning.
	replace the words if	i icanes with	a single more	tricit ricis tricis oc	

- ▶ I looked at the pictures but didn't understand the written part. text
- 1 I understood the general meaning of the text.
- 2 We couldn't recognize and decide what language they were speaking.
- 3 The way you use words together to make a sentence in German is different.
- 4 He is from another country.
- 5 You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word.
- 6 There was a text which I had to change from one language into another.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is 'How do you do' formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello
- 1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to _____
- 2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the _____ of it
- 3 Did you _____ everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn't know.
- 4 Were there many _____ ? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
- 5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we _____ through it again?
- 6 Do you make a _____ of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a _____ in my notebook.

B Speaking and listening

- In a conversation, you can often ask someone to repeat words or phrases you don't understand, and explain the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to pronounce them.
- Look for opportunities to practise them when you're speaking. Don't be afraid to experiment with new language, and don't worry about making mistakes.
- It's important to revise new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't a correct method of learning vocabulary. Do what works for you.

spotlight conversation, chat, discussion, argument

A conversation is a talk between two or more people. You can also have a chat with sb, which is a friendly informal conversation (chat v). A discussion about sth is when you talk about something seriously (discuss sth v). An argument is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily.

Glossary say sth again. repetition N. repeat sth make sth clear or easy to understand. explanation N. explain sth · make the sound of a word or letter. pronunciation N. pronounce sth . a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. SYN chance. opportunity try sth to see what result it has. experiment with sth NOT do mistakes. make mistakes study sth again (you do revision). revise sth a way of doing sth. method · get or have the result you want. work

3	What nouns	are	formed	from	these verbs?	
---	------------	-----	--------	------	--------------	--

	discuss discussion	2	pronounce	4	revise
1	repeat	3	explain	5	chat

Circle the correct answer.

- If you explain something, you make it easy to say/understand
- 1 If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
- 2 If something works, it is successful/difficult.
- 3 If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
- 4 You can do/make a mistake.
- 5 A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
- 6 A chat is a formal/an informal conversation.

6 Complete the sentences.

- We had a <u>conversation</u> on the phone last night.
 We had a serious ______ in class today about politics.
 My brother's got an ______ to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
 I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick ______. She told me about the wedding.
- 4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really ______. You must try it.
- 5 Do you think we'll have a ______ to go shopping when we're in Milan?
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

2 I can describe my progress and aims

A Making progress 📦

When I started learning English, I was very **enthusiastic** and **motivated**, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. **After a while** my pronunciation **improved** and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **getting better**,

and that was very **encouraging**. But at intermediate level, I **made** slower **progress**. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use **accurately**. I think I **was** more **aware of** my mistakes, which **was** good – but also **frustrating**.

CHARLES AND SHAPE AND SHOOT		TANKS OF THE PARTY	CHAPTER THE PROPERTY OF THE PR
enthusiastic	 very interested in sth or excited by it. enthusiasm N. 	obvious	 easily seen and understood. syn clear.
motivated	 If you are motivated, you really want to do sth. motivation N. 	encouraging	 If sth is encouraging, it gives you hope and makes you want
after a while	after a period of time.		to continue. encourage v.
improve	 become better, syns get better, 		encouragement N.
11.	make progress. improvement N.	accurately	· with no mistakes. accurate ADJ.
express sth	 say or show what you think or feel. 	be aware of sth	 If you are aware of sth, you know about it.
effectively	 in a way that gives you the result you want. effective ADJ. 	frustrating	 making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. frustration N.

Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

	She did the work very effectively .	EFFECTIVE
1	He gave me a lot of	ENCOURAGE
2	I think my English is	IMPROVEMENT
3	My mother speaks English very	ACCURATE
4	It's when you can't understand.	FRUSTRATION
5	He doesn't have much	MOTIVATED
6	I was very when I started.	ENTHUSIASM

Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- She shows lots of interest and excitement. enthusiasm

 Do you think your English is improving?

 I didn't worry about my mistakes after a period of time.

 Where are you making the most improvement?

 It's clear that he doesn't know the difference between lend and borrow.

 She can speak French without mistakes.

 I think she knows about the problem.

 I can say most of the things I need to.
- 8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is annoying.

 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

B Future goals



Felipe's goals

- I understand everyday English, but my vocabulary needs to expand so that I can understand a wide range of subjects, and express more complex ideas.
- I'd like to be more fluent when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things in more detail.
 And I need to get better at using appropriate language when I speak.
- I can understand general things, but I want to read texts that are relevant to my work, and some of these contain quite specialized language.

Glossary

goal a thing you want to be able to do in the future. syn aim.

everyday normal or usual.

expand become bigger or make sth bigger.

a wide range a large number of different things. complex not simple; often difficult to understand. syn complicated.

fluent able to speak a foreign language easily and well. fluently ADV.

in detail fully and including a lot of information.

appropriate right or suitable in a particular situation. OPP inappropriate.

relevant to sth useful for and connected to sth.

specialized having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

spotlight contain and include

We can often use **contain** or **include** with the same meaning.

The film contains/includes scenes of violence. Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.

The box contains magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)

The price **includes** service. (Service is one part of the price.)

1	The story is <u>complex</u> . <u>complicated</u> I speak Russian <u>very well</u> .	4 The business got bigger.
2	It's part of normal life.	5 It's not suitable here.
3		6 My goal is to get to university.
) (omplete the dialogues with a suitable	le word.
	Was the information important for your	report? ~ No, it was irrelevant
1	Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described	ed it in
2	It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree	ee, it was
3	Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite	sto i data mer na rende ness em udiser
4	Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it does	sn't any fat.
5	Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, i	it's definitely
6	Do you need any special knowledge? ~ `	Yes, it's very
7	Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but t	the price dinner.
8		a wide of topics.
30.7		
	and the second of the second o	g goals, or tell another student.

3 I can understand a learner's dictionary 🕠

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.

Different meanings of the word are given in the **definitions**, which are in simple English.

The dictionary helps you avoid making mistakes, and helps with grammar.

match/championship • I never win at table tennis.
• Which party do you think will win the next election? 2 [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of sip to Australia. • Who won the gold medal? • He won the jackpot in the lottery.

es,
our job: I earn £15 000 a year.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the **entry**.

Examples of usage are provided.

Words that are often used together (collocations) are given in bold.

It helps you with **style**: **for instance**, whether words are formal, informal, **slang**, **offensive**, etc.

guy /gaɪ/ noun 1 [C] (informal) a man or boy: He's a nice guy. 2 guys [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of men and women: What do you guys want to eat?

you can't win (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.

? win /wɪn/ verb (winning; pt, pp won /wʌn/) **1** [I, T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc.: to win a game/

PHRV win sb over/round (to sth) to persuade sb to support or agree with you: They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation. You can find out which **syllable** is **stressed**.

Pmistake¹ /m¹steik/ noun [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: Try not to make any mistakes in your essays. • a spelling mistake • It was a big mistake to trust her. • I made the mistake of giving him my address.

IDM by mistake as a result of being careless: The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.

OTHER WORDS FOR

mistake

Error is more formal than mistake: a computing error. When you make a mistake you do sth wrong: I got the answer wrong. * You must have the wrong number (= on the phone). Fault indicates who is responsible for sth bad: The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me. Fault is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: a technical fault.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and select the correct word for your needs.

Glossary

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. **define sth** v.

avoid doing sth If you avoid doing sth, you try not to do or experience it.

idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also expression).

entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary entries on this page.)
provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.

style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal **style**, a formal **style**).

for instance SYN for example.

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.

offensive rude and likely to upset sb. offend sb v.

symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the **symbol** /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh').

syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (*Go* has one syllable and *prefer* has two syllables.)

relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. related ADJ. build sth make sth bigger; increase sth.

select sth SYN choose sth (but select is more formal). selection N.

spotlight stress and emphasize

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are **stress** (**on sth**) and **emphasis** (**on sth**).

The stress is on the first syllable. Don't emphasize every word.

They are also used to say that sth is important.

The newspapers stressed the need for urgent action.

The emphasis is mainly on education.

8 It doesn't give all the answers.

400	1 11	ng the same or	different?	Meita C	OFD
	is the meaning	id the same or	anterents	wille 3	OI D.
	15 CITO IIICOIIII		Control of the Control of the Section of		

	The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive.	The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive.	S
1	That's a useful idiom to know.	That's a useful expression to know.	
2	Is that collocation correct?	Is that definition correct?	0.000.40
3	What she said was very rude.	What she said was offensive.	
4	Does he use a lot of slang?	Does he use a lot of idioms?	gyalaski
5	Can you avoid mistakes?	Can you define mistakes?	
6	Make sure you select the right number.	Make sure you choose the right number.	
7	The stress is on the first three letters.	The emphasis is on the first three letters.	

It doesn't provide all the answers.

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

b) My dad wins a lot of money in his job.

symbols offending related entry ✓ selection syllable instance stress idiom provide build collocations entry

	In a dictionary, foreigner comes after the entry for foreign.
1	Dictionaries have many uses: for, to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.
2	Does your local bookshop have a good of dictionaries for sale?
3	Some dictionaries can help you your vocabulary if they synonyms an
	opposites, or other words.
4	A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid people.
	You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic and noting which is stressed.
6	Good luck! is given as an in the dictionary, at the end of the for luck
7	Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of are make a
	mistake and take a photo.
8	In the word <i>emphasis</i> , the is on the first syllable.

3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

	Which syllable is stressed in mistake? The second syllable
1	Which related words are given for <i>mistake</i> and <i>make a mistake</i> ?
2	How many definitions are there in the entry for guy?
3	What style is the idiom You can't win?
4	Is guy an offensive word?
5	Which phonetic symbols are given for guy?
	Are these sentences correct?
	a) I haven't not the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them.

4 I can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

- 1 full stop 7 apostrophe
- 2 comma 8 hyphen 3 colon 9 dash
- 4 semicolon 10 brackets
 5 question mark 11 slash
 6 exclamation mark 12 quotation marks 7

Complete the words for the punctuation marks.

 ▶ com m a
 5 question m

 1 full s
 6 excla
 m

 2 col
 7 semi
 sapo

 4 bra
 8 apo
 sapo

What punctuation is used in 1-8 below? You don't need to repeat full stop each time.

- We went home early. <u>full stop</u>
- 1 She had long, blonde hair.
- 2 What are you doing?
- 3 Congratulations!
- 4 It's too late.
- 5 I looked in the fridge; it was empty.
- 6 Someone (not me) left the door open.
- 7 A five-minute walk and he still took a taxi.
- 8 'It's only me,' he said.
- 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A <u>full stop</u> is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A <u>comma</u> in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to separate parts of a sentence, e.g. After we left, someone tried to phone us.
- between adjectives, e.g. A big, expensive car.
- to separate words in a list, though it is often omitted before and, e.g. I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.
- when words or phrases interrupt the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.

A <u>colon</u> is often used to introduce further **details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.

A <u>semicolon</u> is sometimes used **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren't **joined** by a conjunction **such as** and or but, e.g. I went round this morning; nobody was there

A <u>slash</u> separates words or phrases that are alternatives, e.g. single/married.

Gl	ossary		
	previation a short form of a word (e.g. a.m. is an obreviation meaning 'in the morning').	interrupt sth occur in the middle of sth and stop continuing.	o it
cap	ital letter 'A B C are capital letters (a b c are	details small pieces of information about sth.	
	nall letters).	instead of sb/sth in the place of sb/sth.	
	se a short period of time when sb stops talking. arate sb/sth keep people or things away from	connect sth put two or more things together. syn join sth.	
	ch other, syn divide sb/sth.	such as You use such as to introduce an examp	le.
	a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a	syn like.	
	opping list, a list of countries).	alternative one of two or more things that you	an
om	it sth FML If you omit sth, you don't include it.	choose between.	
	N leave sth out.		
0.			
	Complete the contenses		
4	Complete the sentences.	2. 2. 7. EHV	
	► Sentences have to begin with a <u>capital</u>	_ letter.	
	1 I wrote a of irregular verbs in m	ny notebook.	
	2 I would use this dictionary of the	he other one; it's much better.	
	3 We often use and or but totw	o parts of a sentence.	
	4 In this application form, you have to give	of your work experience.	
	5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long	, and finally she said yes.	
	6 Prep. is an of preposition.	The Average comparison of the second	
	7 You need to use more adjectives	as beautiful, delightful, and attractive.	
	8 The teacher said we can out Ex	xercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.	
	9 You can use brackets to extra i	nformation from the rest of the sentence.	
	10 The director had to the lesson	to tell us to leave the building quickly.	The state of the s
	11 You could the two sentences in	nto one by using so.	
	12 You can use a full stop, but the	is that you use a semicolon.	
6	Find pairs of words in the box that go tog them.	ether for a reason. Write a sentence about	
	comma omit abbreviation join such separate like ✓ leave out full stop de		
	► 'Such as' and 'like' mean the same thing.	Countries Countr	1.200
6	What punctuation is missing, and where?		وسسه زبان دهخدا dehkhodaedu.con
	► We live in this house A full stop is missing	at the end of the sentence	
	1 she works in Bristol.		
	2 He's a tall thin boy.	ariandra a companya in a companya a manana a ma	
		7	1
	The book is in on the table. Which is correct:	go and look for them.	
	We have two choices stay here and wait, or	urant.	
	6 This is my boyfriends watch.	ems.	
	the state of the second leadership	GIII	
	8 We couldn't get in the door was locked.		

Review: Learning

Unit 1

	1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.	
	 Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it? Could you translate this, please? Could you do? I've got to revise for an exam. I've got to do 	
	Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if	
2	Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it? 1 Could you translate this, please? Could you do	
	they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) of the articles to show that you u the general idea. In class we (3) the texts and (4) any useful new words by looking at the (6) they are in. We then write a (7) of them if we want to, and learn how to (8) them correctly. I often (9) mistakes with (10) , but I don't think it mit's important to (11) with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next y	nderstand vords.
Ur	nit 2	
1	 I want to learn Italian – nothing very specialized, just _everyday Italian. It was a very c story – quite hard to understand. I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e That is my main a on this course. I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d There is now a wide r of evening courses that you can do at the college. Does this drink c alcohol? Some of the courses are too s – I don't have the knowledge to do them. 	
2	Complete the text with words from the box.	
	When I went to live in Argentina, I spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1)	t of

	better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn't (7) of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) – I only made a few mistakes.
J	nit 3
1	Complete the words in the text. When you meet a new word in a text, for example, genuine, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) d in an (2) e, and then (3) s the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i, if the sentence is I bought a genuine Velasquez painting, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. Genuine is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s, and note too how the word is (6) s, in fact, the (7) s is on the first (8) s. If you come across an (9) i or (10) e such as under the weather, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) s of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn't rude, but you certainly wouldn't want to (12) o anyone, so it's always a good idea to check.
	Read the text, then answer the questions below. 1 I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living 2 room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study — and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that 3 it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered 4 to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You're moving out at 5 last! But Michael, who's going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.
2	The first sentence begins with a capital letter. There is a comma after home, which s the two parts of the sentence. There is a colon after everything. It is often used before more d or a limit or a limit or a limit of the sentence.
	 In the sentence beginning <i>I realized</i>, the word <i>however</i> i the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it. After the word <i>morning</i> there is a semicolon. This can be used i of a full stop when the two sentences are closely c

I can talk about appearance

A Male appearance 📦



He's got broad shoulders1 He's tall and skinny, and is well built. but he's in good shape.



He's got thick eyebrows2 and stubble3. He's dark-skinned4. OPP light- OR pale-skinned.



He's quite plump, with a fattish face.



He's clean-shaven and bald5. He has a scar6 on his head.



He's going bald on He's losing his hair on His hair's receding.

Glossary

male Men and boys are male, women and girls are female (a person's sex is male or female). well built with a solid, strong body. syn stocky. skinny very thin, but not in an attractive way.

in good/bad shape in good/bad physical condition. plump quite fat, in a nice way. fattish quite fat. (See spotlight, next page.) clean-shaven without a beard or moustache.

- One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.
 - skiny skinny
- 3 sca_

6 clean-shave __

- 1 eyebows
- 4 brod shoulders
- 7 in good sape ...

- 2 fatish _____
- 5 subble _
- Similar or different? Write S or D.
 - ▶ fattish | plump _S
 - 1 skinny | dark-skinned
 - 2 in good shape | in good condition
 - 3 go bald | be bald
 - 4 stocky | well built _____

- 5 dark-skinned | pale-skinned ____
- 6 stubble | a scar _
- 7 pale-skinned | light-skinned ___
- 8 He's losing his hair. | His hair's receding.
- 9 male | female
- Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

In	your family:	ABOUT YOUR FAMILY		Sand Circles - Street - Life Scattering Section 1	BOUT YOUR FAMILY
1	who's in good s?	17-17-17-17-1	5	who's well b ?	
2	who's going b?		6	who's sk?	***************************************
3	who's cshaven?		7	who's dark-s?	
4	who's got broad s	?	8	who's got a s on their body?	

- ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
- Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?

B Female appearance



This is my mother at 27 when she was pregnant; in fact, she was expecting me. She had a pretty, roundish face with beautiful smooth skin and long hair.



Here's Mum now; she looks tanned. She's still slim with a good figure. Her appearance hasn't changed much, but she's got a few wrinkles¹, she's going grey, and her hair's much shorter and neater. She wears contact lenses, and you can't tell that she's nearly 60.

spotlight -ish

The suffix -ish is used with some adjectives to mean 'quite'. A roundish face is a face which is quite round. Also: tallish, youngish, fattish, etc.

Glossary		
be pregnant • SYN be expecting a baby. pretty • attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women). smooth • with a completely flat surface. OPP rough. skin • Your skin covers your body. tanned • having brown skin after spending time in the sun. tan N. slim • thin in an attractive way. SYN slender.	figure appearance go grey or white neat contact lenses tell sth	 the shape of a woman's body. the way sb looks. become grey-haired or white-haired. tidy and carefully arranged. small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better. know or guess sth.
 6 True or false? Write T or F. ▶ If your hair is neat, it's tidy 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses 2 Skin can be rough or smooth 3 A tallish person is very tall 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby 	6 Everyo	et tanned sitting in the sun one has a good figure sually use 'pretty' to describe a man. nair can go white or grey
Complete the sentences. Does she wear contactlenses? Her has gone grey, and it's com She's still very slim, so you can't I'm feeling so old these days – look at these My baby's skin is so to touch, b She's got a beautiful figure: she's tall and You can she's been on holiday. Cover the glossary words and look at	and and are	a baby in July. ound my eyes! e really

I can talk about character 6 6

How I see myself

Dan (33) 'I'm ambitious, selfconfident, and generous. I'm also very impatient.'

Kaz (18) 'I'm always cheerful, I'm easy-going, and I've got lots of energy.'

Giles (45) 'I see myself as honest, hard-working, and generally tolerant.'







How others see me

'Some people really like me; others think I'm arrogant and maybe aggressive.'

'My parents don't think I'm very responsible; my friends just think I'm crazy.'

'Other people probably think I'm a bit dull, without much sense of humour.'

spotlight crazy, mad, stupid

Crazy INF and mad mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. Stupid is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth

· imagine or think of sb in a particular way.

ambitious

having a strong desire to do well or be successful. opp unambitious. ambition N.

self-confident

feeling sure about your own ability. orp insecure.

generous

happy to give more money and help than is usual. orp mean. generosity N.

impatient

. not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. opp patient. patience N.

arrogant

thinking you are better than other people, opp modest, arrogance N.

aggressive

likely to fight or argue. aggression N.

cheerful

feeling happy.

easy-going

· relaxed and not worried by what other people do.

energy

the ability to be very active without getting tired. energetic ADJ.

responsible

able to act sensibly and intelligently, orp irresponsible.

honest

always telling the truth. opp dishonest, honesty N.

hard-working

able to work with effort and for a long time. opp lazy.

tolerant

dull

able to accept ideas you don't agree with. OPP intolerant. tolerance N.

sense of humour

the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

- ► She's very cheerful. —
- 1 He's very arrogant. 2 They're a bit dull. ____
- 3 Both boys are very honest.
- 4 My boss is very tolerant.
- ► He's very ambitious. B
- 5 She's so modest. ...
- 6 He's very self-confident.
- 7 Karen is so mean. ____
- 8 My brother is absolutely mad. ____

2	Correct the spelling mistakes.					
	onest honest 3	generos		6 a	gressive	
		cheerfull		7 p	atiente	
	2 responsable5			8 to	olarant	091
3	Match 1–8 with a–i.					
		itu. C		aggressive		
	feeling sure about your own abil hering	ity		cheerful		
	1 boring			self-confid	ent /	
	2 likely to fight or argue	Zartanstrug		tolerant	ent	
	3 thinking you are better than oth	ers		sense of h	umour	
	4 always telling the truth			dull	umou	
	5 ability to laugh at things	A Law and American		arrogant		
	6 feeling happy	acople	VERNIE DATE OF THE CALL	honest		
	7 unhappy to give money or help p 8 able to accept ideas you don't as			mean		
	8 able to accept ideas you don't ag	gree with		mean		
4	Complete the tables.					
	ADJECTIVE OPPOSITE		ADJEC	TIVE	NOUN	
			ambitio		ambition	
			honest	us		
	honest		tolerant	gradyn, r		
	responsible		aggress			
	lazy		arrogan		147 (4)	20002.00
	generousambitious		generou			
	self-confident		patient	,,,		
			patient			
6	Complete the words in each ser					
	▶ If you disagree with Matthew, he	e can get a bit 🤷	ggressive	2		7 50
	1 My brother's a bit irresponsible a	and does some c_		things	; but he's OK.	
	2 Keiko's a good person to share a	flat with: she's ve	ery e		g	*
	3 I like Zoltan; he's got a great s	of h_				
	4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, bu	t very few people	realize t	his becaus	e he's so m	
	5 Since Katy got a new job and a k	poyfriend, she's be	ecome m	ore s	-C	
	6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters	have always been	very h		W	
	7 I don't think young Andy is r	enough	to drive	a car.		
	8 Andrea has so much e			mething.		
6	ABOUT YOU Answer the questi	ons, or ask ano	ther stu	dent.		
	1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what	t way?	San comme			
	2 Would you say you're hard-work	ing or a bit lazy?				
	3 Are you intolerant of anything? I	f so, what?	-			
	4. When do you get impatient?					
	5 How do you see yourself? Write	three adjectives.				
	6 Which two qualities do you think	are the most imp	portant:			
	honesty, patience, tolerance, or g	generosity?				
100	The state of the s					
7	Test yourself. Cover your or cover the glossary meaning	posites and no	uns in E	xercise 4	and test you	rself. Then
	cover the glossary meaning	is and look at the	ile word	is. vviiat	do they mear	

7 I can describe my feelings

A Feelings 🕠

Word	Example	Meaning
thrilled	He was thrilled to win and he kissed ¹ the cup.	very happy and excited. syn delighted.
furious	I lost his keys: he was absolutely furious.	very angry.
astonished	I was astonished to hear he was married.	very surprised. syn amazed.
heartbroken	She was heartbroken when her father died.	very sad and emotionally upset.
terrified	I was terrified when the plane took off.	very frightened. syn scared stiff INF.
miserable	You look very miserable. What's wrong?	unhappy and depressed. SYN fed up INF.
proud	I felt very proud when my book was published.	pleased about sth you or other people have done
jealous	My boyfriend is jealous when I'm with other boys. I've always been jealous of Tom; everyone likes him.	1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love. 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. syn envious .
anxious	He was anxious before he went into hospital.	worried and afraid.
upset	Sally was very upset because no one spoke to her.	sad and angry because of sth that has happened

1	Complete	the	words	and	phrases.
---	----------	-----	-------	-----	----------

	ama3ed	4	thr
1	anx	5	broken
2	fur	6	scared
2	act	7	Vi .

spotlight absolutely and very

Use **absolutely** before extreme adjectives, e.g. furious, astonished, heartbroken, terrified. Use **very** before degree adjectives, e.g. miserable, jealous, anxious, upset.

I was **absolutely** amazed. (Nor very amazed.)

They were **very** proud. (Nor absolutely proud.)

2	Write	synonyms	for these	words and	nhrases
	AALICE	Symonymis	ioi tilese	Words and	piliases.

	worried anxious	2	fed up	4	astonished
1	thrilled	3	scared stiff	5	envious

3 ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

	om the table, or ask another student.
	Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be furious.
1	You've just passed an important exam. I'd be
2	Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have
	Your lovely old dog has just died
	A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face
	You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold
6	You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend
	You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event
8	You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying



Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

B How emotional are you? 🕟

ABOUT YOU

YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

- a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
- b I think I'm quite sensitive, so I try not to upset other people.
- c I'm sensitive about my appearance.
- d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
- e In general, I think I'm quite a moody person.
- f When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.

	and the same
Are you like t	nis?
Yes/No	
Yes/No	

spotlight sensitive

Sensitive has two meanings:

1 a positive meaning: 'able to understand people's feelings and problems' (e.g. sentence (b) above). OPP **insensitive.**

2 a more negative meaning: 'easily upset' (e.g. sentence (c) above).

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. emotion N.

show your feelings express your feelings openly.

opp hide your feelings.

upset sb make sb unhappy.

be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. opp be in a good mood.

hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.

moody If you are moody, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.

sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (**sympathetic** doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).

supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

- Circle the correct answer.
 - ► Try not to (hurt) upset his feelings.
 - 1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/hide her feelings.
 - 2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
 - 3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
 - 4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
 - 5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
 - 6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods
- 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
 - ▶ Caroline is very <u>sensitive</u> . She seems to know when someone has a problem.
 - 1 Keep away from Elton he's in a bad ._____today.
 - 2 He his parents because he was so rude to them.
 - 3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very _____
 - 4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very _____
 - 5 I'm _____ a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
 - 6 Paul tends to upset people and _____ their feelings.
- ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.

8 I can talk about relationships

A Friendship 👀

Word	Example	Meaning
friendship	Our friendship has always been very important to us.	the relationship between people who are friends.
make friends	I find it difficult to make friends.	form friendly relationships.
get on (well) with sb	Do you get on well with your classmates?	have a good relationship with sb. orr not get on with sb.
rely on sb reliable ADJ	I can always rely on my sisters. My brother's not very reliable .	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. syn depend on sb.
trust sb	You have to trust your friends.	believe sb is good and won't hurt you.
loyal	He was very loyal to my father.	being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. opp disloyal.
sociable	She's very sociable and gets on well with people.	A sociable person likes the company of other people. orr antisocial.
keep in touch	Simon is an old friend . We've always kept in touch .	(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.

Combine words in the box to make phrase	1	Combine	words	in the	box to	make	phrases
---	---	---------	-------	--------	--------	------	---------

rely ✓ friend get on well friends on someone ✓ a close keep make in touch on someone depend with someone

spotlight friend

An **old friend** is someone you have known for a long time; a **close friend** is someone you know and like very much. If you **are friendly with sb**, you treat them as a friend.

rely on someone	CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF	

2 Answer the questions.

- Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is keep in touch
- 1 Rely (on) is a verb. What's the adjective?
- 2 What's a synonym for rely on? ___
- 3 A sociable person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite?
- 4 What's the opposite of loyal?
- 5 What's the relationship between people who are friends?
- 6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A ______ friend

3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ► He's a bit antisocial. SOCIABLE He isn't very sociable.
- 1 He likes Ruben. FRIENDLY
- 2 She never phones us. TOUCH ___
- 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON
- 4 I became her friend at university. MAKE
- 5 My boss is very reliable. RELY
- 6 I've known Donna for a long time. OLD



Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. - 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

spotlight have a row / an argument

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. I had a row with Li.

The verb related to argument is **argue**, e.g. They **argued with** each other.

Glossary

get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.

one another each other.

get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.

go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.

realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.

have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. opp have a lot in common.

regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.

split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.

go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend. in a (serious) relationship having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.

fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

6	Circle	the	correct	word.
---	--------	-----	---------	-------

- ▶ They were very happy, then something got went wrong.
- 1 Hana's by/in a serious relationship.
- 2 Lian and Chen have fallen out/on.
- 3 Shall we come/get together next week?
- 4 They have lots in/on common.
- 5 She got/went out with Len at university.
- 6 How did you get/go to know Anya?

6	Complete	the	missing	words.
---	----------	-----	---------	--------

	out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid
1	I don't get on with Dirk. We a a lot, and last week we had a terrible r
2	I'd like to get to k Anders better because we have a lot in c
	Karli s up with him last week and I think she r it now; she's a bit depressed.
4	We have nothing in common. That's why I r I could never g o with him.

Complete the text.

Milo and I got to▶	know	one (1)	when we	e worked together during the
summer. We had a	lot in (2)	and got o	on really wel	I, but, unfortunately, he was in a
serious (3)	at the tin	ne. Then it all wer	nt (4)	
had a big (5)	and he	(6)	up with her	r. We started to (7)
out with each other	almost immed	diately, but Milo so	oon (8)	his decision to end his
relationship with In-	ez. He (9)	he was :	still in love w	vith her, and that our relationship
was a big mistake.				

9 I can talk about families

A Family relationships 👀

Marilyn Monroe was an only child from a single-parent family, but she lived with foster parents until she was seven, and then she was adopted by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got divorced three times.





Bill Clinton's father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's half-brother.

Glossary

only child a child with no brothers or sisters.

single parent a mother or father who looks after their children alone.

foster parent sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.

adopt a child take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.

get divorced legally end your marriage. syn get a divorce.

support sb help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.

bring sb up look after a child and teach them how to live.

stepfather a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: stepmother, stepson, stepdaughter, stepbrother, stepsister).

half-brother, half-sister a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

ABOUT YOU

	Complete	the words	or	phrases.
--	----------	-----------	----	----------

	step mother	3	f parents	6	ada child
1	an o child	4	sfather	7	sparent
2	hsister	5	getorced	8	br somebody up

Same or different? Write S or D.

- ► She's a single parent. | She's a foster parent. D
- 1 He's an only child. | He hasn't got any brothers or sisters.
- 2 He's my half-brother. | He's my stepbrother. _
- 3 He's my stepson. | He's my wife's son by her first marriage.
- 4 She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. ____
- 5 She's my half-sister. | She's my mother's sister. __

5 Do you know anyone who has recently got d____

6 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. ____

Complete the questions.

Where were you b _____ up? Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o _____ child? Do you have any h _____ -brothers or -sisters? Do you know anyone who is a s _____ parent? If so, who?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Family history

I'm related to a member of the royal family.

We have **ancestors** who were Russian **immigrants**. They **emigrated from** Russia **to** Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but **previous generations** of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my relatives were originally from China.

I **look like** my grandmother, but I **take after** my father. We're both very lazy!



queen king

ABOUT YOU

Glossary

be related to sb

member

nembe

royal ancestor

immigrant

emigrate from . . . to . . . previous

generation originally

look like sb take after sb • be in the same family as sb. relative N. SYN relation.

· a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.

· relating to a king or queen (see picture).

a person in your family who lived a long time ago.

· a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.

leave your country in order to live in another.

happening before the one you are talking about.

all the people in a family born at about the same time. in the beginning, before other things happened.

have the same appearance as sb.

· be like an older member of your family.

6 Circle the correct answer.

- Our ancestors were Italian mmigrants/members.
- 1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
- 2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
- 3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
- 4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
- 5 I'm originally/previously from Rome: that's where I was born.
- 6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

6 Complete the questions.

► What do you know about your ancestors

- 1 Are you r to anyone famous?
- 2 Do you have a r______ family in your country?
- If so, do you have a king or a q_____?
- 3 Where do/did the p______generations of your family live?
- 4 Which m of your family do you look l
- 5 Do you take a _____ your mother or your father? How?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

A A typical British wedding 👀



When two people are planning to get married, they can **choose** to have a **religious ceremony** or a **civil ceremony**. On the **wedding** day, the **groom**¹ is helped by a **best man**² who brings the **rings** to the wedding ceremony. The **bride**³ may have one or more **bridesmaids**⁴. Afterwards, there is a **reception** for the **couple** and the wedding

guests⁵. It's traditional for the best man and the groom to make speeches, and then everyone drinks a toast to the couple, and wishes them a long and happy marriage. After the reception, they usually go on their honeymoon. On the same day every year after that, the couple celebrate their wedding anniversary.

Glossary

choose sth PT chose PP chosen decide which thing you want. choice N.

ceremony a formal public event.

religious A religious ceremony takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. religion N.

civil A civil ceremony is a non-religious one.

wedding a time when a man and woman get married.

rings



wedding reception a meal and/or party after a wedding.

traditional A traditional thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

make a speech give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

drink a toast to sb raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

wish sb sth say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

honeymoon a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

celebrate sth have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

anniversary the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

spotlight wedding and marriage; bride and groom

A wedding is the ceremony for a couple (two people who are getting married). Marriage is the relationship between a husband and wife. We went to my sister's wedding on Saturday. Jack and Dana's marriage lasted 40 years. On the wedding day, the couple are called the bride and groom. After they are married, they become husband and wife.

	mariage marriage				
1	anniversery	8	honeymooi	n	
2	I've choosen it	9			
3	tradicional	10			
4		11	ceremonie .		
5	bridgesmaid	12	recepcion _		
6	celebrate	13	religian		
C	ircle the correct word.				
	Jane and Mark's wedding/marr	iage	is next Satur	day.	
1	Mark is the groom/best man.		Letramore	oran matrice e knih	
2	The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's	siste	er.		
3	They have chosen/wished a reli	giou	s ceremony.		
4	They've invited about sixty brid			wedding	
5	The reception will be before/af				
6	The rings will be brought to the				de ganteras
7	Speeches are traditional at the	recep	ption/best m	an.	
8	When they're on their honeymo	oon,	Jane and Ma	rk will be bride ar	nd groom/husband and wife.
C	omplete the phrases using w	ords	from the l	oox.	
	AND ADDRESS OF A SECURE OF A S	NAMES AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY	NAME AND POST OF THE PARTY OF T	NAMES AND ADDRESS OF A PARTY OF PARTY O	
	groom ceremony a speech				
	reception your honeymoon	an	niversary a	nappy marriage	- Introducere -
	wedding Ceremony		5	bride and	
1	go on		vitos 116	celebrate your	<u>W. One letter is mission W</u>
2	drink		7	a religious	ANG (80)
3	wish someone				T widow 1
4	make				anotwon K
4	make			a incading	
C	omplete the questions with a	sui	table word	A Service and the service and	ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY
120	Can people to ha				
1	Can peopleto na	ve a	religious cer	emony or	
-	aceremony?		man at the	coromony?	21(/) 2.24()
2	Does the groom have a		man at the	e celemony?	
3	Does the bride have any		With Heir	wodding	
4	In the ceremony, do the bride a	na g	room put of	wedding	garany amondropy ywe e
-	? Is there usually a	-f+-	the carama	ov2	***************************************
- Lan	is there usually a	arter	the ceremon	lyt	The state of the s
5	How many are us	uany	/ invited?	oochoc?	
6	Is it for people to		SP	ride and groom?	64-Margarete) + 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1
6	B 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	-	to the b	ide and groom?	SHOULD SOUTH TO SEE TO SEE STRING
6 7 8	Do people usually drink a	11.	o on their	aner	
6	Do people usually drink a Do the traditional	lly go	A TOTAL PROPERTY.		***************************************
6 7 8 9	the wedding?				227
6 7 8	the wedding?			niversary every ye	ar?
6 7 8 9	the wedding? Do people usually	thei	ir wedding ar		
6 7 8 9	the wedding?	thei	ir wedding ar		

B The end of a life 1

1 graves 2 gravestone 3 mourners; the family are in mourning 4 coffin

Word	Example	Meaning
die (die of an illness) death N, dead ADJ	He died of old age. His death was very sad.	stop living.
widow	Mark's widow never remarried.	a woman whose husband has died.
widower	He's been a widower for years.	a man whose wife has died.
funeral	The funeral was at the church.	a ceremony after sb dies.
bury sb, burial N	He was buried this morning.	put a dead body in the ground.
cremate sb cremation N	My grandmother wasn't buried; she was cremated .	burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.
cemetery	He's buried in that cemetery .	a place where dead people are buried
will N	He left his sister €10,000 in his will .	a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.
inherit sth inheritance N	I inherited € 1,000 from my uncle.	receive money or things from sb when they die.

7	One	letter i	s missing.	Write	the	words	correctly	١.
---	-----	----------	------------	-------	-----	-------	-----------	----

-	ded dead	3	funral	6	deth
1	widoer	4	bry	7	cemetry
2	gravstone	5	inerit	8	cofin

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- ▶ We went to the coffin/cemeter vifuneral yesterday.
- 1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
- 2 My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.
- 3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
- 4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
- 5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
- 6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

Complete the text.

I never knew my	grandfather, because he	in 1960, b	efore I was born. He died
(1)	heart problems. My grandmother	was (2)	mourning for a long
	marry again; she was a (3)		
	in 1990. I can remen		
She was (6)	in the cemetery near the	park. She left my	mother some money in her
(7)	, and my uncle (8) l	her house.	

Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

Review: People

Unit 5

- 1 Circle the correct answer.
 - My uncle is going black/grey.
 - 1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
 - 2 Do you wear contact/content lenses?
 - 3 Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
 - 4 You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
 - 5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
 - 6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
 - 7 You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
 - 8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.
- 2 Complete the sentences.

1	Emilio's well built, with bro	ad	
2	My dad's completely	; now my older brother is	his hair as well
	B He got theo	n his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.	
	I don't think his	has changed much in the last 20 years: I	ne's still in good
2.00		Control of the Contro	

- 5 My father has always been clean-_____ never had a beard.
- 6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite _

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

Adjective	Meaning	Noun	opp of adjective
ambitious	having a strong desire to be successful.	ambition	unambitious
g	happy to give more money and help than is usual.	obelona en est	Arens Problem 8
h	always telling the truth.		
t The state of the	able to accept ideas you don't agree with.	a <u>a inol jiiwa</u>	onankonko — —
p	able to stay calm and wait for sth.		
a	thinking you are better than other people.		n need also .
h	able to work with effort and for a long time.	XXXXXX	

2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no <u>energy</u>
- 1 That was a mad thing to do.~ Yes, absolutely _____.
- 2 Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a _____ man.
- 3 Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no I'm quite ____
- 4 He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very _____.
- 5 She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no _____ of ___
- 6 He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very ____

Unit 7

	Replace the underlined word with eit	her a synonym or an opposite.
	► Is he always in such a bad mood? SYN	terrible OPP good
	1 Michael is usually very sensitive. OPP	
	2 Why are they so miserable? SYN	
		He will be a second of the sec
	4 He never shows his feelings. OPP	
	 I was terrified when it happened. syn I was delighted with my results. syn 	
	200 CO	
2	with a better word.	oss out the word that is not logical and replace it
	I was astonished that I passed the exam	but really miserable. delighted
	She's very emotional, so she tends to sh	ow her feelings a lot. This is logical.
	1 He was furious with me, and I was thrill	Complete the second sec
	2 She was so proud when her son did well	, and really Jealous.
10	3 I was anxious before the flight, and scar4 I don't know what upset her, but she was	ed stiff by the time we took offas thrilled
	5 She can be very insensitive and often hu	rts people's feelings.
	6 I can't talk to her because she's insensiti	ve and very supportive.
Uı	nit 8	
1	One word is missing in each sentence.	Where from? Write it at the end.
	Paulo split / with Simone last weekup	100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100
	1 Petros and I have nothing common.	
	2 How did you get know her?	
	3 I like Imran; we get very well.	
	4 Don't forget to keep touch.	
	5 You can't rely her brother.	
	6 I don't think they're a relationship at the	moment.
2	Complete the sentences. Keep the mea	aning the same as in the sentences on the left.
	▶ Being friends with Tomi is important to r	ne. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
	1 He just likes being with people. He's ve	rv
	2 Tunderstand what happened now. T_	what happened.
	3 He's been my friend in difficult times.	łe's been very
		week. We got for a meal last week.
	5 We share a lot of interests. We have a	
	6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of	Abot is homeonal 3 and 5 and 5 and 5 and 5
	7 She's sorry that it happened. She 8 I can always depend on my sister. My s	ster is very
	o Tean always depend on my sister. Thy s	- MARIO ARE AN AREA MARIA MARI
Ur	it 9	
01		
1	Which words are being defined?	
	a member of your family. relative	
	1 a person who comes from a foreign cour	try to live in your country.
	2 a woman who married your father but w	ho is not your mother.

	3 someone in your family who lived a long time ago
	5 have the same appearance as someone.
	6 be like an older member of your family.
	7 end a marriage legally.
	8 all the people in a family born at about the same time.
	all the people in a family born at about the same time.
2	Complete the text.
	John Lennon's <u>ancestors</u> were Irish (1) who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) child in a single (3) family. When he was five, his mother gave John to
	(2) child in a single (3) family. When he was five, his mother gave John to
	ner sister, Mimi, to look after, so ne was (4) up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1902
	to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lennons got (5)
	in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time
	marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) marriage which had
	ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8)brothers,
	and Julian and Kyoko are (9) brother and (10) sister.
	14.40
Jr	nit 10 manusana manang mengang mengangan kenanggan pengangan pengangan pengangan pengangan pengangan pengangan
1	Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.
	DRINKATOASTP
	C E R M W P D O C S A M
	E D D U E S J R O R C A
	RINGDSHRUEXK
	E P I G D X O Z P C U E
	MARRIAGELEGA
	O W U O N V I N E P O S
	YESMIFUROIGE
	HONEYMOONODE
	KLISHMEXONIC
	DBRIDESMAIDH
2	Complete the texts.
	When my neighbour Mr Patrick ▶ <u>died</u> recently, I went to his (1)
	died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) for a long time. He always wanted to be
	(3) in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) at the
	funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) his house, and I believe
	he's going to may a back to live in it
	and the first of the state of t
	My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her ▶ husband, Martin, had to
	(6) whether to have a religious (7) or a (8) one. In the
	end, they (9) a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10), and
	Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) man. It was a very
	traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) at a hotel near the church.
	Next week it will be their first wedding (13), so the family is going to get together
	to (14) with a big party.
	to (14) with a big party.

11 I can describe the universe

A The universe



- The moon¹ is a satellite of the earth²; in other words, it circles around the earth. This takes approximately 28 days.
- The earth revolves around the sun every 365 days.
- The sun³ is a star, but seems much larger than other stars⁴ because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to reach the earth.
- Nine planets⁵ revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the solar system.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending rockets⁶ into space seemed far-fetched, but now it is a fact of life and we have gained considerable knowledge of the earth's satellite and our solar system.



Glossary

- universe the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.
- satellite an object that moves round a bigger object in space.
- in other words used for saying sth in a different way.
- circle sth go round sth in a circle. SYN revolve around sth.
- approximately about, syn roughly.
- reach sth arrive at a place.
- space the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.
- far-fetched not easy to believe because it is very improbable.
- gain sth get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.
- knowledge what you know and understand about sth.

	The sun circles the earth. moon	4	Man first walked on the sun in 1969.
1	The planets are in the solar space.		Venus is a star.
2	The earth revolves around the moon.		We can send planes into space.
3	The sun is a planet.	7	The stars are part of the earth.
Co	omplete the sentences.		
	There are billions of stars in the universe	·	
1	Is it important to send rockets into	?	
2	The earth revolves around the sun; in other		parth is a planet in our solar cycton

- 2 The earth revolves around the sun: in other ______, earth is a planet in our solar system. 3 The Venus Express rocket took ______ five months to _____ the planet Venus. 4 The idea of human life on Mars is far-____ 5 We have _____ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years. 6 The earth _____ around the sun every 365 days. My _____ of space is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it. 7 The moon is a _____ of the earth.
- Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent satellites to explore the surface of Mars, and carried out experiments to see if they can discover any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an analysis of rocks from Mars has confirmed that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have existed in the past.

Glossary

satellite

exist

scientist

· a person who studies the physical world. science N. scientific ADJ.

· a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.

· travel round a place in order to learn about it. explore sth exploration N.

· do and complete a task. carry out sth

· a scientific test done in order to learn sth. experiment

· a careful study of sth in order to explain it. analyse v. analysis • say or show that sth is true or definite. confirmation N. confirm sth

• If sth exists, it is present in the real world. existence N.

spotlight discover or invent?

If you discover something, you learn about or find something for the first time. discovery N. If you invent something, you create something that didn't exist before. invention N. They've discovered a new planet. Who invented the telescope?

Circle the correct word.

- ► There was an experiment/exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals only explore/exist in South America nowhere else.
- 2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
- 3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
- 4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
- 5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
- 6 We've got the data, so now we need to analyse/explore it.

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

► Television was an incredible _invention . INVENT **SCIENCE** 1 There's a report from a group of 2 The _____ of penicillin was of major importance. DISCOVER **CONFIRM** 3 We're waiting for _____ of the results. 4 There will be an _____ of the findings in the laboratory. **ANALYSE** 5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space **EXPLORE** 6 Humans are always looking for the ______ of new life forms. EXIST

6 Complete the sentences.

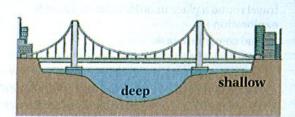
- ► The police <u>discovered</u> drugs inside his shoes.
- __ on Mars. 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life _____
- 2 They left camp and went to _____ the countryside to see what they could find.
- 3 With the use of ______, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
- 4 Scientists believe they will have to _____ out further experiments.
- 5 I don't know who first _____ the camera. Do you?
- 6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now _____ that it's serious.

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

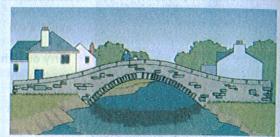
12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

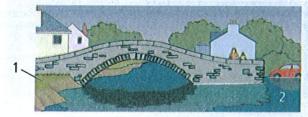
A Water

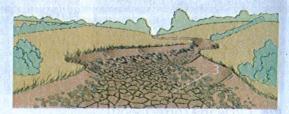
RIVERS wide river



narrow river







Rivers flow to the sea. A river can be wide (width N) and deep (depth N) or narrow and shallow. If it rains heavily, a river can burst its banks¹, which causes floods². If there is no rain for a long time, the river dries up³.

THE SEA and OCEANS

The **tide** comes in (**high tide**) and goes out (**low tide**) twice a day.

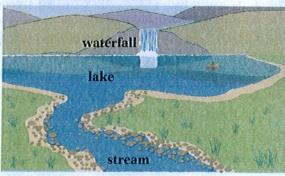
Boats **float**⁴ on the **surface**⁵ of the water.



In bad weather, a boat can **capsize** and **sink**⁶. People on the boat may be trapped **underwater** and may **drown**.



DIFFERENT AREAS OF WATER









Glossary

flow move smoothly (like water).
burst break open suddenly and violently.
ocean a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.
tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.

capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water. **underwater** happening or existing below the surface of the water.

drown die in water because you can't breathe.

spotlight cause v, N

To cause something is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.

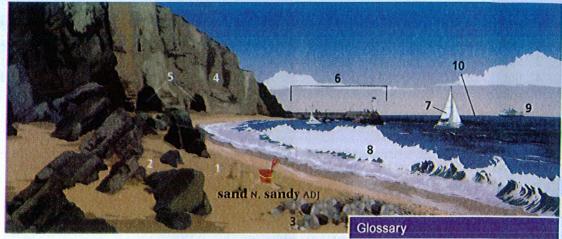
The wind caused problems for cyclists.

The cause of something is the person or thing that makes it happen.

The police don't know the cause of the accident.

0	Or	ne letter is missing. Wr	ite	the words correctly.			
	•	lak lake	6	narro			
	1	flod	7				
	2	high tid	8			· 大学 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	
	3	shalow	9				
	4	flot	10	ocen			
	5	suface					
	74	VII and the second					
2	M	atch 1-8 with a-i.	2019				
	-	the tide _i_	a	capsized			
	1	burst	b	to the sea			
	2	the river	C	its banks			
	3	low	d	dried up			
	4	the width	е	in the lake			
	5	it flows	f	river		Ont local beading in an arms or the	
	6	drown	g	of the river		no opices amende moses escribio	
	7	a shallow	h	tide ·		above the breath and condew of the	
	8	the boat	- 1	went out 🗸			
3	Ye	s or No? Write Y or N.				When the worther's bad, the	
S		Do streams have a tide?	N		6	Can a pond dry up?	
	1	Is the depth of a river the			7		
	2	Can you have a high tide			8	Can people sit on the bank of a river?	
	3	Do puddles form when it				Are canals deeper than seas?	
	4	Can people float in wate			0	Does water flow in a pond?	
	5	Can people capsize?					
						Virieth words are being defined?	
4	Cir	cle the correct word.					
		The River Seine floats/flo	ws)	through Paris.			
	1	The leaves floated on the					
	2	I went sailing on the pon					
	3	The ship capsized/drown	ed i	n the storm.			
	4	I swam across the whole	dep	th/width of the river.			
	5	There's a little stream/tid	e at	the end of our garden.	51		
	6	Sadly the dog drowned/s	ank	when the ship capsized	d.		
	7	You can stand up in the I	iver	here; it's very narrow/s	sha	allow.	
	8	Our furniture got very we	et du	uring the floods/tides.		an area of the coast where the land	
	C-	mplete the texts with	2 (1	uitable word in the c	or	rect form	
	We	had some storms with ve	ry h	eavy rain last summer.	In	e river which runs through the city	
	(1)	its banks, a	nd (Z) Serious) III	oods. The water was quite	
				tres in some parts, and	yc	ou could see people's possessions	
	20	in the wate					
	We	had a terrible day sailing	on a	a (5) in th	ie i	mountains last weekend. The	
	wir	nd was very strong, and su	idde	nly our little boat (6) _	-	and we ended up in	
	the	water. We swam to safety	, bu	t watched the boat slov	٧ly	(7) to the bottom.	
	Lat	er we discovered it was ve	rv c	langerous there, and las	st	year someone (8)	

B The coast



Our local **beach**¹ is mainly **sandy**, with a few **rocks**² and **pebbles**³ down by the **shore**. There's a **steep cliff**⁴ rising above the beach, and children often play in the **caves**⁵

there. At the end of the bay there's a small harbour⁶. When the weather's bad, the sailing boats⁷ are protected from the waves⁸ and the rough sea. We often see large ships⁹ on the horizon¹⁰.



bay

coast the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.

shore the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.

steep A steep hill or cliff goes up quickly from a low place to a high one. protect sb/sth from sth keep sb/sth safe from sth. protection N.

rough A rough sea has big waves.

OPP calm.

6	Which	words	are	being	defined?

- a small stone you find on a beach <u>Pebble</u>
- 1 the line between the land or the sea and the sky _____
- 2 a large piece of stone _
- 3 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea ____
- 4 a high steep area of rock next to the sea
- 5 a large boat often used to carry passengers
- 6 the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks ____
- 7 a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea
- 8 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground _____
- 9 the area of land next to the sea _
- 10 an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve _____

Complete the sentences.

- It was a nice day, so we went to the beach
- 1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very _____
- 2 A huge _____ hit the boat and we capsized.
- 3 The harbour _____ the little boats in bad weather.
- 4 At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is _____
- 5 You can't climb the cliff; it's too ______.
- 6 I could see a boat _____ the horizon.



Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?

13 I can describe the climate Do Units 11 and 12 first

A The weather

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
pour (with rain)	It's pouring outside!	rain heavily.
soaking wet syn soaked	It was pouring with rain and I got soaking wet.	extremely wet.
drizzle v, N	It was drizzling when I left the office.	rain lightly, with very small drops .
rainbow	Did you see the rainbow?	
bitterly cold	It's bitterly cold today.	extremely cold.
chilly	It gets chilly in the evening.	a little too cold to be comfortable.
mild	It's been a very mild winter.	warmer than usual for the time of year.
heatwave	I hate this heatwave!	a period of unusually hot weather.
muggy SYN humid	It's really muggy today.	warm and damp in an unpleasant way.
mist n misty ADJ	You get a lot of mist in the mornings in autumn.	thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).
frost n frosty ADJ	There was a frost last night; there's ice on the car.	the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.
breeze n breezy ADJ	It's hot today, but there's a lovely breeze.	a light wind.
gale	There were gales last night.	a strong wind.

U	1	ck (/)the correct answer. Which is colder?	☑ a chilly day	☐ a mild day
	1	Which is stronger?	☐ a gale	□ a breeze
	2	Which is colder?	a breezy morning	a frosty morning
	3	Which is warmer?	a muggy evening	a chilly evening
	4	Which means more water?	☐ It poured for an hour.	Commence of the Commence of th
	5	Which is harder to see through?	fog	□ mist
	6	Which means more water?	☐ I got wet.	☐ I got soaked.
(2) r She mid rain Last	wo day on sur	, though, the temperature had go her head, then it (7) d mmer was unusually hot; we had a	it was quite a (3) m old, and she noticed the (5) ne up. As she left the hous for the rest of the day. a (8) h which	day for November. of on the windows. By e, she felt a few (6) d of lasted for several weeks, and it was
incr	edib	Test yourself. Cover the wo	rds/phrases and examp	les in the table and look at the

B Climate change

OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the gradual increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, and is caused by harmful gases. Many environmentalists believe that most of this pollution is the result of human activities. Here are some of the effects:

· As the ice at the poles2 melts, sea levels could rise by almost a metre in the next century.

· There will be more extreme and unpredictable weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.

· The earth will become even warmer because the rainforests3 are disappearing.



spotlight effect N, affect V

change in a particular way.

(= will make our lives change).

by something.

An effect is a change which is caused

What are the effects of global warming?

To affect something means to make it

Climate change will affect all our lives

· Famine and disease will spread, and this will especially affect people in poor countries.

Glossary	A REPORT OF THE PROPERTY.	en a la facilitation de	
climate	 the normal weather conditions of a particular region. 	human melt	connected with people.If you heat ice, it melts: it
(the) environment	 the natural world; the air, 		changes from a solid to a liquid.
	land, and water in which	rise	• increase; go higher. rise N. OPP
	people, plants, and animals live (an environmentalist is sb who studies the	extreme	fall v, N. much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
gradual	environment). • happening slowly over a long period of time. gradually ADV.	unpredictable	• If sth is unpredictable, you can't say how it will change in the
the atmosphere	· the gases around the earth,		future. opp predictable. predict v.
harmful	planets, etc. causing damage, injury, or illness. harm sth/sb v.	disappear famine	 stop existing. syn vanish. A famine is when there is not enough food in a country.
gas	 a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen. 	disease	illness in people, animals, or plants.
pollution	 dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. pollute v. 	spread	 affect more and more people or things.

		The state of the s
4	Co	omplete the words.
		h <u>uman</u> 4 h_rmf_1 8 l_qu_d
		pr_d_ct_ble 5 atmoere 9 d_sse
		disear 6 env_ro_m_nt 10 cl_m_t_
		f_m_ne 7 p_ll_tn
	,	
6	G	ood or bad? Write G or B.
		This gas won't harm anyone. 6
	1	Some kinds of animals are vanishing 5 The weather is less extreme
		The flood water is falling 6 The earth's temperature is rising
	3	Famine is spreading 7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting
	4	This liquid is harmful 8 The river is polluted
6	Ci	rcle the correct word.
		Ice is a solid/liquid.
	1	How does the situation effect/affect you?
	2	It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
	3	My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
	4	Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
	5	Eat your ice cream quickly – it's spreading/melting.
	6	Water is a liquid/gas.
	7	The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
	8	There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.
		A CARACTER CASA CASA CASA CASA CASA CASA CASA CAS
7	Co	omplete the sentences.
10000		The earth is gradually getting warmer.
	1	We had a lot of e weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I
		think it's all part of cchange.
	2	If you freeze water, it changes from a l to a s
	3	The beach was p with oil, which seriously a the sea birds and animals.
	4	Environmentalists p that there will be a r in sea levels in the future.
	5	With g warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d very fast.
	6	Certain diseases s from person to person very quickly.
	7	P has a very h effect on the environment.
	8	After many months without rain, there is a real danger of f in this part of Africa.
		was a second of the second
8	AE	SOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.
	1	How worried are you about global warming?
	2	Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?
	2	
	3	Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?

14 I can describe natural disasters

A Types of disaster











Hurricane¹: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a **violent** storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a **typhoon**.

Earthquake²: a sudden violent movement of the ground causing damage.

Tidal wave³: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or

earthquake, and which **destroys** things when it reaches land.

Volcanic eruption⁴: a volcano is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it erupts, hot gases and lava are forced out into the air and onto the surrounding land.

Drought⁵: a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death.**

Glossary

disaster a very bad event, causing harm or death.

violent very strong and usually causing damage. violence N.

sudden happening very quickly. suddenly ADV.

ground the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.

damage harm or injury caused when sth is broken. damage v.

destroy sth break sth completely so it can't be used again. destruction N.

erupt explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.

lava hot liquid rock (see picture).

surrounding that is near or around sth. surroundings N.

crops plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.

starve (to death) suffer (or die) because you don't have enough food.

0	Combine five more	pairs of words fro	m the box to form	compound words o	r phrases.
---	-------------------	--------------------	-------------------	------------------	------------

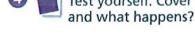
earth ✓ volcanic tidal surrounding starve land eruption violent wave quake ✓ to death storm

- earthquake
- What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?
 - volcanic volcano
- 2 violent
- surrounding _____

- 1 destroy
- 3 erupt _____
- 5 damage _____

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
- 1 During the h_____, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely d_____ or badly d_____. It was a terrible d_____ for the island.
- 2 They expect a period of d : the c will die and people could s
- Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster



EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

ate last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept.

Thousands have now been **evacuated**, but there are **fears** that many are still **trapped** inside their homes, so the **death toll** could rise. The damage has already been considerable and the next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to try to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

Glossary	X 1997年 199
hit sth/sb	• make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. syn strike sth/sk
collapse	 If a building collapses, it falls to the ground. collapse N.
evacuate sb	 move sb away from a dangerous place. evacuation N.
fear	 a feeling that sth bad might happen. fear v.
trap sb	 If sb is trapped, they are inside sth and cannot get out.
death toll	 the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
considerable	very large in size or amount.
crucial	• very important.
rescue sb	• take sb from a dangerous place to safety. syn save sb.
maintain sth	· make sth continue at a certain level.
supply (pr supplies)	an amount of sth that you need.

5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

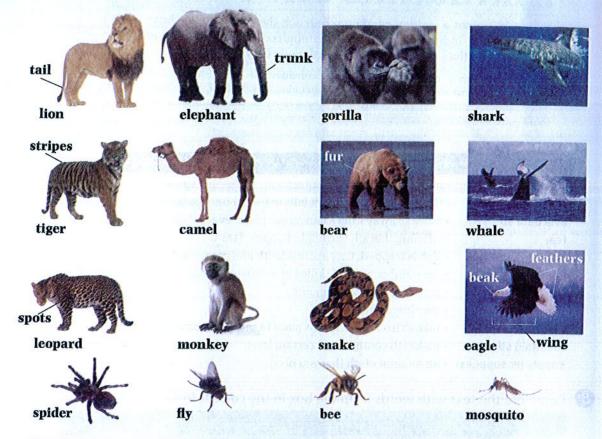
(2	2)		and people	e will be (3)	i	nside. As	soon as	the immed	liate danger has
pa	assed, t	ne first	ob is to (4)		_ people from t	he area,	and (5) _	100 FREE 100	those in dang
A	t the sa	me tim	e, the gover	nment will	send in (6)	10 1000	of food,	water, and	d blankets to the
di	saster a	area. O	ne of the ha	rdest things	s of all is to (7)		a su	pply of clea	an drinking wate
aı	nd there	e is alw	ays the (8)		_ that more peo	ple could	l die.		
R	eplace	the u	derlined	words wit	h a different v	word tha	at has t	he same	meaning.
							fear		
	Many	people	are afraid	that there w	vill be more eart		fear		
1	Many	people	are afraid gs fell to th	that there w	vill be more eart	thquakes.	fear	and the second of the second o	
1 2	Many Many It cou	people buildir ld be a	are afraid gs fell to th very impor	that there we be ground. tant decision	vill be more eart	thquakes.			
1 2 3	Many Many It cou	people buildir ld be a	are afraid gs fell to th very impor	that there we be ground. tant decision	vill be more eart	thquakes.			
1 2 3 4	Many Many It cou The v	people buildir ld be a illagers are pe	are afraid gs fell to th very import have all becople who a	that there was ground. — tant decision en moved fr re inside the	vill be more eart	thquakes.	t out.		in the delication of the second secon
1 2 3 4 5	Many Many It cou The v There Scien	people buildir ld be a illagers are pe tists be	are afraid gs fell to th very impor have all bee ople who a ieve the hu	that there was ground. — tant decision en moved from the inside the tricane will in the the	vill be more eart n. om the village. eir homes and coreach and attac	hquakes. annot get	out	4 hours	ATTEMPORALIS
1 2 3 4	Many It cou The v There Scien	people buildir Id be a illagers are pe tists be umber	are afraid gs fell to the very importing the community of the community are all becomes the hur of people k	that there was ground. — tant decision en moved from the tricane will possible the cilled could be	vill be more eart	annot gel k Florida	out	4 hours	ATTEMPORALIS



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects



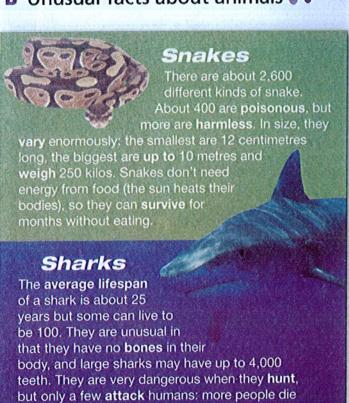
Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.wild living in natural conditions; not looked after by people.insect a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

- One letter is missing. Write the words correctly. ▶ tier tiger 4 grilla _____ 8 sark 1 lepard _____ 5 wale _____ 9 money _____ 2 elepant _____ 6 sider _____ 3 eale _____ 7 nake Which creature: ▶ has wings? fly______, e______, 3 has thick fur? g______, b_____ 4 has a trunk? e_____ b_____, m____ 1 has a tail? I:_____, e____, ____, 5 has stripes? t_____ 6 has spots? L____ t_____, c_____, m_____
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.

2 is an insect? f. _____, b. ____, m. _____ 7 has a beak and feathers? e.

B Unusual facts about animals



Glossary

poisonous producing a dangerous substance (poison) that can kill or harm you.

harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness, opp harmful, harm N, V.

vary (of a group) be different from each other.

up to used when saying the most an amount can be.

weigh have a certain weight N, which is how heavy sth is.

survive continue to live in a difficult situation. survival N.

average normal or typical.

lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say life expectancy).

bone

hunt sth go after sth to catch and kill it. attack sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. attack N.

sting a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. sting v.

4	True	or	fa	lse?	Write	T	or	F.	
---	------	----	----	------	-------	---	----	----	--

- ► The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F
- 1 Most snakes are poisonous.
- 2 Most sharks are harmless to humans.

from bee stings than from shark attacks.

- 3 Some snakes are longer than ten metres.
- 4 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos. __
- 5 Sharks have bones in their body.
- 6 Sharks sting when they attack. ____

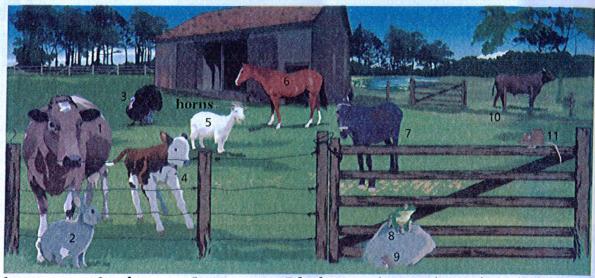
Answer the questions.

- ▶ Is attack a noun or a verb, or can it be both? both
- 1 What is the noun from the verb survive? __
- 2 If animals have a lifespan, what do people have? Life __
- 3 What is the noun from the verb weigh? ___
- 4 What is the adjective from poison? __
- 5 What are the two adjectives from the noun harm?

6 Complete the words in these animal facts.

- ► The average Lifespan of most bees is 30 to 35 days.
- 1 Some snakes can s_____ for almost a year without food.
- 2 Nobody knows the a______lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
- 3 People h_____ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
- 4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp s_
- 5 Snakes can grow u_____ to ten metres long.
- 6 The size of sharks can v._____ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.

C Farm and small animals



1	cow
2	rabbit

3	turkey
	colf

5 goat 6 horse

7 donkey 8 frog

9 mouse (PL mice) 10 bull

11 rat

A cow is the female animal that is kept on farms to produce milk. The male is a bull. Cows and bulls kept as farm animals can be called cattle. A group of cows is called a herd.

Complete the sentences.

	A goat often has two horns on its head.
1	A young cow is a
2	The plural of mouse is
	Cows, sheep, and produce milk that people drink
	A is like a small horse with long ears.
5	A is like a mouse, but is larger.
C	A lives in an appropriate and confuses

6	A	lives in or near	water, and can jump
7	A	bull is the adult	of the cow family.

				~ .
8	Α	is	a group of cov	NS.

			-	3.000	
9	Α	is	a	large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten	١.

8 Complete these animals' names.

	rat	3	b l	6	m e
1	h e	4	c f	7	d y
2	g t	5	f g	8	ty

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

1	Which of the animals on this page do people eat?
2	Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?
	horses?
	goats?
	bulls?
	donkeys?
	mice?



Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

¹⁰ The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is

Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1 Complete the questions and answers.

o.	How long would a	rocket take to	o(1) r Mars?		
	It would take (2) a	260 days.			
Q	Is the (3) e	the only (4) p	in the solar (5) s	where life (6) e	
A	Yes, most (7) s	believe that to	be true.		
a	Who (8) d	the planet Venus?			
A	Most people think it	was the ancient Gree	ks.		
•	Who (9) i	the first American r	ocket to go into (10) s	?	
4	Robert Goddard, in	the early twentieth ce	ntury.		
2	What are 'Phobos' a	nd 'Deimos'?			
1	They are two small	moons or (11) s	which (12) c	the planet Mars.	
2	How many stars are	there in the (13) u	?		
		ure but some say (14	r ten thousan	d billion billion!	
1000		niro hiit gome gav 114	r ten mousan	id difficit difficit:	
	Nobody knows for s	efinitions	uns winter it has been w	nas visanska plovelsten	
	Complete the de	efinitions	uns winter it has been w		
	Complete the de	efinitions. hat shines during th	e day		
	Complete the de sun = the star t explore =	efinitions. hat shines during th	e <u>day</u> ace in order to learn abou	cortingately, a sively bard to see very hote but to further with the bal warming is to song that	
	Complete the de sun = the star t explore = far-fetched =	efinitions. hat shines during th round a pla easy to	e <u>day</u> ace in order to learn abou believe	dortunately, it is well built to was very their built previously chalf weighting is a county to	
	Complete the de sun = the star t explore = far-fetched = revolve around	efinitions. hat shines during th round a pla easy to something = go rou	e <u>day</u> ace in order to learn abou believe and something in a	dortunately, it is well built to was very their built previously chalf weighting is a county to	

Unit 12

1	Circ	10	the	odd	one	Out

boat (harbour) ship 5 pond flood lake 3 float sink drown 1 rock wave pebble 4 bank ocean shore 6 steep shallow deep 2 stream river puddle

__ before

6 confirm = say or show that something is _____ or definite 7 in other words: used for saying something in a _____ way

8 invent = create something that didn't

2 Complete the sentences.

	implete the self-terrees.
	This river flows out to the sea.
1	The river is wide in some places but very in others.
2	Look! There's something floating on the of the water.
3	They're building a harbour to provide for the boats in bad weather.
4	The boat in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
5	Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the
6	It wasn't very nice on the boat because the sea was so
7	The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres
8	We had to climb acliff, which was very difficult.

		ne letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write th ord at the end.	ne correct
	•	When does the time come in this morning?tide	
	1	There are large socks on the beach.	
	2	They travelled by chip.	
	3	They travelled by chip There's a sleep cliff by the shore	
	4	We have a number of fish in our pony	
	5	We saw some fishing boots.	
	6	We saw some fishing boots. Look out! There's a big cave coming. It rained beavily and we had a floor	
	7	it failed fleavily and we flad a floor.	
	8	Why did the boat pink? The river blows down to the sea here	
	9	The river blows down to the sea here.	
1	0	It's a very sandy peach.	
Un	it	13	
1	Co	mplete the sentences.	
	•	Cars and factories are causing a lot of <u>pollution</u> .	
		It's with rain outside. The children will get very wet.	
		What are the main of global warming?	
	3	It's usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very	
	4	Unfortunately, it's very hard to the future: anything could happen.	
	5	It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely coming off the sea.	
	6	Global warming is causing more weather conditions, which will	TX9. Inside
		people in different parts of the world in different ways.	
2	n .	over uncondesponsible of a condition of a government of the condition of a condition of the	
2		place the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.	
1		Pollution is damaging the <u>air, land, and water in which we live</u> . <u>environment</u>	
	1		
	2	Global warming will cause damage to the environment.	
		If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid	
	3	If you heat ice, it <u>changes from a solid to a liquid.</u> With global warming, sea levels will <u>get higher</u> .	
4	3 4	If you heat ice, it <u>changes from a solid to a liquid.</u> With global warming, sea levels will <u>get higher.</u> Famine could <u>affect more people in a larger area</u> .	
	3 4 5	If you heat ice, it <u>changes from a solid to a liquid</u> . With global warming, sea levels will <u>get higher</u> . Famine could <u>affect more people in a larger area</u> . These changes may happen <u>slowly over a period of time</u> .	al a di Si an u
	3 4 5	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist.	Unit
	3 4 5	If you heat ice, it <u>changes from a solid to a liquid</u> . With global warming, sea levels will <u>get higher</u> . Famine could <u>affect more people in a larger area</u> . These changes may happen <u>slowly over a period of time</u> .	Unit
	3 4 5 6	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist.	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist.	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist.	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6 t Ma	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake ✓ tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed earthquake	StanU
Uni 1 I	3 4 5 6 t	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6 t Ma	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake / tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph.	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6 t Ma	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake / tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph.	StanU
Uni	3 4 5 6 7 7 8	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake ✓ tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water.	StanU
Uni 1 1	3 4 5 6 t Ma	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake / tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water. We've had months without rain.	StanU
Uni 1 1	3 4 5 5 6 7 1	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake / tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water. We've had months without rain. There was a sudden violent movement of the ground.	StanU
Uni 1 1	3 4 5 6 7 7 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake ✓ tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water. We've had months without rain. There was a sudden violent movement of the ground. When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach.	StanU
Uni 1 1	3 4 5 6 7 7	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake / tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water. We've had months without rain. There was a sudden violent movement of the ground.	StanU
Uni 1 1	3 4 5 5 6 7 7	If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist. 14 tch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box. hurricane earthquake tidal wave volcanic eruption drought Many buildings collapsed. earthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. Winds reached 150 kph. There was a huge volume of water. We've had months without rain. There was a sudden violent movement of the ground. When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach. Lava covered the surrounding villages.	StanU

2	Match	1-7	with	a-h.
C 200	IVICICII			· · · · ·

- ► There has been considerable _f_
- The death _
- 2 The school and several houses __
- 3 They rescued ___
- 4 They need to maintain
- 5 People are trapped ____
- 6 The earthquake struck
- People fear that _____

- a in the early morning.
- b more people.
- c inside buildings.
- d toll could rise.
- e more will die.
- f damage. 🗸
- g collapsed.
- h supplies.

Unit 15

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

tiger/ calf lion fly whale bee donkey gorilla shark leopard goat mosquito

Wild animals	Farm animals	Insects	Sea creatures
▶ tiger	7 articholo:		7, 00000000
1111	ार्यकामधेक ह		alimakaaleeng 2
- 19			XXXXXXXXXX
61/244	xxxxxxxxxx	XXXXXXXXXX	xxxxxxxxxx

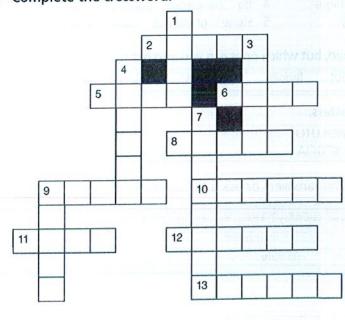
2 What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

tigers 🗸	snake	es l	eo	pards	elephants
eagles	bears	bee	es	goats	

beak stripes ✓ trunk spots sting horns fur poisonous

Tigers	have	stripe	s.
	-	AND DESCRIPTIONS	

3 Complete the crossword.



ACROSS

2 birds have these



- 6 differ from each other
- 8 large animal, lives in the desert
- 9 bees can do this
- 10 a very intelligent animal
- 11 a young cow
- 12 how heavy something is
- 13 small creature with eight legs

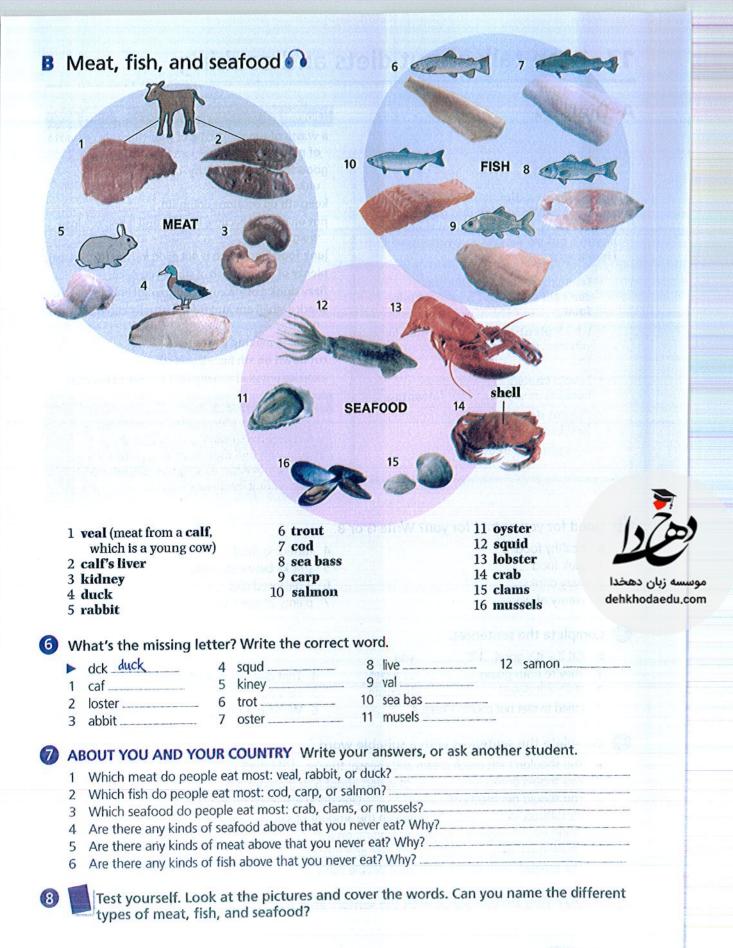
DOWN

- 1 plural of mouse
- 3 long thin creature, moves along the ground
- 4 you can die if you eat or drink this
- 7 not causing injury or danger
- 9 large sea creature, can be dangerous

16 I can describe a range of food

A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs 1 plums 1 spinach 2 apricots 2 leek 3 raspberries 3 celery 4 grapefruits 4 broccoli 5 avocado 5 chickpeas 6 figs 6 fennel 7 coconut 7 artichoke 8 passion fruits 8 asparagus 9 papaya 9 sweetcorn 10 pomegranates 10 beetroot 3 basil 4 thyme 1 parsley 2 mint 5 rosemary Circle the odd one out in each group. ▶ fig coconut (parsley) raspberry fig coconut (parsley) raspberry leek papaya artichoke asparagus 3 celery asparagus beetroot thyme 4 fig sweetcorn pomegranate coconut 2 spinach basil mint rosemary 5 stone grapefruit plum apricot These vegetables are usually cooked, but which ones can you also eat raw? Write C or R. spinach R artichoke beetroot fennel chickpeas celery broccoli Find five more fruits from the letters. ▶ BARSERPY raspberry 2 NOCUTOC 4 FRATUGERIP 1 MULP _____ 3 PRTOCIA __ 5 DAOVAOC_ ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student. Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No. papaya coconut raspberries passion fruit plums basil parsley chickpeas asparagus artichoke sweetcorn

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



17 I can talk about diets and cooking

A Diets 🚳

Who needs to diet?

I never go on a diet: it's a waste of time. Diets list all the food that is good for you, but few people can keep them up. I haven't put on weight in twenty years. Here's why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don't eat a lot. And I don't eat junk food
- I drink plenty of water. It's better for you than fizzy drinks, and cheaper too.
- I avoid snacks between meals because most of them are fattening.
- I've cut down on the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- · I get plenty of exercise.

Glossary

a waste of time a bad use of your time (also a waste of money).

good for you SYN healthy. OPP bad for you / unhealthy.

keep sth up continue doing sth.

put on weight become heavier and fatter, opp lose weight.

junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).
 plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.
 fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.
 snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.

fattening making you fatter.
cut down on sth have less of sth.
exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

spotlight diet

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet** / **go on a diet**, which means eating less to lose weight.

1	G	ood for you or bad for y	ou? Write G or	В.		lius e	
	•	healthy food G			fattening food		
	1	junk food		5	snacks between r	neals	2 native fiver
	2	fizzy drinks		6	a balanced diet		youthin a
	3	plenty of water		7	AND COLUMN TO SERVICE OF THE SERVICE		
2	C	omplete the sentences.			er? Write the to		
		Eat it - it's good for	vou.				
	1	They're both going	27 C WILLIAM CO. C.		4 That diet was a	waste _	time.
	2	She's cut down			5 He's put		
	3	I tried to diet but couldn't k					orange juice
3	Co	omplete the sentences w	vith a suitable w	ord.			ABOUT YOU
	•	You shouldn't eat much cr	eam and cheese:	thev'	re fattening		
	1	You should drink		10000			
	2	You should get plenty of					
	3	It's difficult to				3,	7
	4	Doing lots of exercise is be			Section of the sectio		
	5	I think diets are a	The second secon				
	6	The problem with diets is t			•	n up.	to a production of the second
					Search Survey of his and	016 -	

B Cooking

Recipe for Cottage Pie



Ingredients

300 g minced¹ beef 300 g potatoes

- 1 large onion
- 1 carrot

2–3 chopped tomatoes 300 ml beef **stock**

1 tablespoon of **flour**² butter, salt, and pepper

Peel³ the potatoes and boil until just cooked. Then mash⁴ them with butter.

Chop⁵ the onion and carrot. Fry⁶ the meat and vegetables quickly, then stir⁷ in the flour and cook for one minute. Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large dish, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and bake in a hot oven⁸ for 30 minutes.

Glossary

recipe a set of instructions for cooking sth.

ingredients the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.

stock water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.

boil sth cook sth in water, usually in a **saucepan**.



fry sth cook sth in oil, usually in a frying pan.



add sth put sth together with sth else.

dish a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).bake sth cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = roast).

6 Which word is being defined?

- Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces __minCe
- 1 Remove the skin _
- 2 Cut into many pieces _____
- 3 Put something with another thing
- 4 Press and mix until soft and smooth
- 5 Cook in water _____
- 6 Cook in oil
- 7 Cook in the oven without oil or fat
- 8 Cook in the oven with oil or fat

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Boil the carrots in that s aucepan
 - 1 I've got a good r_____ for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i_____
 - 2 A _____ the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
 - 3 The frying p_____ is fine, but I need a larger d_____ to serve the meat on.
 - 4 You have to b the cake in the o for about 40 minutes.
- 5 If you add some f______, it will make the sauce thicker.
- 6 Add the s the rice continuously while it cooks.
- Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?

18 I can talk about money

A Buying things 6

They agree to take €20 off, so you buy it and get a receipt.

Next day, there's a problem with it, so you take it back and ask for a **refund**.

A phone costs €120. You can't afford it, but there's a scratch¹ on it, so you ask the shop assistant for a discount.



They refuse, so you wait for the sales.

Then, it is reduced to €80 – a bargain.

You buy it and pay cash. You give them €100 and they give you €20 **change**.

Comp	lete	the	sentences.

- If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off
- 1 If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't ______ it.
- 2 If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a ______.
- 3 If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been _____ by €10.
- 4 The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the _____.
- 5 If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a ______.
- 6 If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 _____.
- 7 When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a _____.
- 8 If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a ______.

Glossary

- afford sth If you can afford sth you have enough money to pay for it.
- scratch a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (see picture).
- **discount** a cut in the usual price of something. syn **reduction**.
- off If sth has €20 off, it costs €20 less than usual. receipt a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
- refund an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
- the sales a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
- reduce sth make sth less in size, quantity, or price. reduction N.
- bargain sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
- **change** If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 **change**.

Complete the questions in the questionnaire. Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something? 1 When you go shopping, do you always look for a b ? 2 If you saw a product in a shop that had a s on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money o ? 3 Do you always check your c when you pay? 4 Do you often wait and buy things in the s ? If so, what things? 5 Do you often take things back and ask for a r ?

ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

B I'm not very good with money

LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much income until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very wealthy woman. She immediately bought a house worth €1m, a car that cost a fortune, and jewellery valued at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a waste of money. She owned it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted huge amounts of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely broke. Now she owes the bank over €5,000, and has credit card debts as well.

Glossary	
income	 the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
wealthy	• rich. syn well off.
worth	 If a flat is worth €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the value).
cost a fortune	be very expensive.
value sth at sth	 decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
waste of money	a bad use of money.
own sth	 If you own sth, it is yours; it belongs to you.
huge	 very large. syn massive.
amount	· a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
broke	 INF having no money.
owe sb sth	 have to pay money to sb for sth they have done or given.
debt	• an amount of money that you owe sb.

U		Cover the text. Answer the questions.	and the page and t	
	•	How did Maria become wealthy?	the won the lottery.	
	1	How much was her new house worth?	e a waye abby can	
	2	What was her jewellery valued at?	and of the second second second for the op-	
	3	How long did she own her new house?	www.co.da con de nateur du de pelów.	
	4		<u> Average and a factor of the state of the factor of the f</u>	
	5		<u> Professional de la proposició de sectiones de la companya de la </u>	
	6	Does she have any other debts?	surface (climpa) principal rings code più asser une ser collectivi dell'ori dell'ori dell'ori dell'ori dell'ori	
000000		with words on page and some	Haplace the underlined word or phrase v	
6	Re	ewrite the sentences using the words in cap	oitals.	
		My boss has a lot of money. WEALTHY My bo	ooss is very wealthy.	
	1	It's a very large house HIIGE	Welland to the Market Control of the Market State of the Control o	
	2	The house is worth £2 000 000. VALUE	Germestow started records back a part Large	
	3	Dani hasn't got any manay PPOVE		
	4	The flat doesn't belong to me. OWN	Manuals and restauce, asset pace flatiousses	
	5	Her shoes were very expensive. FORTUNE	ungkan hayang e banasahan darili dalam .	
	6	Gisela has debts of €5,000. OWE	and the second s	
	Ü	discid flas desics of deperture of the		
6	Co	omplete the sentences.		
		The watch went wrong after two months; it was	s a waste of money.	
	1	My uncle won a huge of money, so	so he's very off now.	
	2	I haven't got any money; I'm completely		
	3	It's a nice flat, but it isn't half a mil	illion euros	
	4	It's an absolutelyschool: there are	about 2.500 students	
	5	He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has	s a good	
	5	He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has		
7		Test yourself. Look at the glossary words	s and cover the meanings. What are the	
	E 19	meanings?	SVILL STATE OF THE	

19 I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep 📦

BEFORE: You feel sleepy, start yawning¹, and decide to go to bed. You might put on pyjamas2 or a nightie3, perhaps set the alarm4, and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you fall asleep.

DURING: When you're asleep, you have dreams⁵ and possibly nightmares. Some people snore6; at this point they're fast asleep.

AFTER: 7.30 a.m. The alarm goes off. It might wake you up, or you might be wide awake already. People without an alarm might oversleep, others might decide to have a lie-in.



sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep. fall asleep start sleeping. syn go to sleep.

asleep sleeping.

nightmare a bad dream.

fast asleep sleeping deeply, syn in a deep sleep. OPP wide awake.

go off ring or make a noise.

wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.

oversleep sleep longer than you should or want.

have a lie-in INF stay in bed later than usual.













Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

▶ sleepy	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

Complete the sentences.

- 1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast ▶ asleep ... Do you want me to ____
- 2 I felt really _____, so I went to bed.
- 3 I forgot to _____ my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I _____
- 4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a _____.
- 5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide ____
- 6 I felt really tired I couldn't stop
- so loudly that he keeps me awake. My husband wears red _____ in bed and _



Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.

B Sleep habits 🕠

	ABOUT YOU
Antonio: 'I sleep like a log wherever I am.'	
Ella: 'If I eat late, I often have a restless night.'	
Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't concentrate the next day.'	
Raul: 'Lack of sleep makes me really irritable.'	
Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling exhausted.'	450000000000000000000000000000000000000
Carla: 'I've always been a heavy sleeper - nothing disturbs n	
Nick: 'I suffer from insomnia, so I never get much sleep.'	
Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often have a nap.'	beta-turnamentanamenta
Omar: 'When there are things on my mind - like exams - I sleep really badly."	

	200					
GI		c	c	9		v
O.	U	o	J	а	ш	v

habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.

sleep like a log sleep very well. OPP sleep badly. have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.

concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth. lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).

irritable becoming angry easily.

exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally,

- a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily, opp a light sleeper.
- disturb sb do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.
- suffer from sth have the experience of sth unpleasant.
- insomnia If you suffer from insomnia, you are often unable to sleep.
- have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour. on my mind If sth is on your mind, you're thinking or worrying about it.

Find six more phrases in the box	4	Find si	x more	phrases	in the	box.
----------------------------------	---	---------	--------	---------	--------	------

concentrate ✓ have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap a heavy on something ✓ on night suffer from sleeper my mind

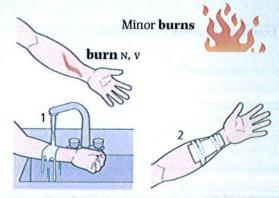
	concentrate or	on something	
--	----------------	--------------	--

6 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

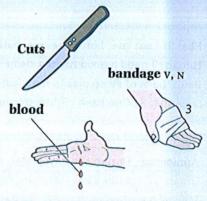
- I get very <u>irritable</u> if I don't sleep well.
- 1 These days I often have a ______ after lunch; it's almost become a ____
- 2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep _____
- 3 I never sleep more than three hours a night I ______ insomnia.
- 4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very _____ night.
- 5 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my
- 6 Nothing ____ me at night I'm a very ____ sleeper.
- 7 I was absolutely _____ last night and I slept for ten hours.
- 8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a ______ of sleep.
- 6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.

20 I can talk about injuries

A Burns and cuts



Hold the affected area under running water¹ for 15 minutes. **Cover** it with a dry, clean **dressing**² to **prevent infection**. If **symptoms** of infection **develop**, see your doctor.



Wash and dry your hands **thoroughly**. Clean the **wound** under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it **temporarily** while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or **bandage**³ it. It should **heal up** in a few days.

Glossary

• put sth over sth, especially to protect it.

• stop sth from happening. prevention N.

• an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.

• a change in your body which is a sign of illness.

develop • grow or increase.

thoroughly • in a very careful and complete way.

• an area of damage to part of your body (especially a cut).

temporarily
• for a short time only.
heal or heal up
• become healthy again.

1 Complete the words.

 ▶ prevent
 3 th_r_ghl
 6 s_mpt_m

 1 inf___ion
 4 w__nd
 7 t__por_r_ly

2 Complete the texts.



B A nasty injury 🕠



The other day I **slipped**¹ and fell **backwards** and **banged** my **elbow**² on the ground.





I started to feel dizzy³ and then I fainted⁴. I was unconscious for a minute or so.



When I came round, my arm was very painful. It was quite swollen and bruised⁵, but it wasn't bleeding. I realized it was a serious injury, so I went to hospital.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you come round, you are conscious. T
- 1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds.
- 2 If you faint, you become unconscious.
- 3 If you lose blood, you always faint.
- 4 A bruised knee looks blue. ___
- 5 A nasty burn is a serious burn.
- 6 If you slip, you can easily fall.
- 7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm.
- 8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual.
- 9 Feeling dizzy is very painful. ____
- 10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards.

Glossary

nasty very bad or unpleasant.

injury an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident. injure v.

backward(s) in the direction behind you. opp forward(s).

bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.

dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.

unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. OPP conscious.

come round become conscious again. opps faint, pass out.

swollen larger than usual because of an injury.
bleed lose blood from your body.

A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- ► The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite the next day. bruised
- 1 I on the ice and fell over.
- 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards? ____
- 3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was. __
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
- 5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor.
- 6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

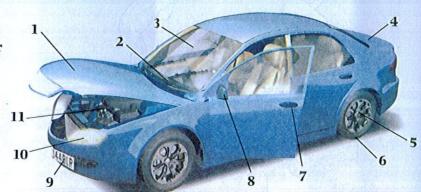
- 1 had a swollen eye. ___
- 2 fainted in a public place.
- 3 had a serious injury.

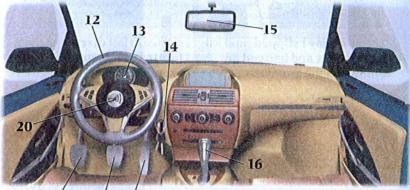
- 4 slipped and fallen into a river.
- 5 had a nasty burn on your arm. ___
- 6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.

21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

- 1 bonnet
- 2 windscreen wiper
- 3 windscreen
- 4 boot
- 5 wheel
- 6 tyre
- 7 door handle
- 8 wing mirror
- 9 number plate
- 10 headlights
- 11 engine
- 12 steering wheel
- 13 speedometer
- 14 ignition
- 15 rear-view mirror
- 16 gear stick/lever
- 17 accelerator
- 18 brake
- 19 clutch
- 20 horn





19 18 17

Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number wing gear wheel mirror ✓ wiper handle plate

ren	r-V	Pul	mir	ror

- Outside the car or inside the car? Write O or I.
 - ▶ clutch 1
 - 1 tyre ____
 - 2 speedometer ____
 - 3 steering wheel ____
 - 4 headlight ____
 - 5 brake ____
 - 6 rear-view mirror
 - 7 wheel ____
 - 8 horn__
 - 9 windscreen wiper ____

3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to . . .

- start the car, turn on the _ignition
- 1 stop, put your foot on the ______.
- 2 change gear, put your foot on the
- 3 go faster, put your foot on the _____.
- 4 store luggage, open the ______.
- 5 look at the engine, open the _____.
- 6 see at night, turn on the
- 7 turn a corner, look in your _____.
- 8 drive in the rain, turn on the
- 9 warn someone, press your _____



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?

B Driving tips



TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always be prepared for bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- · On wet roads, brake, steer, and accelerate gently to avoid skidding.
- · Watch out for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when overtaking.
- · In car parks, reverse into a parking space rather than drive into it.
- . Keep to the speed limit and don't drive too close to the vehicle in front.

Glossary

tip

· a piece of practical advice.

be prepared for sth . be ready and able to deal with any problems. prepare v.

· go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.

steer

· control the direction a vehicle is moving in.

accelerate skid

go faster, opp slow down.

watch out

· suddenly move sideways without control.

· be careful because there is a possible danger.

overtake sb/sth

· go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.

reverse rather than · go backwards in a car. · instead of; in place of.

speed limit

· the highest legal speed at which you can

drive on a road.

close to sth

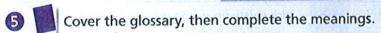
· near sth.

spotlight keep

Keep often means 'continue or stay in a particular place or condition'.

Keep to the speed limit. (Stay below the speed limit.)

Keep left. (Stay on the left.)



- brake = stop a vehicle
- 1 overtake = go _____ another car
- 2 accelerate = go _____
- reverse = go _____

- 4 tip = a piece of ___
- 5 steer = control the _____ of the vehicle
- 6 rather than =

6 Complete the sentences.

- You shouldn't overtake on a bridge.
- 1 The weather was awful and I wasn't really ______ for it.
- 2 I never go over the speed ______, or drive too ______ to the cars in front.
 3 He crashed into the tree after he _____ on the wet road.
- 4 There's a school on the corner, so ______ out for small children.
- 5 Do you always _____ to the speed limit?
- 6 I parked in the street _____ than the car park because it's free.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already?
- 2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently?
- 3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not? __
- 4 Are there times when you don't keep to the speed limit?
- 5 Do you know what to do if your car skids? ___
- 6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather?



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes 🕟

'We had **trouble** getting to the airport because we **got held up** in traffic.'

'I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my day return was only valid after 9.30.'

'The train was due at 9.42 but it didn't get in until 10.25.'

'I was late because they cancelled my train without warning.'

'The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my connecting flight to Palermo.'

'My brother was meant to pick me up at the airport, but he didn't turn up.'

- 1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.
 - ▶ I got my connecting flight. G
 - 1 The train was cancelled.
 - 2 The train's due in a minute.
 - 3 They didn't turn up. ____

Glossary

trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

get/be held up If you get held up or are held up, sth has caused you to be late. syn be delayed.

day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

valid acceptable and able to be used.

due expected to arrive or happen.

get in (usually of a train or coach see picture) arrive.



cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

warning information that sth bad may happen. connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

meant to do sth If sb is or was meant to do sth, they have been asked to do it.

pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

- 4 This ticket is still valid.
- 5 I couldn't get a day return.
- 6 They didn't get held up. ...
- 7 We were delayed. ___

- 2 Complete the sentences.
 - My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn't turn up.
 - 1 They've just said the train is ______ in five minutes, so that's good.
 - 2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my flight to Malaga.
 - 3 We had a lot of _____ at the border: we were _____ for two hours.
 - 4 Passengers arrived late because the train company ______ two trains this morning.
 - 5 I was _____ to meet them at the station, but I got _____ up in the traffic.
 - 6 What time does your train _____ in?
 - 7 He's gone to the airport to _____ them up.
 - 8 There was no _____ that trains might be cancelled.
- ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
 - 1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?
 - 2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?

B On the roads

Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little **trip** to Spain. We stayed **overnight** in Malaga, then **hired a car** and drove up to Seville, **stopping off** at Osuna **on the way**. We loved Seville – you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, **via** Jerez, but the journey was a **nightmare!** We **got stuck** in a **traffic jam** for hours, and when we finally **ended up** on **the outskirts** of Cadiz, there was more **heavy traffic** because of **the rush hour**. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to . . .

spotlight way

The way is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

Is this the way to the bank? I went the wrong way and got lost. We stopped on the way to Scotland. I saw him on my way to school.

Glossary

trip a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a day trip, a business trip).

overnight for one night.

hire a car pay to use a car for a short time. syn rent a car.

stop off stop during a journey to do sth.

via going through a place (to get to another place).

nightmare INF an experience that is very unpleasant.

get/be stuck be unable to move easily.
traffic jam a long line of cars moving very slowly.

end up find yourself in a place or situation you didn't plan.

the outskirts (PLN) The outer part of a town or city is called the outskirts.

heavy traffic a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.

the rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

		heavy rush hire traffic off way traffic stuck up the wrong stop get end on a car hour the way jam
	>	heavy traffic
		Register the underlined worther phrase with a word or phrase should be Assided.
6	Co	omplete the definitions.
	_	The outer part of a town or city is the Outskirts Mennie Real Annual Control of the Coutskirts
	1	A journey to a place and then back again is a
	2	A long line of cars moving slowly is a
	3	If you stay somewhere for one night, you stay
	4	To pay to use a car for a short time is to it.
	5	A very unpleasant experience is a It also means 'a bad dream'.
	6	If you go through Birmingham to get to London, you go Birmingham.
6	Co	omplete the questions. ABOUT YOU
	1	Have you or your family ever a car? If so, when and why?
	2	On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as guickly as possible,
	-	or do you like to off somewhere on the ?
	3	Do you often get in traffic?
	-	Do you ever go on day? If so, where to?

CA road accident

Here is the latest travel news . . .

There's been a serious accident on the M3 outside Winchester. It occurred just after 7.00 a.m., when a van skidded on the wet road and collided with other vehicles. The accident has blocked two lanes of the motorway. Emergency services are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to avoid the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an ambulance has broken down while taking an injured driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport . . .



Glossary

serious accident occur

- · a bad or dangerous accident.
- · FML happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.

van



skid

 suddenly move forwards or sideways without. any control.

collide with sth

· hit sth very hard while moving. SYN crash into sth.

vehicle

• FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.

block a road, etc. lane

- · make it difficult for anything to pass.
- a part of a wide road marked by painted white lines.

emergency services • the police, ambulance, and fire services. avoid sb/sth ambulance

- stay away from sb/sth.



break down injured

- · (of a vehicle) stop working.
- · hurt physically.
- One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.
 - injured injured
 - 1 amblance
 - 2 veicle

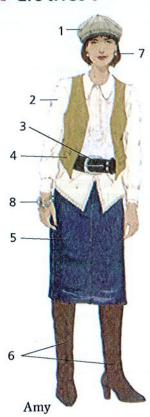
- serius ...
- emegency ___ ocur
- 6 bloc.
- 7 avid 8 colide ...
- Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
 - ▶ Was it a bad accident? __serious
 - 1 Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt.
 - 2 There are too many cars, vans, and lorries on the road.
 - 3 The van <u>crashed into</u> another car.
 - 4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road.
 - 5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes.
 - 6 The accident happened late last night.
- (10) Complete the sentences.
 - ► The car was hit by a big van
 - 1 We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree _____ the road.
 - 2 I think the driver must have _____ on the ice.
 - 3 There was a _____ accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.
 - 4 You should move into the outside ____ _____to overtake another car.
 - 5 The car _____ on the way to the airport and I had to ring for help.
 - 6 Several people were _____, and they were taken to hospital.



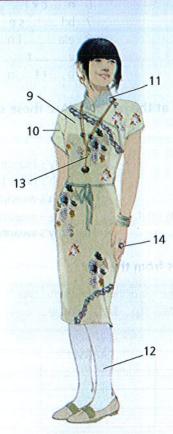
Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

A Clothes



- 1 cap
- 2 cotton blouse/shirt
- 3 belt
- 4 waistcoat
- 5 denim skirt
- 6 high-heeled leather boots
- 7 earrings
- 8 bracelet



Beth

- silk dress 10 short sleeves
- 11 collar
- 12 tights
- 13 necklace
- 14 ring



- 15 V-neck sweater
- 16 button
- 17 suede shoes
- 18 pocket

spotlight jewellery and material

Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of jewellery. Cotton and silk are types of material. SYN fabric.

Leather and suede are materials made from animal skin.



Underwear:

1 bra



2 knickers



3 slip



4 underpants

1ndr	w r	6	nckl	е	
2 mtr		7	b1se		elite.
3 slv_		8	e a i n	S	
4 tits		9	v t		
5 sde		10	b t t n		
Cover the Write T	ne words and look a or F.	t the picture:	. Are these s	tatements t	true or false?
Amy's wea	ring a necklace. <u>F</u>				
	ring a belt.	6	Amy's blouse	has got short	t sleeves.
	aring a ring	7		A THE OWNER OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE OWNER.	
	ring tights		Beth's wearing	high-heeled	shoes
	s has got two buttons of		Amy's wearing		
	aring denim jeans		Amy's wearing	g a denim ski	rt
Complete the	e table with words f	rom the box.			
THE PURCE		ATTACA DE LA CALIFORNIA DEL LA CALIFORNIA DE LA CALIFORNI			
derwear	underpants				50 S
	▶underpants	77			
ellery	▶ underpants				
vellery terial(s)	▶ underpants				
vellery terial(s)	▶ underpants		44.0		
vellery terial(s) thes	▶ underpants e questions with wor	rds from the	box.		
rellery terial(s) thes Complete the		CHARLEST FREE CONTROL	A PROPERTY SERVICES	bracelet m	naterial
rellery terial(s) thes Complete the	e questions with wo	CHARLEST FREE CONTROL	A PROPERTY SERVICES	bracelet m	naterial
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea	e questions with worther cap ✓ denim	ring neck If so, when an	sleeves silk d why?	RECEIVED BUTTON	naterial
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea	e questions with worther cap 🗸 denim	ring neck If so, when an	sleeves silk d why?	RECEIVED BUTTON	naterial
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever 1 Do you wea 2 Do you wea	e questions with worther cap ✓ denim wear a? If so r a? If so	ring neck If so, when an , on which fing , on which wris	sleeves silk d why? ler(s)?	ABOUT	naterial
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever Do you wea Do you wea How many I	e questions with worther cap / denim wear a ? If so r a ? If so eather ha	If so, when an , on which fing , on which wris	d why? er(s)?	ABOUT	naterial YOU
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever Do you wea Do you wea How many l	e questions with worther cap / denim wear a? If so ra? If so eather ho pairs of je	If so, when an , on which fing , on which wris ave you got? eans have you	d why? er(s)? st?	ABOUT	naterial YOU
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever Do you wea Do you wea How many I How many I What have y	e questions with worther cap ✓ denim wear a? If so ra? If so ra? If so eather ho airs of je you got that is made of	If so, when an , on which fing , on which wris ave you got? eans have you g	d why? er(s)? st? got? or	ABOUT	naterial YOU
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever Do you wea Do you wea How many I	e questions with worther cap denim wear a? If so ra? If so eather ho pairs of; ou got that is made of the any V sweat	If so, when an , on which fing , on which wrisave you got? eans have you gers? If so, what	d why? er(s)? st? got? or t colour?	ABOUT	naterial YOU
terial(s) thes Complete the belts lea Do you ever Do you wea Do you wea How many I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	e questions with worther cap / denim wear a? If so r a? If so eather had a point so for any V sweat do you wear short	If so, when and, on which wrise ave you got? eans have you gers? If so, what a lot	d why? er(s)? st? got? or t colour?	ABOUT	naterial YOU
Do you ever 1 Do you wea 2 Do you wea 3 How many I 4 How many I 5 What have y 6 Have you go 7 In summer, o	e questions with worther cap denim wear a? If so ra? If so eather ho pairs of; ou got that is made of the any V sweat	If so, when and, on which wrise ave you got? eans have you gers? If so, what a lot	d why? er(s)? st? got? or t colour?	ABOUT	naterial YOU

B Fashion

Three golden rules for fashion

ashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every stylish woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' - a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, kneelength skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what suits you and your figure. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about fashionable clothes - you probably won't wear them after one season.
- · Choose neutral colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look elegant, and are versatile and easy to match. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- · A simple outfit can be transformed with the latest fashion accessory, e.g. a belt.

Glossary	Process of the State of
stylish	• attractive and fashionable, style
suit phows	• If something suits you, it looks good on you.
figure	 the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.
fashionable	 popular at the present time. opp unfashionable.
neutral	• (of a colour) not strong or bright. neutral N.
elegant	attractive and well designed.
versatile	 having many different uses.
match	 look good with something else. matching ADJ.
outfit	 a set of clothes that you wear together.
transform sth	 change sth completely, usually in a positive way.
latest	 new or very recent.
accessory	 sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

Circle the correct answer.

- It's a very versatile fashionable jacket I can wear it on different occasions.
- 1 You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
- 2 She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket it looked awful.
- 3 I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother's wedding.
- 4 This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don't particularly like the style/figure.
- 5 I think that dress really matches/suits you.
- 6 My mother's got a versatile/very good figure. 31 928 into 1841 2016
- 7 You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
- 8 I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

8 Complete the sentences.

- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure 1 I bought some pink shoes and a _____ handbag; they look great together. 2 I'd love to be like Mary; she looks so _____ whatever she wears. 3 I want a pair of those trousers; they're the ______ fashion. 4 She never wears red – it doesn't _____ her.
- 5 Black is very _____ because you can wear it with almost anything.
- 6 She's got a new hairstyle and it completely _____ the way she looks.
- 7 Expensive _____ such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
- 8 I really like her new ______because it all works well together.



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

Review: Daily life

Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

fig beetroot basil

cod veal sweetcorn rabbit oysters pomegranate salmon clams parsley broccoli raspberry carp thyme mussels mint sea bass liver crab kidney leeks apricot

Herbs	Fruit	Vegetables	Fish	Seafood	Meat
▶ basil		Incheso?		The state of the s	Towns of ba
		Blaney			
			The second of the second	1 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 -	
		tillus.		10 10 10 10 10 10	ella vien, rowa oroda

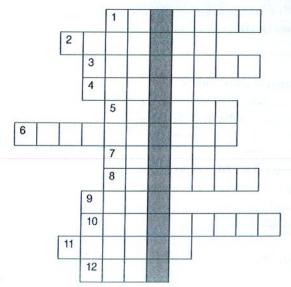
Unit 17

- 1 Complete the definitions.
 - ▶ boil = cook in water
 - 1 junk food = food which is _____ good for you
 - 2 cut down on food = eat ______food
 - 3 healthy food = food which is _____ for you
 - 4 a waste of money = a _____ use of your money 10 recipe = a set of instructions for
 - 5 put on weight = become ___

- 6 fry = cook in _____
- 7 bake = cook in the oven _____ oil or fa
- 8 chop = _____ into small pieces
- 9 fattening = making you put on _
- 10 recipe = a set of instructions for something

Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?



Unit 19

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

Insomnia: how to get a good night's sleep we are to be up a well as
Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) asleep. Others may wake up during
the night and not (2) back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.
Is it a serious problem?
No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4)
It can also make it hard to (5) on your work during the day.
How much sleep do I need?
Adults need 7-8 hours a night. If you feel (6) during the day, you aren't getting enough sleep at night.
However, sleep (7) may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a
(8) during the day.
What is a sleep diary?
A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and
wake up, how often you have a restless (9), etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have
things on your (10), for example, family problems, or worries at work.
The state of the s

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

	bandage	thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
1	bl	lose blood from the body
2	di	feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
3	pre	stop something from happening
4	sym	a change in your body which is a sign of illness
5	inf	an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
6	inj	an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
7	dev	grow, increase, or change into something
8	tho	in a very careful and complete way

Unit 21

	1 N	latch 1 7 with a h to ma	ke compound in				
	I	latch 1–7 with a–h to ma	Control of the Contro	OI	us.		
	1		stick				
	1	steering b	wiper handle				
	2	gear c speed d	mirror				
	4	The Committee of the Co	plate		d sin pay time is not		
	5	rear-view e door f	wheel				
	6		mirror				
	7	number g windscreen h	limit				
	,	Willoscieeli	minc				
П	nit	22					
U		24					
1	Tie	ck (\checkmark) the words that are	possible in the	sei	ntence.		
		We were stuck 🗹 delayed	Z stopped off □ i	n a	traffic jam.		
	1	The train was cancelled \(\simeg \)	held up 🗌 collided].		
	2	We stopped on the outskirt	ts 🗌 the rush hour	-	I the way \square .		
	3	He turned up in a lane a				19.0	
	4	They crashed into a coach [a van 🗌 an accid	der	nt 🗆 .		
	5	The car broke down hire					
	6	The passengers were turned	d up 🗌 injured 🗍	de	layed 🗌 .		
	7	I've got a valid ticket \subset a da			The state of the s		
	8	The train gets in \square is due \square		-			
2	1 2 3	mplete the phrases with crash into another h a car p your friend u t up late for a	vehicle up at the station	4 5	gheld u son the soff on eup in t	ice the way for a coffe	e
Ur	nit						
1	Cir	cle the one which is diffe	-				
				4	cotton denim silk		
		cap style boot sweater		5			
		leather bracelet suede		6			
	3	collar pocket dress slee	eve	1	bra knickers under	rpants underwear	
2	Coi	mplete the sentence so t	hat it means the	sa	ame as the sentence	on the left.	
		I don't like strong colours.			Hike neutral cold	ours.	
		You can wear this blouse wi	th anything.		This blouse is very		
	2	Her bag's the same colour as	s her shoes.		Her bag	her shoes.	
		Her new hairstyle looks reall			Her new hairstyle	her.	
		I need a new skirt and jacket			I need a new	for work .	
		I'm going to get a necklace a	and some earrings.	10	I'm going to get some		
	6	I don't like cotton or silk.			I don't like these		

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist

I'd had toothache for a couple of weeks. When I tried to bite or chew on one of my back teeth, it was very painful. I needed to have a check-up anyway, so I rang the dental surgery and made an appointment for Friday. The dentist examined my teeth and told me I needed two fillings, and said he would have to take out the tooth which was causing the pain. I've got to go back for treatment on Tuesday, and I'm dreading it.

spotlight dread, look forward to

If you are dreading something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are looking forward to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen. I dread going to the dentist. My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really looking forward to that.

Glossary	
have toothache	have a pain in your tooth.
bite sth PT bit PP bitten	cut sth with your teeth.
chew	 use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
painful	If something is painful, it hurts.
check-up	 a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
dental surgery	 a place where a dentist sees you (also doctor's surgery).
make an appointment	 arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
examine sb/sth	 look at sb/sth very carefully.
filling	 a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
take out a tooth	remove a tooth from your mouth.
cause sth	 be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.
treatment	 the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. treat sb v.

		needed a check-up.	6	gave me a filling.					
	1	took the tooth out.	7	had to have some treatment					
	2	was causing me pain.	8	was treated at the surgery.					
	3	made an appointment.	9	was painful.					
	4	examined my teeth.	10	bit on an apple and hurt my					
	5	was dreading going to the surgery.		tooth.					
2	Co	omplete the questions.		ABOUT YOU					
2000.00		How often do you have a <u>check-up</u> ?							
	1	Do you forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?							
	2	What's your dentallike?		P. C.					
	3	When did you last toothache?							
			-						
	4	When did the dentist last give you a	(
	4	When did the dentist last give you a							

25 I can describe hospital procedures 60 100

GOING INTO HOSPITAL

go into hospital go for treatment and stay there for a night or more. go to hospital go there for treatment, but not stay in.

 Your doctor is concerned about you. concerned about sb worried about sb.

 He sends you to see a specialist. **specialist** a person who knows a lot about a particular subject, e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a **consultant**.

 You may have tests, X-rays¹, or scans². **test** a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.

• The specialist decides how to treat you.

treat sb give medical help to sb to make them better. treatment N.

 You may have an operation immediately if it is urgent. operation In an operation, the doctor cuts open the body (operates) to treat the person. immediately with no delay. SYN straightaway. urgent needing to be done quickly.

 The surgeon explains the benefits and risks to you, the patient. surgeon a doctor who does medical operations.benefit a thing that has a good or helpful result.risk a danger that sth bad may happen.patient a person who is having treatment.

 After the operation you return to the ward, where the nurses care for you. care for sb look after sb. syn take care of sb. ward (see picture)

The operation is successful.
 When you are well enough, you can go home to recover.

successful If sth is successful, it has gone well.
recover (from sth) become well after you have been ill.
syn get over sth.





operating theatre

ward

spotlight enough

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means 'as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary'.

She's not well enough to go out. (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)

He's strong enough to get up. (He has the strength he needs to get up.)

You can also use enough before plural and uncountable nouns.

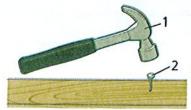
There aren't enough doctors. (We need more doctors.)

I haven't got enough money. (I need more money.)

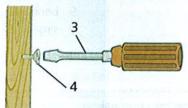
D	Co	orrect the spelling mistakes.		olain house	isself can ex
	•	spezialist specialist			
	1	consultent		urgente	
	2	inmediately 6 21091	7	well enogh	WA Using tools-
	3	recouver	8	succesful	
	4	pacient	9	benifit	
	5	straightway	10	sirgeon	
			Z		
2		rcle the correct answer.			
		The patient/surgeon has the operation.	4		The state of the s
	1	The consultant/patient goes into hospital			> 7
	2	The specialist/patient orders the scans.	1070750	to banga You use a	TOTAL TOTAL
	3	The consultant/patient may have to have	an X-ra	y. noteigit hoov	19(99)
	4	The specialist/patient may need treatmen	nt urger	ntly.	
	5	The surgeon/patient explains the benefits	of the	treatment.	
	6	The patient/nurse cares for the person af	ter the	operation.	موسسه زبان دهخدا
	7	The specialist/patient gets over the illness	1		dehkhodaedu.com
	8	The nurse/patient works on the ward.		North Allendar	8
3	Co	omplete the conversation with suitab	le wor	ds.	
	A	12. 14 h aua			
	В	Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit concerned	abo	out my eye.	attoning Sansalas
		I'm sorry to hear that What's the matter?	50.75		
	В	Well I've just been to hospital to see a (1)	C	and I had some	(2) t
		too, to see what was wrong. I've got a pr	oblem	at the back of my eye, ar	nd I need to have
		an (3) 0		with grightens	stick it together
	A				
	В	Ves I have to have it done (5) s		e got to go (6) i	hospital tomorrow.
	A	And are there any (7) r with	the tre	atment?	
	В	I don't think so; it's a very simple operation	n, and	it's usually very (8) s	: 98 per cent
		of people can see better afterwards.			
	Α	And when will you be well (9) e	to	start work again?	E Maké a holo yilit
	В	He said I'll need a week to (10) g	0	the operati	ion. My sister is going to
		(11) t of me a	at home		News of Freedom S
	Α	Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.			
	ΛΕ	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Wr	ite vo		other student.
		Have you ever been into hospital for a fev	v days	or longer? When?	winted & Control
	1	Have you ever visited a patient in hospital	7 If so	when and who was it?	of one of the same
	2	When patients are on a ward, do the nur	ses tak	e care of them, or does t	he family look after them
	3		oco tan	, care or tricing or allow	Local Local Control
	4	too? Can you see a specialist straightaway in yo	our cou	intry, or do you have to v	vait? If so, how long?
		Do you have to see your doctor first befo			the state of the s
	5	Where do patients usually go to recover a	fter an	oneration?	S. COMMENTAL CO. TANDERS CO.
	6	where do patients usually go to recover a	inter all	operation:	and the same of th
		Test yourself. Cover the meanings	in the	table and look at the	procedures. Can you
		remember the meanings of the ne	w wo	rds?	alamina mal

26 I can explain household tasks

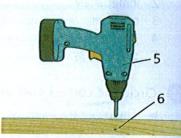
A Using tools and household objects



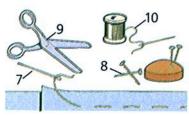
You use a **hammer**¹ to **bang a nail**² into a piece of wood.



You use a screwdriver³ to tighten or loosen a screw⁴.



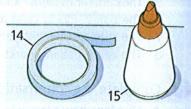
You use a **drill**⁵ to make a **hole**⁶. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**⁷, **pins**⁸, **scissors**⁹, and **cotton/thread**¹⁰ when you're **sewing**.



You use **string**¹¹, **rope**¹², or **wire**¹³ to **tie** things together.



You use TMSellotape14 or glue15 to stick things together.

(I) Circle the correct word.

- Stick it together with glue/cotton.
- 1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
- 2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
- 3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
- 4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
- 5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
- 6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
- 7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
- 8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

spotlight Nouns

Cotton, thread, string, rope, wire, Sellotape, and glue are all uncountable nouns. Scissors is a plural noun.

Where's the string? I need some glue. Where are the scissors?

Complete the sentences.

- 3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can _____ it on with _____
- 4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of ______.
- 5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a _______to ______them.
- 6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a ______ in a wall.
- 7 Pass the hammer and I can bang in this _____
- 8 We _____ a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.





Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

B Common problems

Our flat: things to do

- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

MEANING

If sth isn't working, it isn't functioning or it's broken.



leak allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. leak N.

cracked (see picture)



replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

properly correctly or well.

faulty not working well; only working sometimes.

decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

wrong causing problems or difficulties.

stick be in one position and difficult to move.

out of order If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is out of order, it isn't working.

stain N, V (see picture)

stain

remove sth take sth away.

spotlight repair, fix, or mend sth

Repair sth, fix sth. and mend sth all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'. Can you repair/fix the fridge? It took ages to repair/mend the roof.

We use mend and repair, rather than fix, to talk about repairing clothes. I mended the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes repaired.

⚠ Tick (✓) the words which are possible.

	My shoe has a hole in it. Can you repair w mend w remove w it for mer
1	This table's broken. We need to decorate \(\square\) fix \(\square\) repair \(\square\) it.
2	Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No, it's faulty \square out of order \square not working \square
3	We're going to remove \square replace \square decorate \square the fridge.

- 4 We need a new lamp \square stain \square light bulb \square .
- 5 The public phone is out of order \square is wrong \square isn't working properly \square .
- 6 The radiator is leaking \square faulty \square sticking \square .

(5) Complete the text.

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had condition, and there were (1) s on the	ome into all the bedrooms because the roof was ne walls and carpets. A builder (2) f
the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) d	all the bedrooms. We also had to
(4) r several windows that were (5) c	. Then we realized that the central
heating wasn't (6) w, and it cost	a lot to have it (7) r
was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) p	– some days the water was hot, others
it was freezing, and the taps were (9) I	too. The previous owners had left two old cars in
the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) r	tnem. It was all so expensive.



Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

27 I can describe housework (amelding nommo)

Mrs Bristow's **Handy Housework Routine**

Daily tasks

Make the beds and do the washing up. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. Wipe all surfaces with a soapy cloth to remove grease. Tidy up and throw away2 any rubbish.

Weekly tasks

Using a broom3, sweep the area outside your front door to remove mud and general dirt. Wash the floors with a mop4 and buckets and warm, soapy water. Vacuum6 the carpets, and then dust or polish the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.











Write the missing parts of spe	ech.	spee	of s	parts	missing	the	Write	
--------------------------------	------	------	------	-------	---------	-----	-------	--

dirty ADJ dirt N dusty ADJ 2 mud N_ 3 greasy ADJ ______N 4 vacuum cleaner N

Complete the phrases.

	Do the daily tasks	
1	the floor	to remove mud and dirt.
2	Use ato	hoover the carpet.
3	Tidy the	kitchen every day.
4	Remove grease with a :	soapy
5		ing up. (an) and (alia)(s)(o)
6	Use a and	to wash
	the floor.	
7	or	the furniture once
	a week.	
8	Use a cloth to	the kitchen surfaces.
9	Use a broom to	the floor.
0	away any	rubbish.

Glossary

task a piece of work you must do.

do the washing up wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.

wipe sth clean or dry sth with a cloth. grease oil or fat that comes from cooking. greasy ADJ.

tidy (up) make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.

sweep sth remove dirt from the floor or ground with a broom3.

mud soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be muddy ADJ.)

dirt a substance that isn't clean (e.g. mud). dirty ADJ.

vacuum sth clean a carpet or floor using a vacuum cleaner6, syn hoover v.

dust sth remove very small pieces of dry dirt (dust N) from sth. dusty ADJ.

polish sth make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (polish N).

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?
- 2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

28 I can talk to a hairdresser 6

I'd like to have my hair cut / have a haircut.

I'm letting it grow long, so just trim it / give it a trim, please. I'd like to keep the fringe1 and the parting2 on the left.



What would you like?

I want to keep the same hairstyle, please. I'd like a cut and blow-dry (= dry with a hairdryer).

hairdryer



I want to have it **permed** / I'd like a perm, please.



Could you colour it for me, please?



spotlight have/get sth done

If you have sth done or get sth done, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:

I have my hair cut every month. (I go to the hairdresser's.)

I colour my hair every month. (I do it myself.)

Glossary

let allow sth to happen without trying to stop it. trim sth cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. syn give sth a trim. trim N.

keep sth make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.

hairstyle the way your hair is cut and arranged.

A Park	Complete		
	Complete	the	words
COLUMN TOWN	Complete	CIIC	WVOI GO.

- haircut 3 h_rst_mane au lecibem pn 6 nt ins lil moniv nozacie 2 9 the place in a host major sick peoply stay. ___ b - r - d ___ y and points sick peoply s

- 1 fr____e 2 s___ss__r_
- 5 p__t_ng neggal bluco ba 8 blizmw-dr zepneb a 01

Put the words in order, and add one more word.

- ▶ going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have I'm going to have my hair cut.
- 1 could / colour / you / me / for / please?
- 2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair
- 3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the
- 4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd _____
- 5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the _____
- 6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment?
- 2 When did you last have your hair cut?
- 3 Have you got a fringe or a parting?
- 4 Where do you get your hair cut?
- 5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured?

Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?

Review: Getting things done

Unit 24

1	Read the dentist's questions and statements. One w	ord is missing in each one. When
	from? Write it at the end.	All familia
	► How long have you /toothache? had	
4.5	1 Is it when you bite? 2 I will probably have to the tooth out	
- 9:23	2 I will probably have to the tooth out.	
	3 This is the tooth which is the pain.	310.01
4	4 When did you last a check-up?	
	5 Can you come back to the tomorrow?	
6	6 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you.	
7	7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a.	
8	8 I'm going to your teeth and then decide what you need.	
Uni	it 25	
Oin	TO ESTATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY AND THE PROPERTY OF	
1 V	Which words are being defined?	
•	a person who knows a lot about a subject specialist	Book the said of the said new transfer and new transfer a
1		
2	2 worried about someone or something	and we're a property agency of season from
3	3 a doctor who operates on you	
4		
5		
6	6 look after someone, especially if they are ill	
7		
8		
9		
10	0 a danger that something bad could happen	· 3 / 2 2 2 5
11	t ac	
Unit	1 20	
1 C	Complete the sentences with suitable words.	
		CARDED AREA OF THE LOWER BUT IN
1	I'm going to <u>decorate</u> the bedroom. Sandro doesn't lik	
2	on the talpen per year monthless.	
2	it later today.	err ~ res, but someone is going to
3		o carnot
4		me place?
5		
6	를 보고 있는 것이 없는 것이 없었다. 이 등 이 등 이 상에 가장하는 것이 되었다. 그 등 사람들은 사람들은 그리고 있는 것이 되었다. 그리고 있는 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 것이 없는 것이다. 그런 그런 것이다. 그런	
	someone toit.	a manufactor and may have to get
	500	

		ou use one when you're sewingneedle
	1	ou use one to bang a nail in the wall.
		ou use one to make a hole in the wall
		ou use one to tighten a screw.
		ou use them to cut things.
		ou use it to tie a boat to a wall.
	6	ou use it to tie some sticks together.
	7	ou use it to stick a broken bowl together.
	8	ou use it to wrap a parcel.
In	it 2	7 such address throughout the subway
<i>3</i> 11	16 2	for your manager to an
1	Con	plete the sentences.
		dama y = 16 lang As-6b to avono = 2 lang within
	ASSESSED NO.	THE RESERVE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
		Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses
	1	
		I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but it wasn't working. I couldn't hoover the carpets because the wasn't working.
		1 I couldn't the furniture because the cloth was dirty. 1 Louldn't the furniture because they all looked clean to me, anywa
		I couldn't the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anywa
		the furniture because the cloth was days the furniture because the cloth was days and I didn't the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anywa
	HITTH	
Lo	14	hillby 3 payment 90
ונ	it :	Inter-control of the second of
1	Tho	re is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
	THE	it is a mistake in each server on bairetule
		like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.
	1 1	made my hair cut last week.
	2 1	just want trim, please.
	3 1	d like a cutting and blow-dry, please.
	4 4	Are you leaving your hair grow?
	6 9	he's got a parted on the left.
	7 1	me saying my hair colour tomorrow.
	7 1	in Having my hair colour terrorion.
	8 (m having my hair colour tomorrow

2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

29 I can describe urban life

A The inner city 🕠

I parked in the multi-storey car park and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the pavements were filthy. At the entrance to the subway, there was an old guy begging for money. I gave him something and hurried on down. There was the usual graffiti all over the walls, and litter everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was whistling quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the inner city so depressing that I wondered if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

Glossary	· 法总法公司 。
multi-storey car park	a large car park with several floors.
pavement	• the part of the road where people walk.
filthy	• very dirty.
subway	 a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
beg	ask for food or money.
hurry	· move or do sth quickly. syn rush.
graffiti	 pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
litter	 paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
whistle	 make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
inner city	 the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
depressing	 making you feel sad and without hope.
wonder	ask yourself questions about sth.

D	Correct the sp	elling mistakes.					
	hury hurr fillthy liter	3	pavment whisle			grafitideppresing	
2	Complete the	definitions.					
	near the cent 1 filthy = very 2 rush = move 3 pavement = p	or do something	le	6 7	beg = ask for whistle = makenearly closed	with several or e a sound with your on a wall in a public pla	
3)	Complete the	sentences with	a suitable wo	rd.			
	► My dog come	es back to me wh	en 1 whistle				
				tree	t. Why can't th	ney put it in a bin?	
	2 It's a dangero	ous road, so use th	ne	to	get to the oth	er side.	
	3 Leila says that	t someone in our	class is getting	ma	rried. I	who it is.	
	4 You've got lo	ts of time – you d	on't need to		to get	the train.	



Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

6 The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very

.... off the walls in the subway.

5 Two men were cleaning the _____

B In a suburb

The area where I live is ideal. It's a suburb not far from the centre and it's quite lively, but there's still a feeling of space, and my block of flats is surrounded by trees. It's also a handy place to live because there are good local shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only disadvantage is that with the growth in the population, it's gradually becoming more built-up than it used to be, which is a shame.



- Same or different? Write S or D.
 - One of the suburbs/areas outside the centre. 5
 - 1 The ideal/perfect place to live. ____
 - 2 A mountainous area/region.
 - 3 We need more growth/space.
 - 4 It was a pity/shame. ____

spotlight area, region, district, part

The word area can be used for part of a town, country, or the world. A region is part of a country or the world, e.g. a desert region. A district is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. the financial district. A part is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. a lovely part of the city.

Glossary

suburb an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.

ideal perfect; the best possible.

lively full of interest, and with things to do.

space a place or area that is empty and not used.

surrounded by sth If a building is surrounded by sth, that thing is all around it.

handy INF located near to things you need. SYN convenient.

local located in the area where you live.

disadvantage a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems, syn drawback. OPP advantage.

growth an increase in size or number.

built-up with a lot of buildings.

a shame a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed. syn a pity.

- 5 A handy/lively area. ___
- 6 It's a commercial district/area.
- 7 It's a real disadvantage/drawback.
- 8 It's a large space/suburb.

	100 100 100	Sta 10 1					100000000000000000000000000000000000000	OF WHILE	
(5)	Complete	the	sente	ences	with	a	suitable	word	

- ► There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really built-up area.
- 1 I live in a _____ about two kilometres from the centre.
- 2 Unfortunately, the whole area is ______ by factories, which is a _
- 3 There are a few _____ shops just round the corner.
- 4 It's very ______ because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.
- 5 It's a nice area with great shops; the only ______ is that the bus service is terrible.
- 6 We've found our _____ house: it has absolutely everything we want.

ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.

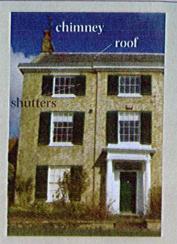
- 1 Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space?
- 2 What is your home surrounded by? _____
- 3 What local shops do you have? ____
- 4 Is it a handy place to live for you?
- 5 What are the disadvantages? _

30 I can describe parts of a building of the same and the

A **substantial** and **impressive semi-detached** house full of **original features**, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the hall leads to two spacious reception rooms and an enormous kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow staircase to a further bedroom in the attic. There is also a basement which could be converted into a separate one-bedroom flat, and a cellar currently used to store things.

Outside, the house has pretty **shutters** either side of the front windows. There is a **lawn** at the front, and a **drive** provides plenty of parking. There is also a small **walled** garden at the back.



Glossary

substantial • large and/or strong.

impressive • (of a building) large and very good to look at.

• joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.

• existing from the time when sth was first made or done.

feature an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.

• If sth leads to a place, you can go along it to that place.

spacious large, and having a lot of space.

enormous • very large. SYN huge. OPP tiny.

staircase • a set of stairs.

attic • the space or room under the roof of a house.

• a room or part of a building that is partly or completely

below ground level.

convert sth into sth . change sth from one form or use to another.

separate • not connected or together.

cellar • an underground room without windows, where things

are often kept.

are often kept.

currently • at the moment (NOT actually).

store sth • keep sth in a place for future use. storage N.

• an area of grass in a park or garden.

drive • a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.

walled If a garden or other area is walled, it has a wall around it

(a wall is usually made of brick1 or stone2).

spotlight passage, corridor, hall

A passage is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. an underground passage. A corridor is a passage in a large building or on a

train. A hall is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.





Correct the spelling mistakes.

	starcase staircase	3 seperate	6	spaceious
1	impresive	4 attick	7	currantly
2	kollar	5 hacemant	Q	foatur

4	Circle the correct word.
	The flat is substantial/impressive, but not very attractive.
	1 I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the cellar/basement.
	2 There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the hall/corridor.
	3 There's a very wide hall/corridor in our flat.
	4 He parked his car in the attic/drive.
	in the second se
	5 Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage/hall that leads to the High Street.
	6 We've got a small field/lawn in the garden where we sit in the summer.
3	Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same
	meaning.
	► There's a <u>large</u> living room. <u>spacious</u>
	2 Where do you keep your garden furniture in the winter?
	3 They've got a <u>very small</u> garden.
	4 There's a very elegant set of stairs up to the first floor.
	5 The back door goes into the garden.
	6 We could <u>change</u> that room into a bathroom.
4	Complete the words in the text.
	My brother has just bought a very ▶ substantial six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-
	(1) d house, and (2) c it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice
	when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) d. up to the
	front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) I to the living
	Trong door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the name (1)
	room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) c where they plan to (6) s wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h
	where they plan to (6) s wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h
	garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone
	(8) w one into a study.
	A CORCOTESTAND AND A CORCOTESTAN
5	Complete the sentences.
	At the back, there's a garden with a huge lawn
	1 One of the main of the building is the beautiful windows.
	2 Can you see the smoke coming out of the?
	3 It's an old house and it still has the windows and fireplaces.
	4 There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for
	5 I need about 100 to finish the low wall at the front.
	6 I'll have to go up on the to repair the chimney.
	o Till have to go up on the
6	ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
	in Journal If so, and thou on the outside or inside?
	1 Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are trief of the outside of miside:
	2 Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for?
	3 Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it?
	4 Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for?
	5 Is there a drive outside your building?
	5 Is there a drive outside your building? 6 Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny?
7	Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you
	remember the meanings?
	remember the meanings. The same supply plant at the same street at the

31 I can describe objects

A What's it made of?



a rubber tyre



a woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool



plastic toys



a metal ladder



a wax candle



a silver candlestick



a gold medal

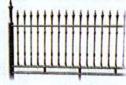


a cardboard box





a concrete bridge



iron railings



a wooden fence / a fence made of wood

Circle the most logical word.

- a table made of wood/wool
- a rubber boot/book
- 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
- 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
- a wooden/woollen sweater
- a wooden/silver fence
- a silver/woollen medal
- 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
- 8 a plastic/concrete toy
- wax/gold earrings
- 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
- 11 concrete/metal railings

spotlight Noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A rubber tyre is a tyre made of rubber; a letter box is a box for letters.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A sweater is often made of wool
- 1 Jewellery is usually made of s or g or p or p or p or p
- 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p_____
- 4 A ladder is usually made of w_____ or m____
- 5 A box can be made of p_____, w____, or c___
- 6 A bridge can be made of i_____, s____, or c_____



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

B Shapes and lines

Shapes	Noun	Adjective	Lines	Adjective
	circle	round, circular		straight
	square	square	^	curved
	rectangle	rectangular		parallel
	triangle	triangular		vertical
	oval	oval		horizontal
	point	pointed		diagonal

Complete the words.

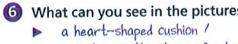
	straight		
1	poin	8	cir
2	L-sha	9	trian
3	cur	10	horizon
4	rectan	11	squ
5	verti	12	paral
6	circu	13	diam
7	ro	14	sshaped

spotlight shape, -shaped

You can describe the shape of things using shape or -shaped: a card in the shape of a heart a swimming pool in the shape of a leaf an L-shaped room = a room in the shape of the letter L a diamond-shaped buckle a star-shaped button

Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

square round oval triangular curved	dia	gonal/	rectangular	straight	pointed
A diagonal line connects opposite	4	The box	x your CD con	nes in is	
corners in a square.	5	A shape	e with three si	des is	
An egg is			is		
A computer screen is usually	7	A ball h	as a	surfac	e.
A DVD is	8	A ruler	is	, not cur	ved.



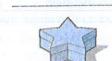














Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.

32 I can describe the senses

A Seeing and hearing 👀

Example	Meaning
Look¹ carefully, and you can see the bridge over the river. From here it looks² very small.	look¹ turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. see know or notice sth using your eyes. look² seem from what you can see.
We watched TV for an hour.	watch sth look at sth for some time to see what happens.
He appears¹ to be very happy. A dog appeared² from behind a tree.	appear¹ seem. appear² If sth appears, you suddenly begin to see it. ore disappear.
The children stared at the man with the long red hair.	stare at sb/sth look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.
Jay always notices what I'm wearing. He's very observant.	notice sth see sth and be aware of it. observant good at noticing things.
He glanced at me and smiled.	glance at sb/sth look quickly at sb/sth.
A I can hear something. B It sounds like a child crying.	hear sth receive sounds with your ears without trying. sound like sth make a noise that is like sth.
She listens to the radio a lot.	listen pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.
I overheard them in the bank.	overhear sb hear other people's conversation by accident.
I'm sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said.	catch sth hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you don't hear or understand sth.

spotlight can + sense verbs

We don't use see, hear, smell, or taste in the continuous tenses: we often use can (as in the examples above). I can see two boats in this photo. (NOT I see or I'm seeing two boats.)

Circle the correct answer.

- ► Can you head listen to that noise?
- 1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes?
- 2 I can't see/look at anything from here.
- 3 Don't look/watch behind you.
- 4 How long did you see/watch TV for?
- 5 I glanced at/stared Julia.
- 6 I see/can see something in your eye.
- 7 I overheard/caught a funny story on the bus.
- 8 What can you listen/hear?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ When I told them, I noticed that they both looked very surprised.
- 1 She said her name but I'm afraid I didn't _____ what it was.
- 2 I _____ hear a bird singing. It _____ like a blackbird.
- 3 Why is that man _____ at me? Have I done something wrong?
- 4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn't ______ to be nervous.
- 5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she ill.
- 6 I _____ at my watch and realized it was time to go.
- 7 Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She's very
- 8 A minute ago she was here, then she ______. I don't know where she is now.



Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?

B Smelling, tasting, and touching

Word	Example	Meaning
smell sth	I can smell lunch	notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth	it smells like fish.	have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink INF	This towel stinks. I must wash it.	have a horrible smell.
flavour	They sell 30 flavours of ice cream.	the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. a chocolate/strawberry flavour).
taste	Try this wine. It tastes very strange.	have a particular flavour.
salty	The soup is very salty.	having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
bland	This cheese is quite bland.	without much flavour.
touch sth	When I touched the back wall	put your fingers on sth.
feel feel like sth	it felt a bit damp (= a little wet).	give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. it feels hot, it feels like wood).
press sth	If you press that button, you get a ticket.	put your hand or finger on sth firmly.
grab sth	He grabbed my mobile and ran off.	take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth	Someone tapped me on the arm.	touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth	I rubbed the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.	move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.

4	Replace the underlined	phrase	with	a single	word that I	nas
	the same meaning.					

- Most cities <u>such as</u> London have a traffic problem. <u>like</u>
- 1 This blanket has a horrible smell.
- 2 My towel still feels a little wet.
- 3 The soup is without much flavour.
- 4 The film was similar to his others. ___
- 5 I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold.
- 6 She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

spotlight like

Like can mean 'similar to' and it can mean 'such as': This flower smells like honey. (The flower has a smell similar to that of honey.) Some people like Maggie live alone. (Maggie is one example.)

Complete the sentences.

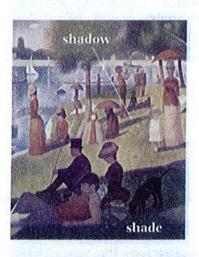
- ► You don't need salt. It's already very <u>salty</u> 1 The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks ______ a tomato but doesn't taste
- 2 They were both _____ their feet to the music.
- 3 _____ the button if you want the receptionist to come.
- 4 Be careful don't _____ the door. The paint is still wet.
- 5 He _____ me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
- 6 The policeman _____ the thief's arm and pushed him to the ground.
- 7 When I came downstairs, I could _____ the steak frying; it was wonderful.
- _____ did you have? ~ Strawberry, but it didn't 8 You had ice cream, didn't you? What ___ like strawberry.

Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

33 I can describe a painting of the second s

This painting, Bathers at Asnières by Georges Seurat, illustrates a typical scene of 19th-century leisure and the developing industry in this suburb of Paris. In the foreground a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; in the distance you can just see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog in the bottom lefthand corner2. We can sense the warmth of the summer's day in the bright sunlight, light colours, and shadows.







- 1 (in) the foreground opp background
- 2 (in) the bottom left-hand corner
- 3 (in) the top right-hand corner
- 4 (on) the left-hand side
- 5 (on) the right-hand side
- 6 (in) the centre/middle (of) the picture

Glossary

illustrate sth

 explain sth in a picture or diagram. illustration N.

scene

 a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.

leisure

· time when you do not have to work.

industry

the production of goods in factories.

industrial ADJ.

• far away from you.

in the distance just

 If you can just see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.

ignore sb/sth

· pay no attention to sb/sth.

even

· used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.

sense sth

 get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.

warmth

· a pleasant heat.

bright

· having a lot of light. opp dark. brightness N.

spotlight painting and drawing

Bathers at Asnières is a painting. Seurat was a painter or artist (artist is a more general word), paint v.

A drawing is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint. draw v.

I paint a lot of portraits.
I can't draw faces very well.

0	Lo	ook at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.
		Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
	1	How many people are there in the foreground?
	2	Are the boats in the foreground or the background?
	3	Are the men sitting in the shade?
	4	Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner?
	5	Can you see the dog's shadow?
	6	Is the picture a drawing or a painting?
	7	Where are the factories?
	8	On which side of the picture is the boy in the river?
		A standard and an interest for the season of
	9	On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat?
	10	On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat:
6		the placement page 00. Complete the definitions
4	Co	over the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.
		even = used to emphasize something that is <u>surprising</u>
	1	ignore = pay attention to someone or something
	2	1. Constitution of the second
	3	sense = have a about something that you can't see or hear
	4	shade = a place which is and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
	5	scene = a view you can in a picture or from the place where you are
	6	bright = having a lot of
	Ü	bright – naving a 101
3	Di	t the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.
	Fu	The does in the force ound
		dog / foreground / the / in / is / the The dog's in the foreground.
	1	the / it / you / see / in / can / distance
	2	bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand
	3	of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the/ painting?
	4	they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the
	5	in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the
4	Co	omplete the sentences with one word from each pair.
		warm/warmth bright/brightness / just/even illustrate/illustration
		Walling Walling To a State of
		madad y madada parties parties
		This painter often uses dark colours, not <u>bright</u> ones.
	1	He painted many scenes of factories and factory workers.
	2	The paintings the friendship between the three women.
	3	
	4	You say say the on the wall in the art gallery
		People go swimming in the river, in winter when it is cold. It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the?
	5	the see heat Shell the go and sit in the
	6	It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the
6	AE	BOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask nother student.
	1	What's the name of the artist who painted it?
		Do you know when it was painted?
	2	What does the pointing illustrate?
	3	What does the painting illustrate?
	4	Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do?
	5	Do you do any painting or drawing yoursell? It so, what do you do:

34 I can describe actions

A Using your hands 💫



Don't **squeeze** the **tube** in the middle!



She's **tearing** the letter up.



He dragged the cabinet across the floor.



He **knocked** on the door.



He scratched the lid of the box.



Shake the bottle before opening it.



The thief **smashed** the window.



She **folded** the paper in half / in two.



She **sprayed** the **leaves** with water.

- Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.
 - smash a tube of toothpaste No
 - 1 fold a sheet in half _
 - 2 scratch coffee ____
 - 3 drag a suitcase along a path
 - 4 spray perfume on yourself _____
- 5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out ____
- 6 knock on water ____
- 7 tear up a cabinet
- 8 shake a tin of paint ____
- 2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

spray knock ✓ scratch drag smash fold tear up shake squeeze

- I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.
- 1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to ______ it down the beach to the sea.
- 2 I _____ all my old bank documents and threw them away.
- 3 He _____ his scarf and put it on the table.
- 4 Don't _____ that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
- 5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately ______ the neighbour's window.
- 6 You'll need to _____ about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
- 7 My little brother took a nail and _____ the side of the car. My dad was furious.
- 8 She put on her make-up and ______ perfume behind her ears.



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

B Making noises

Word	Example	Meaning
shout	Don't shout! I can hear you.	speak in a loud voice.
whisper	He whispered 'I love you' in her ear.	speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.
cry	The baby next door cried all night.	tears drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.
scream	The plane dropped suddenly and we screamed.	cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.
burst into tears	He sat down and burst into tears.	start crying suddenly.
burst out laughing	I walked into the room and they all burst out laughing.	start laughing suddenly.
breathe (in/out)	Breathe in, count to ten, and then breathe out.	take air into your lungs and let it out again. breath N.
sigh	He sat down and sighed: it had been a hard decision.	let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.
sneeze	I've got a terrible cold; I've been sneezing all day.	sneezing

spotlight loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence

Loud means 'making a lot of noise'. opp silent. silence N.

The radio's too loud. We worked in silence.

If you speak out loud (syn aloud) you speak so that people can hear you.

I read the letter out loud / aloud to my father.

Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- ▶ If you shout angrily at a child, they might <u>cry</u> 1 When you have a cold, you might _____ a lot.
- 2 If you eat onions, your _____ might smell.

- 3 If something is incredibly funny, you might ______.4 If your nose is blocked, you have to ______ and out through your mouth.
- 5 If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should _____
- 6 If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might _____.
- 7 If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might _____.
- 8 If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would ______ to him.
- 9 If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it _____
- 10 The room was completely _____; no one said a word.
- 11 If you upset her, she will burst into
- 12 You can't speak in an exam; you must work in ______.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last . . .

- 1 hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why? _____
- 2 burst out laughing? Why? ___
- 3 whisper to someone? Why? ___
- 4 read something out loud? What was it?

Review: Describing things

Unit 29

1		you have to perform the suburbs of the pavement of the suburbs of	ay to go to f a city ar if your he car park is where is often q	hrough a e the are ome is su has only people w uite built	subway as where p rrounded b one floor valk -up	eople on the second sec	with very I	ittle money	/ live	
2		mplete the to The district was (1) f restaurants ro Not far away, (5) h before, you us pavement (7) my friends live	who und the c there's pl beca ed to see	It's also orner, buenty of ouse I'm colors of (6	quite (2) I t there isn' pen (4) s lose to the 5) g money. Bu	t a sup	- not like t beca ermarket t to go n, so I can on the suk is one (8)	he area I un nuse there a nearby, who for walks, get to wor noway walls, d.:	sed to live in, are several cat ich is a (3) p , and it's also k easily. Wher and people s	és and very e I lived itting on th
Un	it	30							eren program Green program	
	ser chi cel law dri	vn	fror stor hou gare shu roo	nt door rage use den tters 🗸		le wo		Hiw soon bild site v		
Un 1		31 mplete the p	DOVED BY STREET	rith word	ds from tl	ne box	THE PERSON NAMED IN	concrete	cardboard	
		a steel	_ pipe	3	a		candle	6	a	box
		a	fence	4	a			7	2	
	2	a	tyre	5	a		Dialiket	8	a	bridge

2	Answ	ver the questions.			
	▶ W	hat shape is a triangle? <u>triangular</u>		MAIK BOOK	
		hat shape is a tyre?			
				is crime? * te	
		hen people sleep are they vertical or horizontal?			
		hat shape has four equal sides? a			
		hat kinds of lines always have the same distance bet			es
		hat kind of line doesn't have curves? a			
Un	it 32				
1	Matcl	h 1–8 with a–i.			
100		y attention to something you hearc			
		ok at something or someone quickly		stare at	
		tice something using your nose			>
				tap	
		t your hands or fingers on something		overhear	14/00
		uch something quickly with your hands or feet			120
	5 hav	ve a particular flavour ok at something or someone for a long time	hadin	taste	
			200 211	glance at	موسسه زبان دهخدا
		come impossible to see or find ar someone's conversation by accident	i	disappear	dehkhodaedu,com
	o He	al someone's conversation by accident		азарреа	
1	The hap bac side obtention ma	plete the text with the words from the box in the scene painting shade artist ignore by a French (1) illustrated piness. There is a mother playing with her small dated by a garden gate, and in the (5) and coviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6) me the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) rightman. He's (8) the mother and daughter, popening on his right – but that is outside the picture	hand ates a ughter I her, old ho and s	foreground just (2) of pear in the (3) you can (4) ouse, perhaps where they, to protect the sr corner of the painting eems much more interes	, and in the see one all live. It's nall child , there is a ted in what is
Uni	t 34	and the second s			
1	One v	vord is wrong in each line. Cross it out and w	rite t	he correct one at the	end.
	▶ Dic	you hear someone stream? scream of to still st			
	1 The	police had to stash the door open			
	Do.	n't bear up that paper - we can use it again			
	3 If v	ou sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope.		DUKT DRIED FRANK	
	1 He	strayed us with water.			
	5 The	e little girl was frying because her dog had disappea	red		
	5 He	burnt into tears for no reason at all.			
		e signed noisily and left the room.			
	D 0	alt snake that it might evaledal			
		the street			
	9 Isa	w her bragging an enormous box along the street.	the state of the s		

35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is against the law: for example, if you steal someone's property, you are committing a crime and breaking the law. Some offences are only minor, e.g. illegal parking; but for more serious and especially violent crimes, e.g. killing or attacking someone, a person could go to prison for a long time.

spotlight crime

The noun crime can be countable and uncountable.

There are many victims of violent crime (u).

It is a crime (c) to avoid paying tax.

Glossary

PP stolen

- against the law against the rules of a country. syn illegal. opp legal.
- steal sth PT stole . take sth belonging to sb else without permission.

 sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery). property

· do sth illegal. commit a crime

· do sth illegal/against the law. opp obey the law. break the law offence · an illegal activity, syn crime. (The person is an

offender / a criminal.)

minor not important. opp serious. violent

using force to hurt sb physically. violence N.

· make sb die.

attack sb start fighting or hurting sb.

· go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime, syn go to jail.

Circle the verbs below. Don't circle the other words.

offenceminorkil)violentlawstealcrimeprisoncommitillegal seriousattackcriminaloffendobey

- Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
 - steal | take something belonging to someone without permission __S

kill sb

go to prison

- 1 illegal | against the law ____ 5 criminal | offender ____
- 6 commit a crime | break the law ____ 2 an offence | a crime ____
- 3 legal | illegal ____ 7 prison | jail ____ 4 kill someone | attack someone _____ 8 minor crime | serious crime ___
- Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go / attack

- She did something terrible, and I heard that she went _ to prison. 1 There is a lot of _____ in the centre of town at night.
- 2 A group of boys _____ the man, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.
 3 The young man _____ my bike and sold it in the market.
- 4 was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
- 5 It was a very _____ crime; several people had to go to hospital. 6 He committed a _____ for a long time.
- 7 I've never _____ the law.
- 8 He parked in the wrong place; it was only a ______ offence, but it's still ____



B Types of crime

Crime	The crime of	Verb	Criminal
theft	taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.	He steals cars and sells them.	thief
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence.	They were planning to rob the bank.	robber
burglary	entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.	They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.	burglar
shoplifting	stealing things from a shop.	She stole a skirt from the supermarket.	shoplifter
mugging	attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.	He mugged people for their money late at night.	mugger
assault	hurting someone physically.	He assaulted/attacked a man. He stabbed¹ him.	attacker
murder	killing someone deliberately (= you wanted or planned to do it)	He murdered his neighbour. Why did he shoot ² him?	murderer

spotlight steal and rob

You steal money or things, but you rob a person or place. Someone has stolen my bike. Thieves stole €2000 from the shop. I was **robbed** at the football match. They **robbed** the museum last night.

One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

- ▶ Thieves, robbers, murderers, and burglars all steal property.
- Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all verbs.
- 2 Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.
- 3 Shooting, assaulting, stabbing, and breaking into are all ways of attacking people physically.
- 4 Mugging, assault, shoplifting, and murder are all acts of violence.
- 5 Mugger, shoplifter, thief, and burglary are all criminals.

Complete the sentences.

1	stop them, but one robber had a knife and him in the chest.
2	The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn't do it
3	Someone me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
4	He will be in prison for the rest of his life for his wife. He bought a gun and her while she was asleep.
5	Abroke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
6	The three men that bank because it was in a very quiet area.



Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?

36 I can describe the justice system Do Unit 35 first

A A police investigation

A crime is reported to the police, usually by the victim.

The police investigate it. The victim and witnesses tell the police what they know.



The police may take fingerprints1, or take photos where the crime took place.



If possible, they catch the suspect and arrest2 him.



If there is enough evidence, they will charge the suspect and he will go to court3.

Glossary

report sth

· give information that sth has happened.

victim

a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.

investigate sth

try to find out about sth.

witness

· a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).

may

. we use may to say that sth is possible. syn might.

take place

· happen.

catch sb PT caught

· find and hold sb.

PP caught

suspect

· a person who the police think has committed a crime.

evidence

· facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.

charge sb

(of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has \(\rightarrow\) (aken place/reported, someone will (1) investigate/report it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate/charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery (5) took place/caught They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/the police station.

Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

- ▶ Who has to find the evidence? The police 5 Who is caught? _
- 1 Who takes fingerprints?
- 6 Who usually reports the crime? ...

- 2 Who is charged? _____
- 7 Who is arrested? _____
- 3 Who investigates the crime? _____
- 8 Who sees the crime take place?
- 4 Who is hurt by the crime? ____

Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

B In court 🕟

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are tried by a judge1 and jury2. At the trial, the prosecution aims to prove that the accused3 (or defendant) has committed the crime: the defence aims to prove he is innocent. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is guilty or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is sentenced by the judge. He may get a fine or a prison sentence.



True or false? Write T or F.

- In serious crimes, the judge decides whether the accused is guilty or not. ...
- The prosecution defends the accused.
- 2 The defendant is sentenced by the judge.
- 3 If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison. ...
- 4 With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be. __
- The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime. _
- 6 If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine.
- 7 The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not.
- 8 Trials take place in a court. ____

Glossary

· ask questions and listen to evidence try sb in court to decide if sb has done sth

illegal.

· an examination of evidence in court trial . to decide if sb has done sth illegal.

the prosecution • the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. prosecute sb v.

· give evidence to show that sth is prove sth true. proof N.

 the lawyers who try to prove the defence that the accused person has not committed the crime. defend sb v.

· If you are innocent, you have done innocent nothing wrong. opp guilty.

· tell sb who is guilty what they sentence sb will have to do, e.g. go to prison. sentence N.

· a sum of money you have to pay if fine you break a law. fine sb v.

Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

	He may get a prisonsentence	SENTENCE
1	The accused is by the judge and jury.	TRY
2	The defence must that the accused is innocent.	PROOF
3	The has to show that the accused committed the crime.	PROSECUTE
4	If the is guilty, he may go to prison.	DEFEND
5	The guilty person is by the judge.	SENTENCE
6	A takes place in court.	TRY
7	A person who is guilty may be a sum of money.	FINE



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

37 I can discuss health issues

A Diseases common among younger people 🕟

Nowadays fewer children suffer from infectious diseases, but the number of children around the world with asthma has increased. Doctors believe that the breathing difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by allergies to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a dramatic increase in obesity in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression.

Write t	tne	related	ad	ective.
---------	-----	---------	----	---------

	infection	infectious
1	allergy	-
2	obesity	
3	depression	
4	diabetes	-

② Circle the correct word.

- Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression.
- Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
- 2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
- 3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
- 4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
- 5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
- 6 He had a heart/lung attack.

Glossary

suffer from sth have the experience of sth bad.
infectious An infectious disease passes easily from
person to person. infection N.

disease an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).

asthma a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.

increase get larger in number or amount. increase
N. OPP decrease V. N.

breathe (in/out) take air into your lungs (see picture) and let it out again.

allergy a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. allergic ADJ.

dramatic sudden and surprising.

obesity the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. obese ADJ.

lead to sth cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.

heart attack When sb has a heart attack, their heart (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.



diabetes a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. diabetic ADJ.

depression a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). depressed ADJ.

6	4.0		39		
E)	Compl	ete	the	sente	ences.

	If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
1	I can eat most things, but I'm to seafood. It makes me really ill.
2	So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with in our country.
3	My uncle had a heart last year, but he's fine now.
4	He lost his job and became very, but he's happier now.
5	More people from asthma than in the past.
6	He's, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
7	When you in, your fill with air.
8	Obesity can to a number of serious
9	Fortunately there has been a small in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.

B Diseases common among older people 🕟

Example	Meaning			
My sister is disabled; she can't walk.	not able to use a part of your body properly.			
My uncle is going blind.	not able to see.			
I'm a bit deaf, so please speak up.	not able to hear.			
She had a stroke, but she's able to walk again now.	a sudden illness which affects the brain (see picture) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.			
He suffers from heart disease.	a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.			
He got lung cancer from smoking.	a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.			
I can't walk very far because of my arthritis.	a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.			
She suffers from memory loss; she forgets things easily.	a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.			
	My sister is disabled; she can't walk. My uncle is going blind. I'm a bit deaf, so please speak up. She had a stroke, but she's able to walk again now. He suffers from heart disease. He got lung cancer from smoking. I can't walk very far because of my arthritis. She suffers from memory loss;			

Complete the words.

g can <u>c</u> er	4	b I
	5	stre
	6	hrt dsse
n	7	d_s_b_l_ty
	g can <u>c</u> er mr_l_ss r_tic n	m_r_l_ss 5 r_tic 6

spotlight go + adjective

Go + adjective means 'become', e.g. go blind, go deaf. You can also use it to describe a change of colour: His hair went white. She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

True or false? Write T or F.

- 1 Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful. ___
- 2 If you are going deaf, you can't see very well.
- 3 If you lose your sight completely, you go blind.
- 4 People with cancer often have a tumour in their body. ____
- 5 Heart disease is the same as a heart attack. ___
- 6 If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things.
- 7 A stroke attacks the lungs.
- 8 Being deaf and blind are disabilities. ___

6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more		y grandmother, for example,
suffers from (1) a, and she	e can't walk very easily. Last year	she started to go a bit
(2) d, but fortunately she	hasn't lost her (3) s	, so she can still enjoy the TV.
Sadly, she suffers from (4) m	loss, but that's very common v	with people of her age. No
one in our family has suffered from eith	ner (5) c or (6) h	disease, however.

Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

38 I can talk about politics

A The British political system 🕟

In the United Kingdom (the UK), elections are held about every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called constituencies, and in each constituency people vote for one person representing the political party they want to see in power. The politician with the most votes becomes the Member of Parliament (known as an MP) for that area. Parliament, therefore, consists of 646 MPs, and the party with the majority of MPs forms the government. The leader of that party also becomes prime minister.

Glossary

election the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect** v.

hold sth organize an event such as an election.

constituency one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.

vote for sb/sth choose sb/sth in an election. vote N.

represent sb/sth act officially for people or an organization.

political party a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).

in power in political control of the country.

politician a person with a job in politics.

parliament the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.

consist of sth be formed or made up of sth.

majority the largest number or part of sth. orr minority.
government the group of people in control of a country. govern v.

prime minister (or PM) the leader of the government in some countries.

1									
	True	or	false	in	Britain?	Write	T	or	F.

- ► The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. ⊤
- 1 Elections must be held every four years.
- 2 People can only vote for one person in this election.
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each constituency.
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government.
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister.
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ PM is an abbreviation of <u>prime minister</u>
- 1 How often do you hold _____ for parliament?
- 2 Parliament _____ of people from a number of different political _____
- 3 In the UK, the Conservative Party was in _____ from 1979 to 1997.
- 4 Who did you _____ for in the last election?
- 5 Politicians _____ the people who elect them.
- 6 She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a ______ of the people voted for her.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections?
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment?
- 3 How long have they been in power?
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party?
- 5 How many people are in parliament?

B Political objectives

The government has **announced** that its first **priority** will be education, and today the prime minister will **focus** on the **need for** more young people to go to university.

A new transport **policy** will be announced today, which aims to **persuade** motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will **face** strong **opposition** to their new **immigration** policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to launch the government's new fitness campaign.



spotlight oppose, opposition

To **oppose sth** means to disagree with something and try to change it. **opposition** N. The main political party in parliament, but not forming the government, is called **the Opposition** (used with a singular or plural verb).

Glossary

objective

- a thing you are trying to do. syns aim, goal.
- announce sth
- say sth officially and in public. announcement N.
- priority
- a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.
- focus on sth
- give all your attention to sth. focus N.
- need for sth
- a situation in which you must have or do sth.
- policy
- a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
- persuade sb (to do sth)
- give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth).
- face sth
- have to deal with a difficult situation.
- immigration
- the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called **immigrants**).
- launch sth
- start sth new, especially a campaign or product.
- campaign
- (often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.

Circle the correct answer.

- If you persuade somebody to do something, they do/don't do it.
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
- 2 A priority is important/not important.
- 3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
- 4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
- 5 Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
- 6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Helping poor people is a major <u>priority</u> for the government.
- 1 Do you agree with the government's economic _____?
- 2 They've launched a ______ to educate people about the tax system.
- 3 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to _____ others.
- 4 The USA received a lot of European _____ in the early twentieth century.
- 5 The main ______ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- 6 It's clear that the _____ disagree strongly with the government's policy.
- 7 In his speech, the prime minister will _____ on health issues.
- 8 The government has expressed the ______ for change in their education policy.



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

39 I can talk about war and peace

A Conflict

... The bomb exploded in the city centre killing at least a dozen people ...

... Soldiers1 fought a two-hour gun2 battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

> ... The army have captured the airport and are now in control of the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now surrendered.

... If the current crisis gets worse, civil war could break out at any time ...





Match 1-6 with a-g.

- ► They're in control _d_
- The conflict
- 2 Soldiers fought
- 3 Two bombs
- 4 Soldiers captured ____
- 5 The soldiers ____
- 6 A dozen

- a surrendered.
- b the main port.
- c guns were found.
- d of the city. <
- e a long battle.
- f exploded.
- g lasted many years.

Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- ▶ They were physically trying to hurt each other. fighting
- 1 They were the men we fought against.
- 2 It's a dangerous and difficult period.
- 3 Many fighters have given up.
- 4 They took control of the city.
- 5 There were a dozen soldiers.
- 6 When did the bomb go off?

Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (War is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)

bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.

explode burst with force and a loud noise. SYN go off. explosion N.

dozen twelve or a group of twelve (half a dozen = 6). soldier (see picture) a person who is a member of an

fight PT fought When people fight, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a fighter). fight N.

battle a fight between armies in a war.

capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.

enemy the people your army or country is fighting

be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.

surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. SYN give up.

crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. critical ADJ. civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.

break out (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.

Complete the sentences.

- It has become a serious Crisis and could end in war.
- Why did war break _____
- 2 The _____ exploded at 10.15.
- 3 Fifty people died in the first ____ of the war.
- 4 There are 50,000 ______ in the
- 5 Are they in _____ of the situation?
- 6 The conflict could result in civil

B Compromise

Example	Word and meaning
The US and its European allies are both determined to find a solution.	ally a country that agrees to support another country. determined having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.
The two countries involved are hoping they can reach an agreement.	involved taking part in sth or connected to sth. reach an agreement arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.
Leaders from the two main parties are now negotiating, and there is some hope of a peace settlement.	leader a person who is in charge or control of sth. negotiate talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth. peace settlement an official agreement that ends a war (peace is a time when there is no war).
The two sides have finally agreed a ceasefire.	side either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other. ceasefire an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.
If both sides are willing to compromise, there could be a settlement fairly soon.	willing to do sth happy and prepared to do sth. OFF unwilling. compromise accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. compromise N.



② Cover the table above. Match 1–7 with a–h.

1002				
D	settlement _C_	a	taking part in something	
1	ceasefire	b	having a strong desire to do something	
2	ally	C	an agreement to end a war or argument 🗸	
3	determined	d	happy and prepared to do something	
4	willing	e	accept less than you want	
5	negotiate	f	an agreement to stop fighting	
6	compromise	g	talk to somebody in order to agree something	
7	involved	h	a country that has agreed to support you	

A 100				
(5)	Comp	10+0	tha	toyte
(Car 10)	COLLID	1616	1116	LEXIS.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. Allies of the two (1) in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) _____ on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) _____ of the sides to negotiate a peace (4) _____. It seems they are both (5) _____ to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) _____ to compromise.

The two coul	ntries (7)	in the
conflict have	finally agreed to	o come to the
negotiating t	able. Neither wi	ill be willing to
(8)	very much,	but there is now
	ossibility that th	
could (9)	an ag	greement that
	more lasting (1	0)
settlement.		





Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

40 I can talk about events in history

Date	Event	Meaning
1066	William of Normandy invaded England and then defeated King Harold in a battle.	invade enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. invasion N. defeat sb win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.
1781	William Herschel discovered the planet Uranus.	discover sth find sth that nobody has found before. discovery N.
1917	The Russian Revolution	revolution action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.
1923	Turkey became a republic.	republic a country with no king or queen.
1947	India gained independence / became independent.	gain independence become free from control by another country. independent ADJ.
1957	The European Common Market was established.	establish sth start or create an organization or system. establishment N.
1975	Prince Juan Carlos became king of Spain.	prince the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a princess).
1981	President Sadat of Egypt was assassinated.	president the leader of a country with no king or queen. assassinate sb kill a famous person, often for political reasons. assassination N.
1981	Attempt to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.	attempt the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). attempt to do sth v.
1990	Nelson Mandela was released from prison.	release sb allow sb to be free, release N.



Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

Verb	Meaning	Noun	
discover c	a kill a famous person	▶ discovery	
1 release	b enter another country with an army and attack it	YI	
2 assassinate	c find something that nobody has found before ✓	save <u>- Johlings</u> -	
3 establish	d try to do something, often without success		
4 invade	e start or create an organization		
5 attempt	f allow somebody to be free	an <u>Monante</u>	

2 Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

- 1 President Kennedy was _____ in 1963.
- 2 Bill Gates and Paul Allen _____ the Microsoft Corporation in 1975.
- 3 The 'Velvet _____' took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
- 4 American forces _____ the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
- 5 In 1981 there was an ______ to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
- 6 Argentina gained _____ in 1816 and Brazil became _____ in 1822.

Review: Social and political issues

Unit 35

O1	111	是一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个
1	Cor	mplete the sentences. Someone who
1	D	attacks someone physically is an <u>attacker</u> .
		commits a crime is a Introduvern you must be the public and the commits as a crime is a
		kills someone deliberately is a
		attacks someone in the street for money is a
		preaks into a house and steals things from it is a
		steals your car is a A 1
	6 9	steals things from shops is a
		toals from a hank is a hank
	, .	
2		le the correct word.
	> 7	The man robbed/mugged the post office.
	1 5	She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
		You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law.
	3 F	People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison.
		The two men broke into jail/the museum and stole/robbed some paintings.
	5 1	t was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver.
	6	You don't see much violence/violent on the streets.
		Murder is a very serious/minor crime.
	8 1	They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.
		90 1613
Ir	nit 3	26
ונ	116 5	Straight 1-10 with a straight of the straight
1	Put	the sequence in the correct order.
	аТ	The jury decided that the defendant was guilty.
		The police charged the suspect.
		A crime was committed. 1
		The suspect went to court.
		The police caught the suspect.
		The jury listened to the evidence.
		he police investigated the crime.
		he victim reported the crime.
		he judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison.
_		And the unit of the second sec
2		nplete the sentences.
	▶ T	The suspect may be guilty or <u>innocent</u> . The trial takes in a court.
	1 T	he trial takes in a court.
	2 1	he prosecution try to that the defendant committed the crime.
	3 1	he defendant is also called the
	4 (Often a has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
	5 1	f he is guilty, the defendant may get a or a prison
	6 T	The defendant might be guilty, or he be innocent.
	7 V	When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for, for example, fingerprints.
	0 1	the police find a suspect, they will them and question them at the police station.

Unit 37

1	V	Vhat medical problem is being defined	!?	
	•	A feeling of being very unhappy. depress	sion	
	1	The condition of being too fat.		
	2	A condition that makes you ill when you to other people.	ouch,	breathe, or eat something that doesn't affect
	3		nay n	ot be able to talk afterwards.
	4			
	5	A condition in which the heart stops work	-	
	6	A serious illness in which tumours often gr		
	7	A disease which causes pain when you ber		The state of the s
	8	A disease in which the body can't control t		
-	_			
2		ne word is missing in each sentence. W		
		He is \bigwedge and has been in a wheelchair for ye	ears.	disabled
	1	She has suffered asthma for years.		godine na serio di Markata di Salama anti n
	2	He had a heart and died last week.		
	3	My grandfather is going so I have to shout	to hi	m
	4	It's an infectious so he can't mix with other		
	5	The doctor told me to in deeply through m	y nos	se.
	6	She is allergic some medicines.	Office!	
	7	Obesity can lead heart disease.	U. or	tino assumente de la sua participa de la companya del companya de la companya de la companya del companya de la
	8	He suffers from loss and can't remember w	vhere	he puts things.
Un	it	38		
1	M	atch 1–10 with a–k.		
		**************************************	-	Pen lenes represents
		I don't belong to any political		Ben Jones represents.
	1	The announcement was made by They hold		a campaign.
	3	The government will face	d	for that party. on better health care.
	4	We need to launch	e	A SERVICE AND A
		They want to persuade	f	policy.
		I don't know which party	133(1)	the prime minister.
		I wouldn't vote	g h	of Parliament for Hampstead.
		She's the Member	- ''	strong opposition to their plan.
		I don't agree with their immigration		party. ✓
		The government needs to focus	J V	people to accept the scheme.
•	U	The government needs to locus	K	people to accept the scheme.
		nich words are being defined?		
		the time when people choose politicians to	spea	k and act for them elections
		something that you are trying to achieve of		
39		disagree strongly with something o		
		something that is very important or that you		
		the group of people elected to make and ch		
		a person whose job is in politics p		
		in political control of a country in p		
10. 10.	7	be formed or made up of something c		of something

Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick () Yes or No.

the state of the s	Yes	No
▶ Is a dozen less than ten?		1
1 Is a soldier a member of the army?	1775	0.00
2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?	g Trans	
3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?	1 0 × 100 0	g how
4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?	ed we down	n distribute
5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?	di saleye	1 18.
6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?	en comment	122
7 Are your allies on the same side as you?		
8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?	5 3 5	

2	Is the meaning	the same o	r different?	Write S	or E).
---	----------------	------------	--------------	---------	------	----

- 1 The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting. ___
- 2 They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement.
- 3 There are two sides. | There are two leaders. ____
- 4 There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. __
- 5 He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it. ____
- 6 They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader. ____
- 7 It was a long battle. | It was a long war. ____
- 8 The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993. ____

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

	Napoleon Bonaparte was <u>defeated</u> at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.
1	In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the of Robert Kennedy in
	June 1968. He is still there and will never be
2	Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became of the United States in 1981, John
	Hinckley to him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another
	23 years.
3	The French started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.
4	Fidel Castro a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.
5	Marie Curie, a Polish–French scientist, radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.
	Diana, of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
7	China became a in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.

41 I can understand newspapers

A Newspaper publishing 🕟

LIFE AS AN EDITOR

eet Cyrus Davis, who has Mspent his whole working life in journalism. He's now the editor of The Evening Star, a local daily paper published in Birmingham. He's been a news reporter on several national papers, a sports editor, and a headline writer. 'The Star covers current affairs, sports, crime, and so on, but one section of our paper is about culture. It's a good paper, but newspaper sales generally are declining because of TV and the internet. It's a bad time for the press.'

Glossary	
whole	complete; with no parts missing. syn entire.
journalism	 the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a journalist).
editor	 the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. edit v.
daily	 You can get a daily (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
publish sth	· prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. publishing N
several	 more than two, but not many.
national	 connected with all of a country (international = involving two or more countries).
headline	• the title of a newspaper article (see next page).
current affairs	important political or social events happening now.
section	one of the parts into which sth is divided.
culture	 activities involving art, literature, music, etc. cultural ADJ.
decline	become weaker or smaller. decline N.
the press	• newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

- 1 Circle the adjectives. Don't circle the verbs and nouns.
 - ▶ Internationa whole edit press declined ail y journalism entire culture section national cultural
- 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
 - ▶ She edits the newspaper. | She's the editor. S
 - 1 I didn't understand the article. | I didn't understand the headline. ...
 - 2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? ____
 - 3 I'm interested in current affairs. | I'm interested in cultural events. _
 - 4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up. ___
 - 5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper. ____
 - 6 She's worked there for several years. | She's worked there for many years. ___
- Complete the sentences.
 - ► The article is in the sports section on page 34.
 - 1 I always turn to the section on c______ first to read about the latest films and books.

 - 3 The paper is p_____ in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
 - 4 I spent the w morning reading the news about the i situation.
 - 5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they're d______ in Europe.
 - 6 Do you buy a d______newspaper?
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Headlines

FOOTBALL FANS CLASH WITH POLICE

200 AXED CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE clash with sb fight or disagree seriously with sb about sth. clash ${\tt N}.$

axe sb/sth cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).
protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in

protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially i public, protest N.

Bomb scare in city centre

scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).

NURSES DEMONSTRATE OVER TAX CHANGES demonstrate take part in a public protest for or against sth. syn protest. demonstration/protest n.

THREAT to Hollywood Star threat a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. threaten v.

MAN **CLAIMS** DOG CAN TALK claim sth or claim that say that sth is true without having proof. claim $\mathbf{N}.$

GOVERNMENT
PROMISES HIGHER
PENSIONS

promise (to do) sth say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. syn make a promise promise n.

pension money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a pensioner).

GOVERNMENT PLEDGES
AID FOR ETHIOPIA

pledge sth make a formal promise to do or give sth. pledge N. aid money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (aid V FML means 'give help').

- Circle the correct word.
 - ▶ She claimed/oromised to work hard.
 - 1 There was a health scare/aid last week.
 - 2 Twenty workers were protested/axed.
 - 3 Police clashed/aided with protesters.
 - 4 They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
 - 5 She claimed/promised she was French.
 - 6 I receive a company pension/pensioner.
 - 7 There was a threat/clash to kill him.

spotlight Verbs and nouns with the same form

There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. clash, protest, claim, promise, pledge, and aid.

There was a clash between the protesters and the police.

The police and the protesters clashed.

(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)

- 6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.
 - ► She went to the <u>public protest</u>. <u>demonstration</u>
 - 1 The company made a formal promise to improve services.
 - 2 He says that he is the tallest man in the country.
 - 3 We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone.
 - 4 I had a frightening situation last night I saw a snake in the garden.
 - 5 You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises.
 - 6 My brothers disagreed seriously with the organizers over the arrangements.
 - 7 The man said he would hurt me.
 - 8 I made a spoken agreement and I won't break it.
- 0

Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?

42 I can talk about films

A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British equivalent of the Oscars. The highest award, the Academy Fellowship, is a prize given for an individual's work and achievements during their career; previous winners include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the outstanding film of the year, and for special achievement by a British director, writer, or producer in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a leading role and in a supporting role. Achievements are also recognized in editing, lighting, and so on.

Glossary

the equivalent of sth importance as sth else. equivalent ADJ.

award • sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. equivalent ADJ.

• You get or win an award when you do very well in a

competition.

 sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.

• one person who is seen separately from others or a group.

sth you have done successfully that was difficult. achieve v.
 winner
 a person who wins a competition, game, etc.

extremely good; excellent.
 the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc.
 direct v.

• the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. produce v.

the most important role (or part) in a film or play
(a supporting role is the next most important role).

the part an actor plays (e.g. the role of Julius Caesar).
the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. edit v.

nplete	the	words.
	plete	plete the

	<u>o u t</u> standing	3	porting ro	6	aceve
1	evalent	4	ividual	7	w n r
2	duce	5	a r d	8	p z e

True or false? Write T or F.

	A producer plays the leading role in the film	1. F	ARREST CONTROL PRODUCTION .
1	An actor directs the film.	6	A producer edits films.
2	An outstanding film is very bad.	7	It's an achievement to win an award.
3	A BAFTA winner gets an award.	8	A role is what an actor wears.
4	A leading role is always a man's role.	9	A producer organizes the film's finances.
5	An individual is one person.	10	A director tells actors how to act

Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

	가루 마스트를 받는 이 이 가장 아름다면 말라면 되었다면 있다면 하면 이 사람들이 보고 있다. 그리가 그렇게 되었다면 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 그래요. 그래요 하는데 그래요. 그래요 그래요. 그리
	Who was the business manager of the film? producer
1	Was she the person who won?
2	Did they get the success they wanted?
3	Who played the most important role?
4	Who organized the business side of the film?
5	Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play?
6	Who won the prize for supporting actress?
7	Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award?
2	Was he the first single person to win three awards?



B Opinions 🕟

Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and **moving performance** by a great leading actor.

A gripping and entertaining thriller, and full of drama – I loved it.

I'm usually a fan of Jan Loos, but this movie had such a weak plot. Very disappointing indeed.

Very violent and too much swearing – totally unsuitable for children.

Disgusting!

spotlight indeed

Use **indeed** after very and an adjective or adverb to emphasize a statement.

The film was very boring **indeed**.

I liked it very much **indeed**.

Glossary

extraordinary very unusual or much better than usual. syn incredible. opp ordinary.

moving causing strong feelings, especially of sadness. performance the act of playing a role in a film or play. gripping very exciting; holding your attention. entertaining interesting and fun.

drama exciting things that happen; an exciting event. dramatic ADJ.

fan sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.

movie (especially in US English) a film.

plot the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.

disappointing not as good as you had hoped.
swearing rude language that may upset people. swear v.
unsuitable (for sth/sb) not right or appropriate for sth/sb. OPP suitable.

disgusting very unpleasant.

Are the adjectives p	ositi				nvr S	none sultius poi
extraordinary P	2	Company of the State of the Sta	4	unsuitable	6	moving
1 gripping	3	incredible	5	disappointing	7	disgusting
Circle the correct w	ord.					
► There's a lot of swe	ear (sv	vearing in the film				
1 It's very funny extra						
				have to look after a l	oaby.	
3 The drama/movie	is on	at the Odeon cine	ma.			
4 It was an ordinary/	extra	ordinary film - I re	ally	oved it.		
5 That film won't be	suita	ble/disgusting for	you	 it's much too violen 	t.	
J Illat Illill Woll t be				ı must see it.		

	simplece the Words in these sensences	ABOUT YOU
1	'Casino Royale' is a really enter film.	
2	Forest Whitaker gave an extra	
	perf in 'The Last King of Scotland'.	Indiana and the second
3	I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very	
	disapp ind	
4	I'm a f of Cate Blanchett.	
5	'The Pianist' was very moy	

(8) ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. Compare with another student if you can.

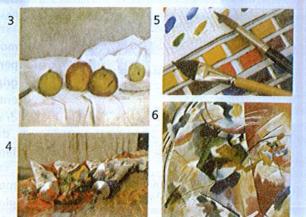
43 I can talk about art and photography

A Painting and drawing





At an art exhibition, a variety of paintings and drawings may be on display: for example, portraits¹, landscapes², and still lifes³ (note the plural here is *lifes*, not *lives*). Some artists work in oils (oil paints)⁴, while others use watercolours⁵.



Styles vary too: some works of art are realistic, others are abstract⁶. Skilled artists use a range of techniques to create different sorts of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

variety a number of different types of the same thing.

drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

on display being shown in a place where people will see it. syn on show.

style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. *Mona Lisa* by Leonardo da Vinci, is a masterpiece).

realistic showing things as they are. realism N. skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well. SYN expert.

technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new. **sort** a type or kind.

1	Is the	meaning	the sa	ame or	different?	Write	S	or	D.
---	--------	---------	--------	--------	------------	-------	---	----	----

- watercolours | oil paints D
- 1 a drawing | a painting
- 2 on display on show _____
- 3 realistic | abstract _____
- 4 create | make something new _
- 5 a sort | a type ____
- 6 a portrait | a painting __
- 7 a still life | a landscape ____
- 8 skilled | expert _____
- 9 a work of art | a painting ____

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist wh	no worked in a variety of diffe	rent (1) s	, some realistic
and others (2) a	He developed a wide range of	painting (3) t	
painted using (4) o	, but he liked to (5) v	things and sor	metimes used
(6) w	ved to paint people, and produced	a beautiful (7) p	of his
mother. Many people beli	eve that his real (8) m	was Guernica, which	n he painted
during the Spanish Civil V	Var. In the past, the painting was on	(9) d in	l .
(10) e all ove	er the world, but it is now permaner	ntly in Madrid.	



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?



Word	Example	Meaning
out of focus	The photos are out of focus.	not showing things clearly. OPP in focus.
focus on sth	I focused on the girl's face.	change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from to)	I transferred the photos from the camera to a laptop.	move sth from one place to another.
develop a film	Could I have this film developed, please?	make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic	With an automatic camera, photos are usually in focus.	able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio	She has a studio where she does fashion photography.	a room where a photographer or artist works.

Complete the phrases with words from the box.

	photographer focus 🗸	camera album		of film	a film focus	lens
	in focus		5	develo	p	
1	digital	1190	6	roll	etdacan	TISH!
2	zoom	national desired	7	built-in		
3	amateur		8	photo		
4	out of					

spotlight photography, photograph, etc.

Photography is the act of taking pictures or photos/photographs. Someone who does this as a job is a photographer; someone who does it as a hobby is an amateur photographer.

Write the words in the correct order to form sente	nces.
--	-------

- ▶ 1/film/please/roll/have/a/could/of Could I have a roll of film, please?
- 1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her ____
- 2 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in ___
- 3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this?
- 4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on _____
- 5 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy _____
- 6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the _____

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why?
- 2 What kind of camera have you got?
- 3 What features does it have? __
- 4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures?

44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians 6 d 1 trumpet 2 saxophone 3 flute 5 keyboard spotlight The suffix -ist We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. guitarist, violinist, pianist, 9 guitar saxophonist, cellist, organist. But we say trumpeter, Franz Lizst was a composer but also a great pianist. drummer, and usually Chris Martin is the lead singer and main songwriter in the keyboard player. The word rock band Coldplay. for a flute player is flautist: Mark Elder is the conductor of the Hallé Orchestra. note the change in spelling. Glossary musical instrument a thing that is used for playing band a number of people who play music together. music. SYN group. musician a person who plays a musical instrument. conductor the person in an orchestra who directs the musicians. composer a person who writes music. compose v. lead singer the main singer in a band. orchestra a large group of musicians who play music together. songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song. Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them. pjano / pianist 4 gu _____/____ 1 vi____/___ 5 sax ____/_ 2 or ____/___ 6 ce____/___ 3 tr _____/___ Complete the words in the sentences. ► They both play in a rock band 1 My brother plays the violin in an o_____ 2 Noel Gallagher plays the g______ in the rock b______ 'Oasis', and his brother Liam is the I_____singer. 3 Do you play a musical i_____? 4 I don't like modern c such as Bartók and Stockhausen. 5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s_ 6 Mike's playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p.____? 7 There are five in the band and they're all good m_____. 8 Sir Georg Solti was the c_____ of several wonderful orchestras.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?

B Who do you admire?

Music questionnaire

- 1 Write the name of a modern band or solo artist that you admire.
- 2 Has their music been **influenced** by anyone/anything?
- 3 Do they write and record their own music or play other people's?
- 4 Do they often do live concerts? Have you seen them play live?
- 5 What was the last album they released?
- 6 Why does their music **appeal** to you? Is it because of:
 - a great voice / talented musicians / lovely melodies / good lyrics?

Glossary

solo artist a singer or musician who is not part of a band.

admire sb like sb and think they have achieved a lot. admiration N.

influence sb/sth make a change to the way sb thinks. influence N.

record sth put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. recording N.

album a collection of songs (often eight or ten).

release sth put an album onto the market so people can buy it. release N.

appeal to sb be attractive or interesting to sb. appeal N.

voice the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.

talented having a lot of ability. talent N. melody a series of musical notes in a particular order. SYN tune INF.

lyrics the words of a song.

spotlight living, alive, live

Living and alive mean 'not dead', but alive is not used before a noun. He's one of the greatest living composers. Mozart isn't alive today.

Live ADJ, ADV (sounds like five) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'. We saw the band play live, then watched a recording of the concert on TV.

- 4 Circle the correct answer.
 - ▶ James Brown isn't live alive any longer.
 - 1 I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
 - 2 Is he a solo/single artist?
 - 3 I've never seen the band live/alive.
- 4 Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.
- 5 He's one of the best living/alive songwriters.
- 6 The song has a beautiful melody/voice.
- 7 His music appeals/influences to me.
- 6 Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented / release appeals solo recorded admire recording

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most ▶ talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) ______ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) _____ his first album, Louvação, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) _____ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) _____ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) _____ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) _____ His music (7) _____ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) _____ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

45 I can talk about people and places in sport

A People 🞧

Word	Example	Meaning
referee ref inv (see picture)	The referee gave out five yellow cards.	the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an umpire).
linesman (see picture)	The linesman put his flag¹ up for offside, but I think he was wrong.	a person who helps the referee in some sports. syn referee's assistant.
manager	José Mourinho has been manager of Porto and Chelsea.	the person in control of a football team (also coach in some countries).
coach	Andy Murray has a new tennis coach.	a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.
captain	Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian captain in the 2006 World Cup.	the player who is leader of the team.
spectators	Spectators ran onto the pitch (= the area where the game is played).	people who watch a game (also the crowd).
supporters	Many football supporters travel all over Europe to see their team.	people who regularly watch a team play. syn fans. support v.
commentator	I thought the commentator was talking rubbish.	a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.

Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

▶ football footballer 4 motor racing ___ 1 golf _____ 5 rugby _____ 2 athletics 6 skiing 3 boxing ____ 7 gymnastics

We usually add -er or player to a noun or verb for the person who does a sport: golfer, swimmer, skier, racing driver, boxer, tennis player, rugby player. But: athletics/athlete, gymnastics/gymnast.

spotlight Suffix -er and player

Circle the correct answer.

- ► They have a special manage/coach to improve their fitness.
- 1 The captain/manager wears an armband during the game.
- 2 The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
- 3 I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
- 4 In the men's singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
- 5 There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

Complete the words in the text.

'There was trouble at last week's gar	ne. Our ▶ captain	got a red card in the second half
for arguing with the (1) r	, and then the other	er team scored a goal in the last
minute, although the (2) I	had his (3) f	up for offside. Even the
(4) c on the radio tho	ought it was offside, but	the ref gave the goal. At the end of
the match, some (5) f	who were in the (6) c.	then ran onto the
(7) p, and the refered	e had to have a police e	scort. In the press conference after
the game, our (8) m	was still very angry."	

B Places A Manual Communication of the Communicatio

The Camp Nou Stadium, the ground of Barcelona football club, is the largest stadium in Europe with a capacity of 98,800 spectators.

Hochenheim is a motor-racing circuit where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One lap of the track is 4.574 kms.

The Centre Court at Wimbledon is famous worldwide. Now they have constructed the new roof, the All England Championship won't be interrupted because of rain.

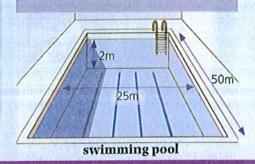
A standard Olympic swimming pool is 50 metres long, 25 metres wide, and has a minimum depth of

spotlight long, wide, deep

Long, wide, and deep can describe measurements.

The pool is 50 metres long.

- = The length of the pool is 50 metres. The pool is 25 metres wide.
- = The width of the pool is 25 metres. The pool is 2 metres deep.
- = The depth of the pool is 2 metres.



Glossary

- stadium a large structure where people sit and watch sport.
- ground an area of land where a game is played and people watch.
- club A football club is the team, the management, and the ground.
- capacity the amount or number that a space or container will hold.
- circuit an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. syn track.

lap one journey around a track.

- court a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.
- worldwide everywhere in the world, syn all over the world.
- construct sth build or make sth. construction N.
- championship a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.
- interrupt sth stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.
- standard normal; average.
- minimum smallest possible or smallest allowed. OPP maximum.

Complete the sentences.

- 2 A synonym for circuit is _____.
- 3 The noun from wide is _____.
- ► Worldwide means all over the world. 4 The opposite of minimum is......
- 1 The noun from long is _____. 5 The noun from deep is _____.
 - 6 The noun from construct is _____.
 - 7 One journey round a track is a _____

6 Complete the words in each text.

- 1 Liverpool Football ▶ Club is planning to c______ a new football s______, with a c_____ of over 60,000.
- 2 The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 L______ of the Shanghai International C_____ It's the most expensive t ______ ever c _____, costing \$240m.
- 3 The French Open Tennis C______ at Roland Garros is famous w_____ as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c_____s.
- 4 Unfortunately we don't have a s______ Olympic swimming p_____ . The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l_____ and 15 metres w_____. The m______is one metre, and the m______is two metres.

46 I can describe sporting events Do Unit 45 first

A The Olympics 🞧



The first games took place in 776 BC, with one competition, a race of about 192 metres.

The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 competitors taking part in nine sports: athletics1, cycling2, fencing3, gymnastics4, weightlifting5, shooting6, swimming, tennis, and wrestling7. By 2004, there were over 11,000 people competing in 28 sports.

Gymnast Larissa Latynina holds the record for the most Olympic medals (18).

Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where professionals are not allowed to compete.

Glossary

take place (used about a meeting or an event)

competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a competitor). compete v. competitive ADJ.

race a competition to see who is fastest or best. or who wins.

take part in sth join with other people in an activity. syn participate.

medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.

professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job. opp amateur.

spotlight record

A record is the best performance in something, especially sport. She holds the record for the long jump. (She has the record.) He broke the record in the 100 metres. (He set a new record.)

1	Comp	lete the	words	for	sports.
---	------	----------	-------	-----	---------

	shoo	2	weight	4	сус	6	wre
1	gym	3	fen	5	ath		

- Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.
 - ▶ It's a long (race/medal. It was a hard race/competition.
 - 1 How many people took place/took part?

 - 2 Anyone can take part/participate.
- 3 He broke the record/competition.
- 4 The race takes place/takes part on Tuesday.
- 5 Did she win a race/medal?
- 6 Does she hold/carry the record?

Complete the sentences.

	How many sportsmen and women took in the last Olympics?
1	The 2012 Olympics will place in London.
2	It's hard for poor countries to against rich countries in certain events.
3	A Russian gymnast holds the for the most Olympic medals won.
4	There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the are
5	The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest on foot at the Olympics.
6	My uncle won a silver in the shooting at the 1984 Olympics



dehkhodaedu.com



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?

B Winners and losers () and a mode of the losers

Glossary

In a very one-sided contest, Roger Federer defeated Andy Roddick 6-4, 6-0, 6-2 in the semi-final of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam final. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's resistance in the second with some brilliant tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very critical of his own performance, but praised his opponent for some outstanding tennis. Federer is now clearly the favourite to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam overall. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous achievement for someone who is still only 25.

spotlight defeat

As a verb, to defeat sb means to be stronger or better than somebody in a game, fight, etc. syn beat sb.

Italy defeated Wales 2-0 in the last match they played.

As a noun, a defeat is an occasion when you don't win something.

We won our first match, then followed it with three defeats.

• If a game is one-sided, one person or team is much better than the other. one-sided an activity between two players or teams to see who is best. contest semi-final · one of two games to decide who plays in the final. the last game or match in a competition. final · the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. resist v. resistance very good, clever, or skilful, syn outstanding. brilliant critical of sth/sb • saying what is wrong with sth/sb. criticize sth/sb v. · the way in which sb plays or does sth. perform v. performance · say that sb/sth is very good. praise N. praise sb/sth opponent · a person who plays against you in a sport or competition. · the person or team who is expected to win. OPP outsider. favourite · including everything; in total. overall · a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. achieve sth v. achievement Complete the sentences. The noun related to perform is performance. 4 The noun related to praise is 5 Outstanding is a synonym for ___ 1 The noun related to achieve is _____ 6 An **outsider** is the opposite of a ____ 2 The verb related to critical is _____ 7 Beat sb is the same as ___ 3 The noun related to **resist** is _____. Complete the sentences. ▶ We were <u>defeated</u> in the semi-final, which was very disappointing. 1 Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great _____ 2 He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that's three titles _ 3 Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic 4 He was the _____, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-____ 5 Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very ______ of his own performance. 6 Who will her _____ be in the final? ~ I don't know. It depends on the other ____ Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

47 I can talk about books

A Types of book 🕟

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I'm always using reference books such as dictionaries. encyclopedias, manuals, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for pleasure too, and I particularly like poetry. At home all my books are arranged in alphabetical order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've got loads of novels, murder mysteries, science fiction, etc. But there is non-fiction as well; I read quite a lot of biographies. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

Glossary reference book • a book you use to find a piece of information. · a book or set of books that gives information about many encyclopedia different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order. manual · a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer. catalogue a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere. a feeling of enjoyment. pleasure · poems in general (a poem is a piece of writing arranged poetry in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm). · listed in the same way as the alphabet: A, B, C, etc. alphabetical novel a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real. a story in which the events are only explained at the end mystery (e.g. a murder mystery). · books about events that take place in the future, often science fiction involving travel in space. SYN sci-fi INF. non-fiction books about real facts, people, events, etc. opp fiction. · the story of sb's life written by someone different (an biography

autobiography is the story of sb's life written by that

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

catalogue / murder mystery autobiography manual reference book encyclopedia novel biography sci-fi

Fiction	Non-fiction	
	catalogue	

- 2 Complete the sentences.
 - ► A dictionary is arranged in <u>alphabetical</u> order.
 - 1 If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an _____
 - 2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful _
 - 3 Dictionaries are a kind of _____book.
 - 4 What kind of books do you read for _____ in the evenings?
 - 5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder _____ at the moment.
 - 6 What's the tenth letter of the _____? ~ It's 'J'.
 - 7 Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his _____
 - 8 If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the _____
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

B Choosing a book Glossary the name of a book, play, film, etc. title . the outside part of a book, magazine, etc. cover Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read? If sth attracts your attention, it attract sb's interests you so that you want to attention The title and front cover just look at it. attracted my attention. spend time pleasantly in a shop browse looking at things. I was **browsing** in a bookshop. I just picked up a **paperback** that looked interesting. · a book with a thick paper cover paperback (a hardback has a hard cover). readable easy or interesting to read. A recommendation by a friend – he said a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their gift it was very readable and well written. birthday. syn present. author the writer of a particular book, play, etc. It was a gift, but I like the look through . read sth quickly. SYN skim sth. author so I was really pleased. sth one of the parts into which a book is chapter I looked through the first divided. chapter - it looked fascinating fascinating · very interesting. spotlight Compound adjectives with well There are many adjectives consisting of well + past participle, e.g. well written (of a book, article. etc.), well informed (= knowing a lot about a subject), well known (= famous). Tick (/) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ✓ gift ? 1 The cover attracted my chapter \square attention \square . 2 The author was well known \(\square\$ well written \(\square\$. 3 I read the second *title* \square *chapter* \square . 4 The book looked very readable ☐ well informed ☐. 5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the hardback \square paperback \square . 6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just attracting \square browsing \square . Complete the text. My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not ▶ _well known, but he's a good (1) of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t __! It's being published in hardback and (4) p______. I read the first (5) c_____about selling things on the internet, and it's - I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w_ ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

1 What kind of books do you find most fascinating?2 What kind of reference books do you use most often?

4 Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover?5 Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why?

3 Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops?

48 I can describe festivals



'LA TOMATINA': THE WORLD'S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to participate in this huge social occasion, which includes music, parades, dancing, and fireworks. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 tons of over-ripe tomatoes are thrown in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this festival started!

CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry **blossom** is the national flower of Japan. And as spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower The trees are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **parades**, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty **contest**.





THE RIO CARNIVAL ('CARNAVAL')

One of the most spectacular entertainments in the world, Carnival is a wild four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event means a lot to the people from the poorest neighbourhoods, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole community to go out and have fun together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers dress up in the most striking costumes.

spotlight festival, carnival, p...

A festival is a day or days when people celebrate something, often a religious event. A carnival is like a festival with people dancing and playing music in the streets. A parade is an organized event in which people move (parade v) through the streets, often on special vehicles, wearing costumes (special clothes), and playing music.

Glossary

participate (in sth) • become part of an activity. syn take part in sth.

• a time when sth happens.

fireworks
objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one ton = 1,016 kilograms).

throw sth • use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.

a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
 approach sb/sth
 come nearer to sb/sth.

light sth up • make sth bright with light. syn illuminate sth.

contest
 a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a beauty contest).
 spectacular
 very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.

• an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music

(the people who entertain you are entertainers).

wildexciting and enjoyable.be very important to sb.

an area of a town and the people who live there.
all the people who live in an area or town.

have fun enjoy yourself.

put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
striking
very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.

1		nd one spelling mistake in each sentence. V		the end.
► The event is really designed to serve the local comunity				
	1	It was really amazing to see the trees iluminated	at night.	
	2	Carneval takes place once a year, usually during	the holiday season.	
	3	As we approached the centre, we saw that the er	tertainment had started	
	4	It was a really espectacular evening, which we w	vill never forget.	revisi brownino i i w
	5	The fastival takes place every three years.	LIA Tool probably vehicle	
	6	The display of firewerks was absolutely amazing.	<u> </u>	
	7	They picked tuns of grapes.		
	8	Spring is the time when people make special trip	os to see the trees in blossun	n. ————————————————————————————————————
2	M			
			contest.	
	1	Fireworksb	flowers at the entertainers	
	2		lit up the night sky.	
	3	THE TESTIVAL THEELO	fun together.	
	4		blossom. 🗸	
	5	People dress up in f	take part in the event.	
	6	Lots of people want to g	occasion.	
	7	There is even a beauty h	a lot to the community.	
	8	It was a very wild	special costumes.	
4	2 3 4 5 6	We had a good time watching the carnival parace. How many people took part in the event? We were going to a party so we decided to put. The church is usually lit up at night. She was wearing a very attractive and unusual dir's a great time because everyone goes onto the The festival is an important event in the local are complete the questions.	resse streetse	ABOUT YOUR
				COUNTRY
	1	What is the most important f or c_	in your country	7
	2	Do people p through the streets as a	part of it?	
	3	Do you have other kinds of a during	it?	Annual Control of the Section of the Control of the
	4	Have you ever t in a para	ade? If so, what did you do?	F
	5	Have you ever d in a spec	cial costume for a festivair	
		If so what did you wear?		
	6	Are there any special o when you hav	e fat night?	
	7	Do these different events m a lot to y	ou personally?	
	8	Would you like to p in any of the festi Which one(s) and why?	vals on page 124?	Annual Control of the
6	Al	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers nother student.	to the questions in Exer	cise 4, or ask
6	TO SERVICE SER	Test yourself. Cover the words in the gloss	ary and look at the mear	ings. Say the words.

Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

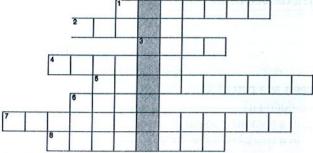
- 1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.
 - I spent the whose day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
 - 1 The president received many death threads during his life.
 - 2 Sales of newspapers have reclined over recent years.
 - 3 I worry a lot about bomb stares where I live.
 - 4 Are you interested in currant affairs?
 - 5 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war.
 - 6 Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get *The Times*.
- 2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

cultural editor pension made ✓ journalist claims headline

- ▶ I \(a \) promise to help her, so I will do it. made
- 1 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
- 2 I think he must receive a because he's nearly 70.
- 3 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
- 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the for three years. ___
- 5 The government that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.
- 6 My cousin's a newspaper; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



- 1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
- 2 film
- 3 the part an actor plays
- 4 the person who comes first in a competition
- 5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
- 6 the series of events that form the story of a film
- 7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
- 8 rude language that may upset people

The letters in the grey squares make the word _____

Unit 43

U	nιτ	43
1	۱۸	hich words or phrases are being defined?
ď		an <u>exhibition</u> of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
	1	an camera: one which works by itself
	2	an painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the
	2	exact appearance of people or things
	3	a: a place where an artist or photographer works
	4	focus: not able to be seen clearly
	5	a drawing: one that shows things as they really are
	6	a: a painting or drawing of the countryside
	7	a: a type or kind
	8	a artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience
	٠.	nit 4
Ur	nit	44 Tick the correct column
1	Co	omplete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.
-		record violinits before the substantial form of the
	1	c_nd_ct_r _ 7.tr_mp_t _ see along see along
		ld sngr 8 m_ld
	3	ld sngr
	4	k_ybrd pl_y_r _ 9 flt_st _ c_mp_s_r _ 10 gt_r_st _
		fl_t_ t encycloped = state = n = n = n = state = st
		b_nd _ 12 s_lrt_st
Ur	nit	45
1		ck (✓) the two correct words or phrases.
		five thousand spectators 🗹 commentators 🗆 supporters 🗹
	1	a football ground \square stadium \square circuit \square 4 a motor-racing track \square ground \square circuit \square
	2	a tennis lap ☐ court ☐ umpire ☐ 5 a football club ☐ referee ☐ umpire ☐
	3	the new spectator a coach manager for a worldwide deep standard pool
2	Co	omplete the sentences with a suitable word.
		The other members of the team chose him as their <u>captain</u> .
	1	They're a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
	2	The ground has a of 50 000
	3	I watch my team every week. I've them for 25 years.
	4	Alonso completed the last of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
	5	The game was for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
	6	A of 28,000 watched the last game.
	7	Who won the Drivers' World last year?
	8	The of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the is about 50.

Unit 46

1	M	atch	1-9	with	a-j	
		It w	as an	outst	and	ii

	It was an outstanding
1	About thirty took part
2	It was a very one-

3 He was critical ____

4 He still holds ____

5 She's the favourite ____

8 He's a difficult _____

9 She won five titles ____

a overall

b of the performance.

c the record.

d place on Tuesday.

e in yesterday's race.

f to win.

g performance. ✓

h sided contest.

i final

j opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

more regard to those the ser person write Parest	Yes	No
▶ If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.	6	1
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.	- 1	
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
$3\ A$ well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.	110	
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		
8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.		100

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

	wild festival community / throw mean striking parade take part neighbourhood
	Anyone in the whole / can participate. <u>community</u>
1	Everyone through the main streets in the town.
2	The people in the where I live are very friendly.
	It's a two-day, which we have every year.
	It was quite a party; we had great fun
5	Do you ever in parades?
6	l enjoy the carnival: it a lot to me.
7	She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it.
8	We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object.

49 I can get through exams 6

A guide to exam success

- Follow the invigilator's instructions. Don't take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
- Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don't waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
- Planning is essential in successful writing. Devote 5–10 minutes to making notes.
- Have a positive attitude. It's your chance to show what you know.
 And it will be a relief when it's all over in a few hours.

Glossary			
success follow instructions	 the achievement of sth you have wanted. succeed v. do what sb tells you to do. 	paper carefully	 the written questions in an exam. If you read sth carefully, you read slowly and pay attention.
invigilator	the person watching students in the exam room.	examiner	 the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
item communicate	a thing or an object.talk to or make signs to sb.	planning	 the act or process of making plans for sth.
with sb candidate	a person taking an exam.	essential	 completely necessary and important in a particular situation.
disqualify sb	officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they	devote time to sth/sb	• give proper time to sth/sb.
	have broken a rule.	attitude	 the way you think, feel, or behave.
cheat	do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a cheat N).	relief	 the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. relieved ADJ.

Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Read the planning (paper) carefully.
- 1 The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
- 2 What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
- 3 If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
- 4 A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
- 5 Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
- 6 If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little ▶ success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a
negative (1) a to them. He's so nervous that he can't follow the (2) i
given by the (3) i He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was
accused of (4) c and was (5) d for taking a forbidden (6) i
nto the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to
read the (7) pslowly before he writes anything, and that it's (8) e that he
plans his answers (9) c However, he never (10) d enough time to the
11) p, so the (12) e must find his answers very difficult to understand.
n our house, it's always such a (13) r if he passes an exam.

3

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

50 I can describe university life

A Academic life 🕠

Word	Example	Meaning
academic	I enjoy academic subjects like history.	connected to education, especially school or university.
undergraduate	Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.	a university student studying for their first degree.
graduate	She's an Oxford graduate. He graduated last year.	a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they graduate v).
tutor	You can ask your tutor for advice on your work.	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.
professor	She's a professor of law.	the highest level of teacher in a university.
lecture	I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a lecturer N).
seminar	Are you going to the seminar this morning?	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.
debate	We had a great debate.	a formal discussion.
attend sth	You have to attend lectures.	go to sth, or be present at sth.
take notes	Don't forget to take notes.	write words quickly to help you remember sth.
read widely	Try to read widely.	read a lot of different kinds of books.
write a thesis	I'm writing a thesis on global warming.	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.
do research	You do research for a PhD.	do a long and careful study of a subject.
continuous assessment	We don't have exams; it's all continuous assessment.	a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.

1 Tick () the words that are people.

	professor 🗸		assessment X		Service black
1	thesis	4	graduate	7	seminar
2	debate	5	undergraduate	8	research
3	lecture	6	tutor	9	lecturer

2 Complete the text.

If you are an undergraduate a	t university in Britain, you s	spend a lot of time st	tudying alone,
but you also have to (1) a	a lot of (2) s	and (3) I	and take
(4) n	the discussion is usually led	d by a (5) t	
read (6) w and you	may have to express your	opinions on a range	of (7) a
topics. In many courses, there is o	continuous (8) a	: the marks you g	get for your essays go
towards your final results, after w	which, if you are successful,	, you (9) g	. = =



Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Student life

Advice for new students

- In Britain, many university students live away from home. This means you get the freedom and opportunity to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a hall of residence in their first year, where you are less likely to be homesick or lonely.
- Student life is all about learning to manage your money: tuition fees, loans, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a scholarship, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.
- At university, you can be flexible about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed in time for lectures, do your work on time, and plan your revision period before exams.

Glossary				
	 in a different place from your home. opp at home. the right or ability to say or do 	home. orr at home.		
opportunity	what you want. the possibility to do sth that loan you want to do. syn chance.		 etc. (tuition fees are the money that you pay to be taught). If you take out a loan, you borrow money, usually from a bank. money that an organization gives sb to help them study. able to change easily. flexibility N. the process of studying sth again the prepare for an exam. revise v. 	
ENGELS RESPONSED.	e sentences with words from t	he box.	spotlight in time, on time If you are in time for something, you	
opportuni	ty freedom homesick	Boas Table	arrive before or at the correct time. If you are on time for something, you arrive at exactly the correct time.	
1 I had the2 The train w3 I think child	to meet the president to meet the president as, fortunately. Iren have too much, before the exam.	· ·	He arrived in time for the lesson. (= before the lesson started.) The lesson started on time. (= at the correct time.)	
5 I don't know 6 I got there	v how to my money. to see Joel before he ad for a year but I was	e left.		
Complete the	e questions. Then write your a	nswers, or a	sk another student. ABOUT YOU	
Do most strDo they haveDo they haveCan they go	s usually live at home, or a udents live in halls of r fees? The to pay t fees? The to take out l to pay et a s to help pay for like the c to study ab	y the bills? their studies?	me?	

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings.

Can you remember the words?

51 I can apply for a job 6

Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are **based**, you can apply for any advertised **vacancy**.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a **valid** UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be **acknowledged automatically** by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to attend an interview, we will contact you. At that time, and if required, we will also assess other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, **give** you **feedback**.

If you are the successful **candidate**, we will offer you the position, but this is **subject to** satisfactory **references**. We shall also request **confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary		
apply for sth	• ask for sth in writing proc (often a job or course).	ess a series of things that are done for a particular reason. rview a meeting in which sb is
be based somewher	re • If you are based in a place, that place is the centre for your work.	asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who
vacancy	 a job that is available for sb to do. 	asks the questions is an interviewer). interview sb v.
work permit	 an official document cont 	ect sb • phone or write to sb.
	which says you are asse allowed to work.	 decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. assessment N.
valid	 If sth is valid, it is legally acceptable and can be 	sb feedback • give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.
advise sb	• tell sb the best thing to	idate • a person who makes a formal application for a job.
	do. syn give sb advice refer (advice n, u).	rence • a statement or letter which describes sb's character and
acknowledge sth	 let sb know that you have received sth from them. 	ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a referee).
	acknowledgement N. conf	irmation • a statement in writing
automatically	• without any human control.	which says that sth is true or accurate. confirm v.

spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: **attend sth** (= go to/for sth), **require sth** (= need sth), **request sth** (= ask for sth), **subject to sth** (= depending on sth), **position** (= job), and **shall** (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.

	ad	lvise	▶ advice	confirm
	ар	ply		acknowledge
		sess		interview
)	The	ere is a m	istake in each ser	ntence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
		My old bo	oss said he would be	e my reference. My old boss said he would be my referee.
9	1	They said t	they'd contact to m	е
	2	Is she appl	ving a job?	
	3	Have you o	not a work permissi	on?
	4	The compa	any is based on Tok	yo
	5	He gave m	ne some good advic	es
	6	She gave r	ne foodback after t	he interview.
	7	I have to co	onfirmate it in writin	ng. <u>raenhar</u>
	8	If you appl	ly for a job, it's quite	e a long processment.
	Rei	place the i	underlined words	with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning
			ntact you as soon a	
	1	Has the co	mpany asked for re	ferences?
				hursday
	3	I went for	an interview last we	eek.
	4	If you need	d more information,	, please contact me.
	5	We're goir	ng to give him the jo	ob, <u>depending on</u> satisfactory references.
	Col	mplete th	e sentences with	a single word.
,		and the first of t		ger – it's not <u>valid</u> .
,	1	Lwork in k	ots of places but I'r	nin Bristol.
	2	Sho was at	nary because they	lidn't that they had received her letter.
	3	He offered	I me the job on the	phone, but I haven't had written yet.
	4	They said t	they would	me by phone when they've made a decision.
	5	You don't	need to ask for con	firmation; they will reply
	6	They interv	viewed four other	for the job as well as me.
	7	Val wrote	to the company for	a job, but there are no at the moment.
	8	I hope the	v'll m	e feedback after the interview.
	9	He wants t	to for	the job, but he still has to fill in the form.
	0	You have t	to do tests and have	e several interviews; it's quite a long
)	ΔR	OUT YOU	Write answers to	o the questions, or ask another student.
		14 (L. L. L	Land on a load for	as in the part?
	2	How many	intorvious have vo	u had?
	2	Have any i	nterviewers given W	ou feedback after the interview?
	4	How many	times have you be	en the successful candidate?
		14/		TO COME TO SERVICE THE SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF TH
	5	wno were	vour referees?	ork permit? If so, where?

52 I can describe jobs

A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market sectors. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for jobs as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have **experience** and/or **qualifications**.

- **engineering**
- management
- military
- retail
- training
- **⊠** retan **⊠ finance**
- publishing
- a recruitment
- manufacturing

spotlight career, job, profession

A career is the series of jobs you have in a particular area, e.g. a career in publishing. A job is any work you do to earn money, e.g. being a waiter, teacher, etc. A profession is a job with a high level of training and/or education, e.g. the medical/teaching profession.

Glossary

- sector a part of the business activity of a country
 (public sector = controlled by the government;
 private sector = controlled by private companies).
- experience the things that you have done in your life.
- qualifications the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.
- engineering the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.
- military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.
- training the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job. train sb v.
- publishing the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc. publish sth v.
- manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories. manufacture sth v.
- management the control of a business or organization. manage sb/sth v.
- retail selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.

finance the activity of managing money.

recruitment the business of finding people for job
vacancies. recruit sb v.

1	What sector do these people work in?	
	▶ I produce books and then we sell themPu	blishing
	1 I teach people their jobs.	5 I produce cars.
	2 I'm a soldier.	6 I'm the boss of a company.
	3 I sell clothes.	7 I control the money in our business.
	4 I design motorways	8 I fill job vacancies in companies.
2	Complete the words in the text.	
	and eventually I'd like to be in (2) min small companies in my holidays, so I have a lillarge company to start with; they do a lot of (4) (5) q too. My father's in the legal (t, and I'll be able to get some extra 6) p, but for some reason, he wants
	me to have some experience in the (7) m	as a soldier. I ve no idea why, though.
3	ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. V qualifications in?	Which sectors do you have experience or

B Jobs 🕟

Job		What does he/she do?	Glossary	MANAGEMENT
plumber	A.	installs and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.	install sth put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.	
mechanic	1	repairs engines, especially in vehicles.	vehicle e.g. car, bus, lorry.	
electrician	8	installs, connects, or repairs electrical wiring.	electrical of or about electricity	7000
carpenter	1	makes or repairs parts of a building and other objects made of wood.	object a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.	
nanny	8	takes care of / cares for children in their own home.	take care of / care for sb/sth look after sb/sth.	
travel agent	3	makes travel arrangements for people.	make arrangements for sb/sth make plans or preparations for sb/sth.	
estate agent	FORSALE	buys and sells houses or land for people.	land an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.	
importer		imports goods.	import sth buy goods from another country to sell in your own country opp export sth.	
priest	Å	performs religious ceremonies in some religions.		
civil servant		works for the civil service, i.e. all government departments except the military.	i.e. in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).	
sales rep / representative	É	travels to different places and sells the products of a particular company.	product a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.	
Cover the	ne tabl	e above. Are these sentences true	or false? Write T or F.	
1 An estate a 2 A carpente	igent se r makes	Ills holidays 5 A mecha wooden objects 6 An election ks for a company 7 A plumb	conducts religious ceremonies nic can repair vehicles rician fixes electrical wiring er can fix your central heating	
Cross out on	e word	which is wrong. Write the correct	word at the end.	100
► I haven't ge	ot centr	al heating; I need a plumber to repair a l nade the arrangements, i.e. buying ticke	new system. <u>install</u>	>
2 The estate	agent s	old the landing which belonged to the f	arm because it	10/00)
3 What prod	uces do	es that company make?		
4 My sister d	oes qui	te a lot of training for the civil servant s silver jewellery from abroad		موسسه زبان دهخدا
6 A nanny ta	kes care	for children.		dehkhodaedu.com
7 Sales repre		s have to travel a lot.		



Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?

53 I can describe a career

A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a challenging job with good prospects in local radio. I worked hard and, as a reward, I was promoted. I was delighted. I was quickly transferred to a different department. Then things went wrong: one colleague got the sack, and another handed in his notice. After that, ten people were made redundant. I didn't want to be out of work, so I decided to look elsewhere. I applied for a job in TV and was appointed assistant director. Amazing!

spotlight dismiss, sack, fire

An employer may dismiss an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say sack sb, give sb the sack, or fire sb. An employee can get the sack INF.

He was sacked was given the sack got the sack was fired / was dismissed

for being rude.

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. challenge N.

prospects (PL) chances of being successful in the future.

reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. reward sb v.

promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. promotion N.

transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.

department a section of a business, university, etc. hand in your notice say officially that you want to leave your job. SYNS resign, quit INF.

make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.

out of work not working and unable to find a job. syn **unemployed**.

elsewhere in or to another place. appoint sb choose sb for a job.

	s the meaning the same or different? W	/rite S or D.	
	a challenge a rewardD	5 prospects chances of suc	ccess
1	out of work unemployed	6 hand in your notice resig	in
2	be promoted be appointed	7 be sacked be promoted	cy sproced and
3	get the sack sack someone	8 transfer sb move sb to a	nother office
4	fire someone dismiss someone	9 make someone redundan	t fire someone _
1	My job's very	(BENEFIT AND	
	I was glad to be appointed to t	(BENEFIT AND)
2	I want to transfer to another		and stella
3	I have good in my job. (chance		
4	I'd really love to be (given a		**************************************
5	I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look		Annual and the control of the contro
6	I've never been (out of work	(a) The first the second of the second second	
7	I'd hate to have to someone.	(dismiss)	
-	If I hated my job, I would definitely	(hand in my natica)	

B A job with responsibility ()

KATE	Amy, I know you work	Glossary	
	on reception at the sports centre, but what does that involve?	what does (your job) involve?	• = what do you have to do (in your job)?
AMY	Well, I handle all customer bookings, and	handle sth/sb	 take suitable action in a situation. syn deal with sth/sb.
	answer enquiries over	enquiry	a question about sth (make an enquiry).
	the phone or face-to-	face-to-face	with and looking at sb.
	face. Occasionally I also have to deal with	complaint	 a statement that you are not satisfied with st (make a complaint). complain v.
	complaints from	members of the public	• people in general (also the public).
	members of the public, and if there's a problem, I'm the one who has to	solve a problem	find an answer to a problem. syn find a solution.
	solve it.	clerical	connected with office work, especially
KATE	KATE So it's not just clerical duties, then?	sick ony	keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a clerk).
AMY	Oh, no. Some weekends	duties	the tasks you do when you are at work.
	I'm in charge of the whole centre, and in	in charge of sth/sb	 in a position of control over sth/sb. syn responsible for sb/sth.
	an emergency it's my job to make sure that	make sure	· check sth so that you can be certain about it
	everyone is safe. I have a lot of responsibility .	responsibility	 the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.
3 4 5 6 7	We're not responsible the Do you know how to the p	tuation rtment? is locked cleaning problem?	
			ALL-A PLANTAGE OF A SHAME WHEN SHEET HE
A I cou like (2)	ıldn't stand it and left. I've r it. My (1) din e about place:	e job – I was a ▶ clerk now got a job in a tourist include helping people to for stovisit, and finding (3) s	in the civil service for five years, but I information office in Liverpool and I really ind accommodation, dealing with their to their travel problems. I'm also ohn Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood
hor	mes. I try to make (5) s	everything goes	well
B 1 (7)	work in a travel agent's, an p and I really	d my job (6) i y enjoy (8) h work: other times, I have	organizing trips for people. I love meeting the the money side of things. Some of my work is a lot of (10) r
cus	tomer's noliday goes wrong		and sover the magnings What are the



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

54 I can describe working conditions 6

Job questionnaire

- 1 Do you feel your job is stressful?
- 2 How much time off do you get every year?
- 3 Do you ever have to do shift work?
- 4 Do you often have to work overtime?
- 5 Do you normally receive an annual bonus?
- 6 Are you entitled to sick pay?
- 7 Do you have the right to join a trade union?
- 8 Do people in your kind of job ever go on strike?

spotlight time off

If you have, get, or take time off, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday. I had a day off to go to a wedding.

He's taking a month off work.

Glossary

working conditions

 the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.

stressful shift work

overtime

sick pay

trade union

go on strike

- making you worry a lot. stress N.
- a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.
- the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can work overtime or do overtime INF).

an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive.

 money you receive when you are ill and cannot work.

be entitled to

(do) sth

be cause it is the law.

syn have the right to (do) sth.

union or

an organization of people in the

 an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members.

 refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.

- Complete the words.
 - ▶ I often do shift work.
 - 1 I belong to a t _____ union.
 2 We went on st _____ last year.
 - 3 Do you get an annual b __ _ s?
- 4 Our w ____ ing c ____ itions are good.
- 5 I often have to work o ____ time.
- 6 She t _____ two weeks o ____ in summer.
- 7 Does he suffer from st ____ in his job?
- Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.
 - ▶ you/working/have/good/do Do you have good working conditions?
 - 1 is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ?
 - 2 we / sick / are / to / entitled / ? _____
 - 3 take / like / to / l'd / week / a . _____
 - 4 you/shift/don't/why/like/?_____

 - 6 go/why/the/on/did/workers/?.....
- ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1	Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same
	I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.
	1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS
	2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE
	3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE
	4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED
	5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE
	6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT
	7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED
	8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL
Jr	nit 50
	Tick (v) the correct words
1	Tick (/) the words or phrases that are correct.
	▶ At university, students have to attend lectures ✓ read widely ✓ teach professors □.
	1 A tutor Seminar Secture Sis a type of class at a university.
	2 Some students live and study at home homesick away from home.
	3 Undergraduates ☐ Professors ☐ Tutors ☐ are types of teacher.
	4 In order to have enough money, students often pay tuition fees \(\Boxed \) take out a loan \(\Boxed \)
	try to get a scholarship I was a seed a language of the second of th
	5 In seminars, students may have a debate ☐ take notes ☐ write a thesis ☐.
2	One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
	I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loan. take
	1 Our seminar started time at 10.00.
	2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence.
	3 How much were the tuition for your summer course?
	4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture.
	5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies.
	6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
	7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous.
	8 Do you study away home?
	Table 4
Jr	nit 51
1	There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.
	▶ Do you need a reference? <u>reference</u>
	1 Is there a job vacancie? 2 Did they give you any advise? 3 Did be advantage the application?
	3 Did he acknowlede the application:
	4 I haven't got a valide work permit.
	5 They asess people differently.

	7		
	8		
2		Complete the dialogue.	
	A	You know that job Vacancy . Did you (1) for it?	
	В		
	B	Wow. How did it go? It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3) afterwards, so it's hard to	Laster The
	D	said they'd (4) me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me	
	Α	What about (5)?	the job.
	В		
	Α	Oh really? And were there many other (6)?	
	В		
		Still, at least I don't need a work (8)	
Ur	nit	: 52	0.7
121			UC HAR
1		ick (✓) the correct words.	
		A plumber 🗹 A nanny 🗆 An electrician 🗹 often installs things.	
	1	A carpenter A travel agent A plumber gets his hands dirty.	
	2	A nanny ☐ A plumber ☐ An importer ☐ looks after people. A civil servant ☐ A carpenter ☐ An estate agent ☐ usually works in an office.	
	4	An electrician \square A sales rep \square A mechanic \square often has to repair things.	
	5	A sales rep \(\text{A civil servant} \) \(\text{A travel agent} \) \(\text{Wants to sell you something.} \)	
	6	A plumber \square An estate agent \square A carpenter \square has had a lot of technical training.	
2	C	And the dislocation of the dislo	
_		omplete the dialogues.	nina a
	1	Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in <u>publis</u> Dr Erman seems very good, but how much does he have? ~ Oh, I think h	e's boon in
		the medical for about ten years now.	ie s been in
	2	Who made all the travel for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's h	er job;
		she's a travel	rof T
	3	How long has your father been a civil? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his	whole
	1	in the civil	
	4	Did the company give you much after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me courses, and I took exams to get extra	n several
	5	What kind of does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been	a sales
50	~	for six months.	
Un	it	53	
	••	a secucione entraka in each exptence. Write the extra communication	
1	Со	emplete the text using words from the box in the correct form.	
		clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging	
		resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal	
		THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY O	

	١٨/	hen I left	scho	ol Lo	not a io	h as a D	cler	k_ v	with an in	surance co	mpany. It n	nainly	
	(1	1	Jeno	fillin	a in for	ms and	typing	lists	of names.	so it wasn'	t very (2) _		After
	2	few mon	ths th	houd	h I was	(3)	typing.	and	d they ga	ve me a iob	where I w	ras (4)	
	M	ith the ni	ıhlic	which	h was n	nuch m	ore inte	erestin	a. Eventu	ually. I was (5)	to anot	her
	de	nartmen	t whe	re I h	ad to h	andle o	ustome	ers' (6))	, which	ch wasn't r	much fun. I ha	ated it
	SO	L decided	to C	7)	idd to i	an	d look	(8)		In fact, 1	that was ra	ther stupid o	f me,
	he	cause I w	vas oi	it of	(9)		fors	everal	months.	Anyway, in	the end I	got a fantasti	cjob
	W	orkina in	a 700	and	l'm sti	Il here.	I'm in (10)		of the sr	akes, which	ch is an enorn	nous
	(1	1)	u Loc	_ bu	t I love	it!							
2	C	omplete	the o	cross	word.	The let	ters in	the g	rey squa	ares spell o	ut anothe	er word. Wha	at is it?
			1			er mile	122-15						
						96 1-96	4.0						
		2											
				3	2000	_		7/0					
						ME TOWN	1000						
		4		1000		The House	F. E. W E.						
			5			_	19810	1 1 PEN	3010 91				
			٦				sei slig	(//0	a river				
			6			Maria Swan							
		7				32 200							
							1 2 4						
				8		10 101 0	Control of						
			la	-									
				1									
	1	choose								لمعجما لمحيات			
	2									rked hard			
	3	if you re		you	hand in	your						States .	
	4	out of v					1 Mary						
	5	chances											
	6	the task	s you	i do v	when yo	ou are a	it work			nd daing a	counts		
	7						n as ke	eping	records a	and doing a	Courts		
	8	find a se	olutio	n to	a proble	em			V 104				
	9	deal wit	th sor	methi	ng or c	ontrol i							
	Th	e letters	in the	grey	square	es make	the wo	ord		Total I			
Ur	nit	54											
01													
1	-	omplete	tha	wor	de in th	o sent	tences					We can't star	
1	C	mpiete	tile	WOI (45 III G	,			rk pau				
		She's be	een ve	ery ill	, but sh	e doesi	it get a	any s	ck pay	ioh	-00mm		
	1	He alwa	ays lo	oks v	vorried	becaus	e ne na	s such	al it's	job).		
	2	Everyon	e has	the	ſ		to a lur	ich br	eak - it's	the law.			
	3	I don't l	belon	g to	a t		U	ما ما سال	any l	onger.			
	4	Are you	e		to	SICK P	ay in yo	roally	liko c	14	ork		
	5	I often	nave 1	to wo	ork nigh	its, but	uont	hut ~	any of th	work o	OIK.		
	6	Bus driv	ers h	ave a	pasic 3	5-nour	week,	but II	in addition	nem work o	alarios		
	7	A lot of	peop	ole ge	et an an	nual b.			lact year	on to their s	alaries. Nav		
	8	Some o	the	work	ers wei	it on s		- 51	iast year	for higher p	Juy.		

55 I can talk about finance

A Financial terms 💫

Example	Meaning			
We need to raise capital.	capital the money you need to start a business (to raise capital is to find the money you need).			
The company has an annual turnover of \$20 million.	turnover the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (annual = every year). syn sales revenue.			
Operating costs have gone up this year.	operating costs the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.			
Inflation is now at 3 per cent.	inflation a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.			
We paid £1 million in tax.	tax money you have to pay to the government.			
The company made a pre-tax profit of £2 million.	profit the money you make in a business after paying costs (pre-tax is before paying tax). opp loss.			
I think the company has cash flow problems.	cash flow the movement of money into and out of a business (a cash flow problem means more money is going out than coming in).			
I need <mark>a bank loan.</mark> They took out a loan.	bank loan money the bank lends and sb borrows. take out obtain (you also take out insurance).			
We pay a lot of interest. The interest rate is 4 per cent.	interest extra money you pay when you borrow money (the interest rate is the exact cost of borrowing).			

Match 1-8 with a-i.

•	annual <u>f</u>	a a loan	spotlight finance
1	operating	revenue	Finance can be:
2	pay	c rate	1 the money somebody borrows or receives
3	raise	d a profit	to operate a business (They need to raise more
4	interest	costs	finance.), finance v.
5	take out	f turnover 🗸	OR
6	sales	capital	2 the activity of managing money in a company, financial ADJ. (He's the new Director of
7	make	flow	Finance /Financial Director.)
8	cash	i 10% interest	Thanco, Thancar Director,

② Complete the sentences.

7 We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a		We can't start the business unless we can <u>raise</u> more capital.
The current interest is 5 per cent. It's been a good year; we've made a pre of \$3.5 m. has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil. They needed more money so they another bank We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a	1	If sales continue to rise, the annual could reach five million euros.
The current interest is 5 per cent. It's been a good year; we've made a pre of \$3.5 m. has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil. They needed more money so they another bank We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a	2	If we spend more money this month, we'll have a cash problem.
has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil. They needed more money so they another bank We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a		
They needed more money so they another bank We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a	4	It's been a good year; we've made a pre of \$3.5 m.
7 We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a	5	has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.
	6	They needed more money so they another bank
8 They need the loan to the new business.	7	We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a this year.
	8	They need the loan to the new business.



Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

B Financial trends

A trend is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Common verbs + examples	Common nouns + examples
1	go up, rise, increase, grow Prices have risen by 10 per cent.	rise, increase, growth We saw some growth last year.
ţ	go down, fall, drop Interest rates fell last month.	fall, drop There's been a drop in sales.
-	remain unchanged/stable syn stay the same Prices have remained unchanged.	stability There has been stability in the markets.
$\stackrel{\wedge}{\leftarrow}$	peak Sales peaked in the third quarter. (third quarter = July to September)	peak Sales reached a peak in 2007.
~	fluctuate Sales have fluctuated all year.	fluctuation There has been some fluctuation in prices.

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb
a slight rise in costs	very small.	Costs rose slightly.
a gradual rise in profits	slow and over a long period of time.	Profits have risen gradually.
a steady increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing.	The interest rate has increased steadily.
a significant fall in profits	noticeable and important.	Profits fell significantly.
a sharp fall in sales	very large and sudden.	Sales have fallen sharply.

4	Complete the sentences of	n the right.	The meaning	must stay	the same.
---	---------------------------	--------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

There has been a sharp fall in sales.	Sales have fallen sharply
There was significant growth in sales.	Sales
There was a gradual rise in the price.	The price 235 400 to 100 to 10
There was a slight fall in profits.	Profits
There has been stability in costs.	Costs have remained
There has been a steady rise in sales.	Sales have

5 Complete the text. Use a <u>different</u> word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales increased significantly. The second quarter was
even better; sales increased (1) They continued to (2) steadily in the third
guarter and reached a (3) at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had (4)
up (5) almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight (6), but it was
still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (7) in the first half of the year – up
one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained (8)

6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

	There was a 🛶 slight	fall in 2003.	3	Sales → in 2006
	Sales -	in 2004.	4	In 2007, sales 🛶
2	There was a 1	in 2005.	5	In 2008, sales 🔪

56 I can talk about companies Do Unit 55 first

A Setting up a business 🞧

Setting up a business is a risk. Twenty per cent of new businesses fail within twelve months; fifty per cent go out of business in three years. It may be because of poor quality services or goods, or one of these common mistakes:

- · inadequate market research
- · poor control over suppliers and customers
- · being over-ambitious and over-optimistic
- · poor management of stock and assets
- · inadequate knowledge of rivals
- · employing the wrong people

spotlight

As prefixes, over- usually means too much and under- means too little.

He overcharged us. (He made us pay too much.) Companies often overestimate sales figures. (Companies think that sales figures will be larger than they are.) opp underestimate. With adjectives, they may be followed by a hyphen, e.g. over-ambitious.

Glossary

set up a business start a business.

risk the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. risky ADJ.

fail (about a business) be unable to continue. syn go out of business.

quality the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.

goods (PL) things that are made to be sold.

inadequate not sufficient; not good enough. OPP adequate.

market research the study of what people want to buy and why.

supplier a company that provides sth for another company. **supply** v.

stock everything a company has for sale at any particular time.

asset a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).

rival a person or company that competes with another. syn competitor.

employ sb give sb a job (an employer is sb who does this; an employee is sb who works for an employer). syn take sb on INF.

	Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.
	competitor business employee as set mark etrival goods suppliers to ckquality

		L. Lattoria State Conduct tiple a heat good S
2	Complete the sentences. The m	eaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.
	► This business is risky.	This business is a risk

1 When did she start the business?2 Why did the business fail?3 We are the main company that supplies then

3 We are the main company that supplies them.

4 Their products aren't very good.5 Do you still employ him?

6 When did you employ her?

١	the same as in the sentences on the left.
	This business is a risk
	When did she set
	Why did they go out?
	We are their main
	Their products are of poor
	Are you still his?
	When did you take?

What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers 🗸

► The company doesn't have effective controls over its customers or its <u>suppliers</u>

2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its

3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its

4 The company _____ the wrong people.

5 The company is over-_____, and it over-_____ what it can achieve.

B Growth Commend lutezessura a editoreb rise

The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company gains a share of the market
- turnover increases the company breaks even
- · the brand develops a reputation
- the company needs more capital and may sell shares to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being taken over

		OR PERSON.		
Section 2.	3 FP99	PP SHIP	 irket	
spo	33351	A.A.SUGE	$IIK \Theta I$	

The market is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large market for these computers*.

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. the European market, the teenage market.

The market leader is the company with the biggest share of a market.

是是自己的问题。 1000年第二日 1000年 1000	
Glossary	
growth	the process of increasing in size or number. grow v.
struggle	a period of action to achieve sth difficult. syn effort . struggle v.
survive	continue to exist in a difficult situation. survival N.
gain sth	obtain sth. opp lose sth.
share	a part of sth that has been divided.
break even •	not make a profit or a loss.
brand	the name under which one or more products are sold, e.g. 'Nike'.
reputation	the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).
shares • Isali yazayarea asaninasan yazar za	(USU PL) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).
take over a company .	take control of another

- Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.
 - ▶ Will they continue to grow?
 - 1 Will they take it over?
 - 2 People say the company is very good.
 - 3 They won't make a profit or a loss.
 - 4 It's the biggest company in the market.
 - 5 Are you worried they may not survive?
 - 6 They've survived, but it's been difficult.
- Will there be continued <u>growth</u>?
 Will there be a _____?

company. takeover N.

- The company has a very good _____
- They will _____
- It's the market _____.
- Are you worried about their _____
- They've survived, but it's been a

- Complete the sentences.
 - ▶ It's been a struggle, but I think the business will <u>survive</u>.
 - 1 The company now has a 10 per cent _____ of the market.
 - 2 I bought 1,000 _____ in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
 - 3 People go on buying the same ______ of breakfast cereal because it's familiar.
 - 4 There has been considerable _____ in the soft drinks _____ : up 25 per cent in two years.
 - 5 I think the company may be _____ over by the end of the year.
 - 6 It's been a good year: we've _____ another 5 per cent of the market.



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

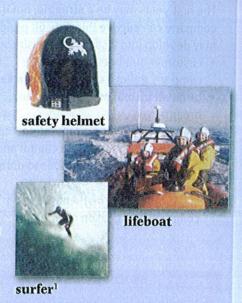
57 I can describe a successful business 63

GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and manufacturer of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a surfer', I could see the potential for a light helmet that gave protection and retained heat.' He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then did some research and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be adapted for their use, and for that he needed investment: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is crucial if you're developing an innovative product. In our case the process took three years.'

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful. Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the product.

'Partnerships with suppliers have also been a **key factor** in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of rivals.'



Glossary			THE SE		
manufacturer		a person or company that makes things using machines. manufacture v. syns producer, produce v.	investment	177	the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. invest in sth v.
found sth		start an organization (the person is the founder).	crucial innovative		very important. introducing new ideas. innovate v
diversify	•	introduce a wider range of products.	case		innovation N. situation.
exploit sth	0	make the best possible use of sth. exploitation N.	contract		a written legal agreement (a person signs a contract).
a gap in the market		an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been	feedback	•	information and comments from people who have used sth.
potential		produced by other companies. the ability to develop into sth or	partnership		a relationship between two people or organizations.
		sth better in the future.	key	0	very important.
retain sth		keep or continue to have sth. retention N.	factor		one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.
do research		do a careful study of sth to find out more information.	keep ahead (of sb)		stay in front of sb.

spotlight Verbs of change

To alter sth means to change sth, but not completely.

We've had to alter our plans.

To adapt sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.

We've adapted the product for the Asian market.

To refine sth means to change sth a little to make it better.

They have refined the products over several years.

U	A	What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
	1	
	1	When was it founded?
	2	Why did Jeff need to diversify?
	3	What qualities did the helmet have to have?
		a) it had to be light b)
	4	c) How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users?
	4	
	5	How did he get the money for extra staff?
	6	what does ne say about the relationship with a bank?
	7	What information has he used to refine the products?
	8	What was a key factor in his success?
2	Re	earrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.
		ROTACE factor one of the things that influences a situation
	1	TOCCARNT a written legal agreement
	2	NATERI keep or continue to have something
	3	RUCCLIA very important
	4	EFKABEDC comments from people who use something
	5	VINONTEA introduce new ideas
	6	REDYFIVIS introduce a wider range of products
	7	PERITNSARPH a relationship between two organizations
	8	LOPENITAT the ability to develop into something
	Ö	the ability to develop into something
(3)	Ci	rcle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.
	10	We have to keep ahead of/retain our competitors.
	1	His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
	1	They are the spain producers/manufacturers
	2	They are the main producers/manufacturers. It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
	3	It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
	4	If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
	5	It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
	6	She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
	7	They don't have enough money; they need more research/investment.
	8	We may have to alter/adapt the product.
6	-	
U	Co	omplete the sentences.
		We may have to <u>after</u> a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
	1	They were lucky because they saw a in the market.
	2	Some people take out a loan. In my I borrowed money from my parents.
	3	They are one of the leading of washing machines in this country.
	4	If we want to find out, we'll have to do more
	5	How much money did she in the company?
	6	Innovation helps a company to keep of its competitors.
	7	They can't change their minds now: they've signed the
	8	We must our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
	9	Profit was not a big in my decision to invest in the company.
	10	It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to
6		Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

58 I can discuss marketing

A The basis of marketing 🕟



Marketing is the activity of presenting, advertising, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's strengths and weaknesses, and be aware of possible opportunities and threats. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

Strengths, e.g. specialist skills in the company

Weaknesses, e.g. limited financial resources

Opportunities, e.g. increased demand for a product from a particular market sector

Threats, e.g. a downturn in the economy, reducing overall demand

spotlight skill

Skill (u) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice. skilful ADJ. You often need a particular skill (c) for a job. skilled ADJ. OPP unskilled.

He has the right management skills. She's a skilful negotiator. We had a number of highly skilled workers.

Glossary

 $\begin{array}{l} \textbf{advertising the activity of telling people about a} \\ \textbf{product to try to make them buy it. } \textbf{advertise v.} \end{array}$

strength a good quality or feature. OPP weakness. opportunity a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.

threat a possible danger or problem.

limited small in number or amount. opp unlimited.

resources (USU PL) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.

demand (for sth) the need for sth from a particular group of people.

sector a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.

downturn a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. orr upturn.

reduce sth make sth less or smaller. OPP increase sth. reduction N.

0	G	ood news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.
		Limited demand B
	1	A number of opportunities 4 Unlimited financial resources
	2	They have a lot of skilled workers 5 A reduction in demand
	3	There are a number of threats 6 An upturn in the economy
2		eplace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must ay the same.
		We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited
	1	There is a lot of competition in this part of the market.
	2	There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter.
	3	They have a number of good qualities.
	4	There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger.
	5	Do we have the money and skills to make this product?
3	Co	omplete the sentences.
		New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.
	1	If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right
	2	More people will know about the product if we it on TV.
	3	Is there still a growing for mobile phones?
	4	If there is more competition, we may have to the price.
	5	First we must analyse our strengths and

B Developing a marketing strategy 🕟

Useful marketing tips

- Don't assume you know what your customers want
- Target the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit
- Don't ignore the competition, and be ready to respond to it
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to gather reliable data to make accurate market forecasts
- You need to have realistic objectives
- Don't forget to evaluate your strategy; and if something isn't working, change it.

Glossary

strategy a plan you make in order to achieve sth.

tip • a piece of advice.

assume sth accept or believe sth is true without proof assumption N.

• decide on the people you want to sell to (your target market).

ignore sb/sth • pay no attention to sb/sth.

respond to sb/sth • say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth.
response N.

gather sth • bring many things together, e.g.

information or data.

data
• facts or information.

forecast • a statement saying what will happen in the

future. forecast v.

realistic • sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.

objective

sth you are trying to achieve. syn goal/aim.
evaluate sth

study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

- respond d a pay no attention to something
- 1 assume ____ b choose somebody you want to sell to
- 2 evaluate ____ c bring many things together
- 3 ignore ____ d say or do something as an answer ✓
- 4 gather ____ e study the facts and then form an opinion
- 5 target ____ f accept or believe something without proof

6 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
- 1 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they've got a
- 2 He doesn't have an aim. ~ No, he needs an ____
- 3 Has he replied to you? ~ No, there's been no
- 4 Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they've gathered all the
- 5 Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it's quite _____
- 6 Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful ____

6 Complete the sentences.

- ► We contacted them, but so far they haven't responded
- 1 They got into trouble because they _____ all their competitors.
- 2 Have they given you a sales ______ for next year?
- 3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we _____ they are
- 4 The company has decided to _____ the youth market next year.
- 5 We've _____ all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

Review: Business

Unit 55

1 Find eleven more 'money' words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

C	P	0	0	S	T	В	C
Α	R	L	Р	Т	Ε	Α	Α
S	0	0	G	U	S	N	Р
Н	F	Α	T	R	Н	K	1
F	1	N	Α	N	C	Е	Т
L	Т	Y	L	0	S	S	Α
0	Т	Α	X	٧	D	1	L
W	R	Ε	٧	Е	N	U	E
1	N	Т	Е	R	Ε	S	T

2	Replace the	underlined	words with	a word or	phrase that	has the same	meaning.
---	-------------	------------	------------	-----------	-------------	--------------	----------

Sales went down quite a lot.	Sales .	fell significantly

- 1 The price went up a little. The price
- 2 The price went down a lot. The price ______.
- 3 Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price _____
- 4 Sales went down from \$3 m to \$2 m. Sales \$1 m.
- 5 Sales went up and down. Sales _____.
- 6 Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a

Unit 56

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write 6	or or	В.
--	-------	----

- ► They went out of business. B They went out of business.

 They're gaining a share of the market.

 They're gaining a share of the market.

 They're delige people on
- 2 They're struggling. ____
- 3 They're taking a lot of risks. ____
- 4 They have valuable assets. ____

 - 6 They're taking people on. ____
 - 6 They're taking people on. _____
 7 Their shares are going up. ____

2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

- Set up the business by the end of the year.
- 1 In our first year we aim to break _____.
- 2 In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued _____ in our profit.
- 3 We don't want to take too many _____.
- 4 We have to watch our _____ very closely.
- 5 We want our products to be of the highest _____
- 6 Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the _____.
- 7 We want the company to develop a good ______.
- 8 Within five years we would like to sell ______ to the public.

Unit 57

1	M	atch verbs 1–8 with definitions a-	-i.			
	•	refine _i	a		ing but not completely	
	1	retain	b	put money into		
	2	manufacture	C	make the best p	oossible use of something	9
	3	innovate	d	start a business		
	4	invest	е	keep or continu	e to have something	
	5	alter	f		er range of products	
	6	found	g	introduce new	deas	
	7	exploit	h	make things usi		
	8	diversify	i	change someth	ing a little to make it bet	ter 🗸
2	Re	place the underlined words with	a single w	ord that has t	ne same meaning.	
		You have to try to keep in front of ot	hers. ahea	d		
	1	The introduction of new ideas was cr	ucial			
	2	It was a very important decision.				
	3	We did a careful study to find the bes				
	4	My partners were prepared to put me			and the state of t	
	5	They signed a written legal agreemen	<u>nt. </u>			
	6	I knew the product had the possibility	y to become	better.	alls social egra exelf	
	7	We try to get information and comm	ents on our	products	NORTH ALL DESCRIPTION	
	8	They wanted to introduce a wider ran	nge of produ	icts	the section is about the section of	
Jr		58 and eight more pairs of words in the	ne box tha	t have a simila	ngoisiallah odi edelah r meaning.	
1	Fir	small / danger advice ability	plan aim	reply data	need threat	
1	Fir	small ✓ danger advice ability information response limited ✓	plan aim strategy	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand	
1	Fir	small ✓ danger advice ability information response limited ✓	plan aim strategy	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand	
1	Fir	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited	plan aim strategy	reply data tip objective	need threat	
1	•	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited	plan aim strategy //	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand/	
2	•	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited	plan aim strategy / /	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand/	
2	Co	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited / complete the words in each senten Developing a marketing strategy	plan aim strategy / / /	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand/	
2	Co	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited / mplete the words in each senten Developing a marketing strategy Analyse the company's s	plan aim strategy/	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand/	
2	Coo	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited	plan aim strategy///	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand/	
2	Co	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited /	plan aim strategy///	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand	
2	Co	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited	plan aim strategy / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	reply data tip objective the threats.	need threat skill demand	
2	Coo 1 2 3 4 5	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited /	plan aim strategy / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	reply data tip objective	need threat skill demand	
2	Coo 1 2 3 4 5 6	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited /	plan aim strategy / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	reply data tip objective the threats. 	need threat skill demand	
2	Coo 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited / l	plan aim strategy // // ice. and w ompany and market d syour custor	reply data tip objective the threats. ners want.	need threat skill demand	
2	Coo 1 2 3 4 5 6	small / danger advice ability information response limited / small / limited /	plan aim strategy // // ice. and w ompany and market d syour custor	reply data tip objective the threats. ners want.	need threat skill demand	

59 I can express probability 6

Next week in the life of pessimistic Pamela, aged 15 Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll definitely see Max (the boy I fancy). Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's bound to speak to him first, and she's prettier than me, so Max is more likely to fancy her. I've got nothing to wear - I doubt if he'll even Tuesday: notice me. Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I expect he'll think I'm stupid. Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday -Max might go there instead. Friday: There's a good chance it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster.

Glossary

pessimistic always believing bad things will happen, opp optimistic.

definitely certainly; for sure.

fancy sb INF be attracted to sb.

bound to do sth If sb is bound to do sth, they will almost certainly do it.

likely to do sth If sb is likely to do sth, they will probably do it. orr unlikely to do sth.

doubt (if/that ...) If you doubt if or that sth will happen, you think it probably won't happen.

expect sth think or believe sth will happen.

might used to say that sth is possible. syn may.

a chance a possibility (a good chance is a more than 50 per cent possibility).

disaster INF If sth is a disaster, it is terrible.

spot an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

Complete the definitions.

not going.

Saturday:

▶ If something is a disaster, it is <u>terrible</u>

Woke up with a spot on my face - I'm definitely

1 If something is bound to happen, it will _____ certainly happen.

- 2 If something is likely to take place, it will ______ take place.
- 3 If something might happen, you can also say that it _____ happen.
- 4 If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is ______ that it will happen.
- 5 If you expect something to happen, it means you ______ it will happen.
- 6 If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is _____ not going to happen.
- 7 If you doubt that something will happen, it means you _____ think it is going to happen.
- 8 If you are pessimistic, you always believe that _____ things will happen.
- A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb think.

	and the second second	FA331
	She'll definitely pass.	100% yes
1	CONTRACTOR AND	95% yes
2		75% yes
3		50% yes
4		25% yes
5	plant of the comment	100% no

3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.

60 I can explain similarities and differences 60

Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost identical except that Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are similar except for their colour. The similarity between Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not alike. Compared with Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's completely different from the other two, apart from the fact that he's greedy - all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, the main difference is that Boss is rather quiet in comparison with Jake.



Glossary

identical without a single difference. syn exactly the same. except not including sb/sth (except that + clause or except for + noun).

similar (to sb/sth) like sb/sth but not the same. similarity N (a similarity between things).

alike very similar (don't use alike before a noun).

completely different different in every way. apart from sb/sth SYN except for sb/sth.

greedy wanting to take more than you need (usually food).

the main difference the most important difference.

spotlight compare v, comparison N

When you compare people or things. you say how they are different. If you compare dogs and/with cats,

dogs are usually more greedy.

Compared with/to dogs, cats are very

In comparison with dogs, cats are more independent.

- Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.
 - ▶ Barley is <u>like</u> my other dog. <u>similar to</u>
 - 1 She's very tall compared with Elena.
 - 2 I liked all of them except for the blue one.
 - 3 The two boys aren't very similar.
 - 4 The most important difference is colour.
 - 5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary.
 - 6 The twins are exactly the same.
- Complete the sentences.
 - If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.
 - 1 She is very _____ to her mother; they both laugh all the time.
 - 2 with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.
 - 3 There is a ______ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.
 - 4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, ______ that this one's a bit softer.
 - 5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a ______dog.
 - 6 Some people say my brother and I are ______, but I think we're _____ different.
 - 7 I didn't like the film, _____ from the ending, which was great.
 - 8 The main ______ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.
- B ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.

61 I can make arrangements to meet 63

- A Mike, we need to talk about the project. Can we get together next week?
- B Yes, sure.
- A Can you make it on Monday morning, say?
- B No, I'm not available then.
 How about Tuesday afternoon?
- A I'd like to, but I'm afraid I'm tied up then.

Can we make it Friday morning instead?

- B I'm supposed to see Jo then, but I think I can postpone that. I'll confirm it with you tonight.
- A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.

- = meet
- = Are you able to come?
- = for instance / for example
- = free to see you
- = What about . . .?
- = I'm sorry, but . . .
- = busy
- = as an alternative
- = I'm meant to
- = put that off
- = tell you definitely / for sure



Glossary

How about ...? is ... suitable? syn What about ...? instead (of sth) in the place of sth (e.g. We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.). syn as an alternative. postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. syn put sth off.

- Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.
 - ► I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely
 - 1 I'm supposed to meet him at six.
 - 2 He's tied up tomorrow.
 - 3 How about Friday?
 - 4 He's not available now.
 - 5 I'll potpone it.
 - 6 Can you come, say, at five?
 - 7 Can you make it tomorrow?
 - 8 We must get together soon.
 - 9 I'm sorry but I'm busy.

spotlight

be supposed to, be meant to + verb

If you are supposed to, or are meant to do something, another person thinks you will do it because you have agreed to do it.

I'm supposed to meet David later, but I don't really want to go.

She's meant to finish that job today. ~ She's so slow: I don't think she will.

- There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
 - ▶ She supposed to be here at 3.00. She's supposed to be here at 3.00.
 - 1 Shall we make together for a meeting?
 - 2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow.
 - 3 I could put the meeting out until Friday.
 - 4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then.
 - 5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying?
 - B No, what about the station in place? ____
 - 6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday. _
- 3

Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes 66

MISCHA BARON: the food king!	Meaning Manager Manage		
I'm mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.	be mad about sth/sb inf like sth/sb very much. syn be crazy about sth/sb inf.		
I adore cooking, though I'm not very. Keen on washing up afterwards.	adore (doing) sth INF love (doing) sth. be keen on (doing) sth INF (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.		
I'm very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.	be fond of (doing) sth like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.		
I don't like takeaway food at all.	not at all not in any way. (If you don't like sth at all, you dislike it very much.)		
As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I've got to like it now.	loathe (doing) sth dislike (doing) sth very much (also loathe sb). get to like sth/sb start to like sth/sb.		
There are only a couple of things I can't stand: one is snails. The other thing I absolutely detest is yoghurt. I'd rather die than eat yoghurt.	can't stand (doing) sth inf strongly dislike (doing) sth. syn can't bear (doing) sth. detest (doing) sth, hate (doing) sth (also detest sb). syn loathe sth/sb. would rather than would prefer.		

spotlight Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an -ing form.

Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

can't stand ✓ detest mad about fond of adore loathe keen on crazy about can't bear not like at all

like very much	like	dislike very much
		can't stand
		. 6 (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (A) (
		26 VSm 1 / V193263

2		orrect the mistakes in the sentence b		ABOUT YOU
		I'm not keen for I'm not keen on	economic males in a second	
		I fond of		(e <u>teverale tante sono et acetar</u>
		I don't stand		madical strength and state
		I loathe to cook		
	4	I'm mad in	_40X088	
	5	I can't bearing		
	6	I'm detest		
	7	I adore eat	Lityle casy mill	Comment of the second s
		I've crazy about		
		Recently, I've got for like		
	10	I'm rather eat than		

ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.

63 I can give my opinion

A Asking for and giving opinions

- A Apparently, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. What do you think about that?
- B **Personally, I think** it's a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
- A Maybe, but it seems to me we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven't we got those people? It's the government's fault.
- B You think the government is to blame for everything. But don't you reckon it's a good idea, in principle, for more young people to have a better education?
- A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point is**, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

Glossary

apparently based on what you have heard or read.

What do you think about...? is used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (also How do you feel about...? We usually use think of when asking about a person or thing, e.g. What do you think of his new book?)

fault responsibility for a mistake.

be to blame for sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. He's to blame for the accident. = The accident is his fault.)

reckon (that) sth INF think or have an opinion about sth.

in principle in general, but perhaps not in all the details.

syn in theory.

issue a problem or subject for discussion.

the point is the most important part of what I'm saying is.

Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ issue/reckon/it's/important/I/an I reckon it's an important issue.
- 1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?
- 2 1/it's / think / good / personally / a / idea

spotlight	Giving o	pinions
ME HERWINSON AND SHARE	CITALITY O	DITTIONS

I think (that)..., Personally I think (that)..., and It seems to me..., are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear In my opinion... FML, As far as I'm concerned..., and If you ask me....

3	agree / in / it / principle / I / with
4	choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me
5	it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was

2	Rewrite the opinions usi	ng the words on t	he right.	The meaning	must stay the same
---	--------------------------	-------------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------

	I think it'll be difficult.	EASY	I don't think it il be easy.
1	I think we should do something.	SEEMS	-
2	What do you think about that?	FEEL	to be
3	I think we should help them.	OPINION	bnsty tine
4	It's my fault.	BLAME	all real cooks
5	I think it'll be a problem.	RECKON	10.11014

Complete the sentences.

	Personally , I thought the film was awful.
1	, the government made the mistake, so it's their
2	As far as I'm, the most important thing is to find a new manager.
3	I think climate change is one of the most important of the 21st century.
	We both think it's important, but the is, what are we going to do about it
5	In, I quite like his suggestion, but I don't know if it'll work.

B For or against? 🕟

The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

FOR

- Personally, I think it's very sensible.
 Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm in favour of it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would support it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are mature enough to drive a car.

AGAINST

- I'm not in favour of this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm against it, too. I believe that if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm opposed to it. It'll make teenagers more dependent on their parents.

Glossary

consider sth think about sth carefully before making a decision.

proposal a plan that is formally suggested. propose v.

sensible practical and intelligent. opp silly. in favour of sth in agreement with sth. opp against sth.

reduce sth make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. OPP increase sth.

support sth agree with sth and sometimes offer help. support N.

mature acting in a sensible, adult way.
believe that have the opinion that.
opposed to sth believing that sth is wrong.
dependent on sb/sth needing sb/sth to help you.

(4) F	Replace the un	derlined word	s with a single	word that has	the same	meaning.
--------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------	----------	----------

		against
	She is not in favour of it.	against
1	I think it's a <u>practical and intelligent</u> idea.	31011 - 1001E
2	They're going to think carefully about the new plan.	general years at both
3	We can make it less.	noole it and a
4	I agree with them and think they're right. In any analysis	them.
5	Do you have the opinion that he's innocent?	
6	What do you think of the plan that was formally suggested	Company of the Compan

6 Complete the dialogues.

	Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to support the plan.
1	Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's itit.
2	Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'll it.
3	Do they like the idea? ~ No, they'reto it.
4	Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I that she's right.
5	Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's very
6	Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in of it.
7	Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely on us.
8	Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a very young man.

64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very strict. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher insisted that we even wore it to church on Sundays. We weren't allowed to talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody obeyed that rule. Smoking was banned everywhere. The teachers made us work very hard, and we were forced to stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours' homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the

teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad behaviour. How silly! I was very disobedient, and always being punished.



Glossary

strict expecting people to do what you say.
insist that say strongly that sth must be done.
allow sb to do sth (often passive) tell sb that they can do sth.

obey sb/sth do what sb/sth tells you to do. opp disobey.

rule an official statement which says what you must or must not do.

ban sth (often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed.

make sb do sth tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do. syn force sb to do sth. behaviour the way you do and say things. behave v. disobedient A disobedient child doesn't obey rules. opp obedient.

punish sb make sb suffer for sth they have done wrong, punishment N.

- Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.
 - ▶ Will the government ban to fast food?
 - 1 Did she force to you to eat it?
 - 2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
 - 3 I wasn't be allowed to eat anything.
- 4 Did he always obey with the rules?
- 5 She punished to me because I was late.
- 6 She insisted on that she didn't do it.
- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

	Andrew St. Control of the Control of		
	She's very bad; she	always <u>disobeys</u> the rules.	OBEY
1	The children	very well yesterday.	BEHAVIOU
2	You aren't	to walk on the grass.	ALLOW
3	My dog is very	; he never comes when I call him.	DISOBEY
4	They have	alcohol at football matches.	BAN
5	What was her	for breaking the rules?	PUNISH
6	His w	as terrible yesterday.	BEHAVE

Complete the questions with a suitable word.

		ABOUT YOU
W	then you were at school at the age of 11, when the second of the second	
	were girls allowed to wear make-up?	
1	were you an ochild?	Acres de la companya del companya de la companya del companya de la companya de l
2	what happened if you d the rules?	
3	were the rules very s?	
4	what did teachers fyou to do that you didn't like?	
5	did children b better or worse than nowadays?	PRODUCTION OF THE PROPERTY OF

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Can you choose?

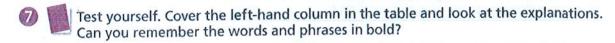
I'm a bus driver. In my job	Pressavas datara fi A
wearing a uniform is {compulsory obligatory FML }. I have no choice/option; I have to wear one.	= you must do it because of a rule or a law
smoking {is forbidden when I'm working. I'm not allowed to smoke at work.	= you mustn't do it; it's against a rule or against the law.
working at night is { optional not compulsory }. If I want to work at night, { it's my choice it's up to me INF }. I have the option of working on Sunday twice a month.	= you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it.
My boss lets me go home early on Fridays.	= you are allowed to go home early.

Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. __S
- 1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you. ____
- 2 She has no choice. | It's optional.
- 3 It's his choice. | It's up to him. ____
- 4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden? ____
- 5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. ____
- 7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. 2005 1997 976 1991 | Sylvinos
- 8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory.

6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

- ▶ Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not <u>compulsory</u>.
- 1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they _______ you do what you want.
- 2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no
- 3 Are you _____ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's ____
- 4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's ______ to him.
- 5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't it's ______, but I probably
- 6 Is today's meeting optional or ______? ~ Well, it's your _____, but I think you should go.
- 7 There's a café at work; you're not ______ to eat your own food there.
- 8 I have the ______ of working in different departments if I want to move around.



65 I can discuss hopes and plans

A Making plans

- A Ramiro says you're making plans for your grandmother's 100th birthday in July.
- B Yes, we've still got a few things to **sort out**.
- A So you're going to have a big party, are you?
- B Yes, we're expecting about a hundred people, actually.
- A Wow! And where do you intend to have it?
- B On a river boat, and I'm hoping to get a jazz band too.
- A That sounds great! I hope it all goes smoothly.
- B Yeah, I don't want anything to go wrong because she's really looking forward to it.

Glossary

- make plans (for sth) prepare for sth you want to do in the future. syn plan sth.
- sort sth out organize sth.
- be going to do sth

 plan to do sth in the future.
- think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.
- intend to do sth /
 doing sth
 hope to do sth

 plan to do sth. intention N. OPP have
 no intention of doing sth.
 want to do sth and think that it is
- possible.

 happen without difficulties or delays.
- go smoothly
 happen without difficulties or delays.
 If sth goes wrong, there is a problem and the plan might fail.
- look forward to
 (doing) sth

 feel happy about sth that is going to happen.

spotlight actually

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. Syn in fact. Be careful: actually does not mean 'at the moment'.

He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, actually.

- Same or different? Write S or D.
 - ► She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. D
 - 1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? ____
 - 2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. ____
 - 3 I live in Poland at the moment. [I live in Poland, actually. ____
 - 4 I'm hoping to get the job. I'm going to get the job.
 - 5 I don't intend to buy the car. I I've no intention of buying the car.
 - 6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? ____
- Complete the email.

We're▶ going	to take six months off work and	go travelling this winter. At the moment	t
we're (1) m	plans and trying to decide exact	tly where to go. We (2) i to	
spend most of the	time travelling round Australia and New	ew Zealand as we both have family there.	. I'm
(3) h	to be able to get hotel work there, whi	nich will cover the cost of our	
accommodation. I	'm not (4) eanything very	y smart, but at the same time, I've no	
(5) i	of sleeping in a tent for the whole time.	e. At the moment we're trying to sell our	
car to help pay for	the adventure: I just hope nothing goe	es (6) w with the sale. In	
(7) f	, if everything goes (8) s, we'	e'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day,	
	lous; I'm really looking (9) f		

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?

Are you going to move house?

	Responses	Meaning
×	Definitely. Definitely not.	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen. = No, I'm sure it won't happen.
×	I think so. I doubt it. / I don't think so.	= I think it will probably happen. = I think it probably won't happen.
×	I hope so.	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will. = I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
×	I'm afraid so. I'm afraid not.	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it. = I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
V	l assume so.	= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.
V	I expect so. I imagine so. I suppose so. I guess so.	= I think it will happen.

4 Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

	I'm assume so.	I assume so.	4	I guess it.	AND THE PARTY OF T
1	I doubt so.	Whole of		I afraid so.	Contract to the second
2	I'm not afraid.		6	I don't hope.	
3	I don't think.		7	Definitely no.	

Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

- Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so 1 Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I i______. It's their fortieth wedding anniversary. 2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't t______. Mina always seems to do the cooking. 3 Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I h______. I really don't like the guy she's going out with. likes him. 6 Do you think they'll win? ~ I d______. They're playing very badly this season.
- Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?

66 I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain 💫

- Make sure you know how you want the situation to be resolved after you complain.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, guarantees, etc.
- Expressing dissatisfaction in person can be the most effective.
- Always keep calm when you complain.
 There is no point in losing your temper.
- · Back up your claim in writing.
- Consider getting an expert's opinion to back up your claim.

spotlight point

Point can mean 'reason' or 'purpose', and is used in several expressions:

What's the point of doing that? (What's the reason for doing that?)

There's no point in doing that. (There's no reason to do that.)

Match 1-6 with a-g.

	make c	a	in person
1	a written	b	calm
2	lose	C	a claim 🗸
3	make	d	guarantee
4	keep	e	the situation
5	speak to someone	f	your temper
6	resolve	q	sure

Glossary

make sure resolve sth FML

· be certain.

find an answer to a problem.
 syn settle sth.

complain (about sth) . say you are not satisfied

say you are not satisfied with sth. make a complaint (about sth) N.

guarantee

 a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.

dissatisfaction

when sth is not as good as you expected it to be, opp satisfaction, dissatisfied ADJ.

in person keep calm

- speaking to sb face to face.
- stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry.

lose your temper

 be unable to control your anger. orr keep your temper.

back sth up • s

support sth; say or show that sth is true.

claim

a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. make a claim v.

in writing

consider doing sth

• in a letter, email, etc.

 think about doing sth. consideration N.

expert

 a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject.

Complete the sentences.

	Make sure you keep your receipt.
1	We were very with the slow service, and in the end we about it.
2	You often get a two-year with a new washing machine.
3	There's no in complaining without a good reason.
4	It helps to have someone to you up when you make a complaint.
5	If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in
6	I tried to calm but I'm afraid I lost my
7	You sometimes need to find an who really knows the subject.



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

B Having a moan

A I'm fed up with the painting course this term.

- B I'm not happy with it either. The room they've given us is dreadful - it's too small.
 - A Actually, I'm not so bothered about the room. It's the man who joined the course last month - he really gets on my nerves. He's always moaning.
- B Yes, he's spoilt it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.
 - A Oh what a nuisance! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might mention it to the teacher.

Glossary

join sth

fed up with sth happy with sth dreadful

· bored or unhappy with sth.

· feeling that sth is good or right. very bad. syns terrible,

atrocious, appalling.

· become a member of a group such as a class or club.

get on sb's nerves • INF irritate sb or make sb angry.

· INF keep saying what is wrong

or bad about sth. moan N.

spoil sth

· change sth good into sth bad PT, PP spoilt/spoiled or unpleasant. syn ruin sth.

· a person, thing, or situation nuisance that annoys you.

mention sth

 talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

spotlight bother

The verb bother is used in several expressions:

I'm not bothered about what I wear. INF = I don't care about what I wear. (I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.) Don't bother to buy the milk. = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning...

ruin moan dreadful fed up ▶ join atrocious mention spoil appalling nuisance

- Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.
 - ▶ What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely <u>atrocious</u>
 - 1 What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm _____ up with this essay.
 - 2 Oh Brian, I'm sorry to ______you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
 - 3 We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a _____
 - 4 There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really ____
 - 5 Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't _____. Leave it open.
 - 6 I've decided to ______ a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
 - Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not ______. Let's stay here.
 - 8 Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I _______ it to the director.
- 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment? _
 - 2 Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves?
 - 3 Do you moan about anything in particular?
 - 4 Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful?
 - 5 Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment? ____
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

67 I can understand warnings 6



Glossary

mind (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.

danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.

beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.

warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. warn sb (of/about sth) v.

cross (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.

in case of sth if sth happens.

caution (used in notices) be careful.

swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.

seek sth FML try to find sth or ask sb for sth. assistance FML help or support.

premises (PL) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

0	Write the	words	in c	orrect	sentences.
---	-----------	-------	------	--------	------------

- ▶ mind/is/dish/your/that/hot/fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.
- 1 assistance / any / need / do / you /? _
- 2 help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical _
- 3 beware / bites / the / of / it / dog _
- 4 is / when / don't / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier ___
- 5 building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately ____
- 6 police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency ____

Complete the sentences.

- Look out! There's a car coming!
 If someone the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.
 of falling rocks. In of emergency, call the police.
 the step when you leave the building.
 Watch I There's a big spider.
 The river was flooded, and a policeman us about the ahead.
- 8 There are usually guard dogs on the business _____ at night.

Review: Social English

Unit 59

1	Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sen	tences on
	the left.	

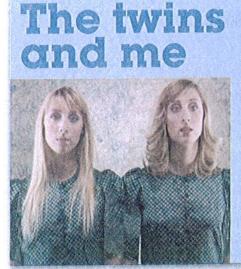
▶ 1	's r	oss	ible	he'l	go.

- 1 He's sure to go.
- 2 I don't think he'll fancy her.
- 3 I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.
- 4 He might go.
- 5 I expect it'll rain later.
- 6 He always thinks the worst will happen.

He might	90
He'll	no year
1 2011	he'll fancy her.
It's bound	<u>lis rizilli</u> s, la sili
There's a ch	nance
It's	to rain later.
Hole york	

Unit 60

1 Complete the text.



My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely <u>identical</u>, (1) for their hair: Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) ______. Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) ______ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) ______ different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) ______ from her sister. The (7) _____ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) _____ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

1 Complete the conversation. The and to anot be not sell given superior and sell

A Jun, we must _get ______ together next week. Can you (1) ______ it on Tuesday?

B I'm (2) ______ I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) ______ about Wednesday?

A No, I don't think I'm (4) ______ then. I'm supposed (5) ______ see Chris about the computer.

B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) ______ up. Could you possibly (7) ______ your computer meeting until the following week?

A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) ______ that with you tomorrow?

B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

Unit 62

1	Complete	the	sentences	with	suitable	words.
---	----------	-----	-----------	------	----------	--------

Things or people that I like: 1 I'm very on physical exercise.	ABOUT YOU
2 I'm of the people in my class.	milie to the sentences on the right, kee
3 I'mabout dancing.	100
4 I absolutely chocolate.	
Things or people that I don't like:	
5 I don't like shellfish at 6 I can't waiting in queues.	10
7 I'm not very on cheese.	The state of the s
8 I absolutely cold weather.	Helalways usins the worst will bappen an

2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

Unit 63

- 1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (/) them.
 - ▶ I support it ☐ | personally, I think ☑ | if you ask me ☑
 - 1 not in favour of | the issue | against |
 - 2 is to blame [] it seems to me [] is his fault [
 - 3 in my opinion ☐ | as far as I'm concerned ☐ | I'm considering ☐
 - 4 in favour ☐ I in principle ☐ I in theory ☐
 - 5 is opposed to ☐ | is against ☐ | is mature ☐
 - 6 | I believe | | | I reckon | | | I blame | |
- 2 Circle the correct word or phrase.
 - It seems/reckons to me that we need this.
 - 1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?
 - 2 It's not your blame/fault.
 - 3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.
- 4 What do you think about/of my new car?
- 5 I need to consider/reckon this issue.
- 6 Do you agree in favour/in principle?
- 7 Do you support/opposed to the idea?

Unit 64

- 1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.
 - Smoking isn't allowed. BAN Smoking is banned. 1 He doesn't do what I say. DISOBEY

 - 2 They make us work hard. FORCE
 - 3 You can't eat here. ALLOWED
 - 4 You have to wear a uniform. COMPULSORY
 - 5 She allowed us to sit down. LET ___
 - 6 The boss says we have to go. INSIST _____
 - 7 The way he acts in class is terrible. BEHAVIOUR
 - 8 He makes us suffer if we're late. PUNISH _____

Unit 65

1	Complete the dialogue.					
	A You must be busy ▶ making	plans for your we	edding.	en lageson, re		
	B Yes, I am, in (1) f	. I seem to do nothing e	else.			
	A Are you (2) e a lot of guests?					
	B Oh, yes, (3) d	it's going to be enormou	s. We've both got big	families.		
	A And is Barry (4) i	to come?	i erer streit Habitus abil			
	B Goodness, I really (5) h	not – he's the last	person I want at my	wedding. Anyway, I		
	have no (6) i of	inviting him.				
	A And how about Auntie June -					
	B No, I'm (7) a not	- she's not very well, (8)	a Her	operation didn't go as		
	(9) s as expected	d, so she won't be able to	make it. She's ok, the	ough.		
	A That's a relief. And what about	ut Grandpa – is he (10) g	to be the	ere?		
	B Well, I (11) gso	- it wouldn't be a weddir	ng without him, would	lit?		
Ur	nit 66					
1	Is the speaker happy or unha	ppy in the sentences?	Write H or U.			
	► The rain didn't spoil my holida	ay. H 5 Judio	didn't lose her temper.			
	1 I was really fed up with her.		ot a complaint about	the room		
	2 The weather's atrocious, isn't		7 The noise doesn't bother me.			
	3 We've resolved the problem		dog's a nuisance			
	4 Billy's moaning again	9 My d	ay's been ruined			
2	Rewrite the sentence using the stay the same. Don't get angry. TEMPER There's no reason to go out. You should speak to her face- I would ask someone who known that the same a member of the Waiting in queues really irritat I don't think the cost of the management	Don't lose your temper POINT There's Leto-face. PERSON You lows a lot about it for advigoing to live abroad? Contennis club. JOIN She tes me. NERVES Waitineal is important. BOTH	rice. EXPERT I CONSIDER Have e ng ER I	vig of bed sH S on and algorithms with a second sec		
Ur	nit 67					
		1				
1	Complete the warnings.	LOW DOOR.	2	3		
	WARNING		Watch			
	Do not Cross the railway	YOUR HEAD.	for thieves.	OF DOGS!		
	line when the barrier is down.		- AMERICAN STREET, STR	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN 1		
1		J 5	6	And the second of the second o		
IN	OF THEFT,	If swallowed,	Broken glass on th	e path		
	HONE THIS NUMBER.	seek medical	please be			
1000			ARM SECTION AND ASSESSMENT OF THE PERSON OF	AMERICAN STREET		
		immediately.				

68 I can use link words

A Reason, result, and addition 🕟

A link between A and B is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all link one idea (A) with another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before. syn so.

due to sth because of sth.

what's more INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. syn plus INF (and see spotlight).

as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. syns since, because.

consequently because of sth that happened before. syn therefore. (Both words are more formal than as a result or so.)

... and everything went wrong. I forgot to set the alarm, and as a result, I overslept and had to get a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed due to the snow. What's more, when the train arrived, it was absolutely freezing as the heating wasn't working. A bit later the ticket inspector came round, and I discovered I'd bought the wrong kind of ticket, so I had to pay again, plus I had to pay a fine, which was very annoying. And when I finally got off the train, I slipped on the ice and broke my ankle. Consequently I spent the rest of the day, not at the meeting, but in hospital having x-rays. Not my best day.

spotlight in addition, moreover, furthermore

These are more formal ways of adding more information or arguments.

The business was in trouble. In addition, his activities had attracted the attention of the police.

Teacher numbers have risen by 12%. Moreover/
Furthermore, extra money is being spent on books.

- Circle the correct word.
 - ► (A)/In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.
 - 1 It snowed heavily, and as a result/plus, we had to stay in for two days.
 - 2 It was an old armchair, and because/what's more, it smelled horrible.
 - 3 He had to give up his job consequently/due to stress.
 - 4 People are richer these days and therefore/since they spend a lot more.
 - 5 It was a long way to the station, so/plus I had a suitcase.
 - 6 Since/Furthermore he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
 - 7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. Therefore/Moreover, he was holding a knife.
 - 8 The town has a good transport system. Furthermore/As a result, it is very cheap.
- Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

reason	result	addition
As		
	Mark (Str.)	
		TWO IS NOT THE REAL PROPERTY.

- 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.
 - ▶ I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus the room was hot.
 - 1 In winter, schools sometimes have to ______ due to bad weather.
 - 2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; consequently, ______ fly that day.
 - 3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. Furthermore, the food ____
 - 4 As I _____ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
 - 5 He forgot his key and therefore he couldn't _____ the flat.
 - 6 Jeans are extremely practical; what's more ______ expensive

B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:	Notes with the second s
We got a ticket, { although even though though} it wasn't easy.	The clause with although , even though , and though can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. Although it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.
I went to work despite feeling very unwell. in spite of the bad weather. despite the fact that I had flu.	Despite and syn in spite of are followed by an -ing form or a noun.
Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:	mor norderl (that) it go provided you com
The car was old. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{Despite that,} \\ \textbf{In spite of that,} \end{array} \right\} I \textbf{ still bought it.}$	In despite that and in spite of that, the word that refers back to the fact that the car was old.
She didn't work hard. { However, Nevertheless, All the same, } she still passed	However and nevertheless are more formal; all the same is more informal.
He says he's rich. I don't believe him, {though. however.	At the end of a sentence, however is more formal than though.

spotlight still

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

She felt ill, but she still went to work.

He left an hour early, but he still missed the train.

Match 1–8 with a–i.

- He says nice things about you. _9__
 He got the job in spite of ____
 I saw the film last night. ___
 He went out despite the fact that ___
 We had a nice day even ___
 He says nice things about you. _9_
 he got to work on time in the morning.
 he wasn't feeling very well.
 although the main course was nice.
 though the weather wasn't very good.
 his lack of experience.
 the fact that the heating was on.
 He felt really cold despite ___
 However, you can't trust him. ✓
- 7 He went to bed very late. All the same, ___ h I'd rather have a car.
 8 The bike's useful. Nevertheless, ___ i I didn't think much of it, though.

6 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

We had quite a nice day there. All the same, I wouldn't go back again.
I could just see the house the fog.
Jun has very little money. In spite of he's really generous.
You'll find it hard to get work there. it's worth trying.
I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed, he's really generous.
There was more snow today, I think it's warmer this evening.
In of leaving two hours early, we missed the plane.
I didn't feel sleepy though it was very late.
the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.

C Other link words

Word or phase	Example	Meaning/usage
whereas	I enjoy tennis, whereas my father prefers rugby.	used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.
on the one hand on the other (hand)	On the one hand, it's lovely here in summer, but on the other, the winter is terrible.	used for showing opposite points of view.
otherwise syn or (else)	Put your cake on the table, otherwise the dog will eat it.	used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.
provided (that) SYN as long as	I'll go provided you come with me.	only if.
unless	I'll accept the job at the BBC unless they offer me a job at Sky.	used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does not happen or is not true.
in case	Take a map in case you need it.	because sth might happen.
so (that)	He got there early so that he could speak to her before the lesson.	used to talk about the purpose of an action.

spotlight purpose

A **purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve. What's the **purpose** of your trip? The **purpose** of the meeting is to discuss the figures.

- 6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.
 - ► He speaks German, whereas I don't. | I don't speak German, but he does. _______
 - 1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. __
 - 2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. ____
 - 3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay. ____
 - 4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now. ...
 - 5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. I always put sugar in unless it's sweet.
 - 6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter? ____
- Omplete the sentences with words from the box.

whereas on the one hand so that otherwise in case unless as long as

- ► She won't use a towel <u>unless</u> it's just been washed.
- 1 The children can go out ______ they don't cross the main road.
- 2 You should get there early ______ you get a good seat.
- flying can save time, but on the other, it's not good for the environment.
- 4 Teachers' salaries have gone up ______ nurses' salaries have fallen.
- 5 Take some chocolate with you _______you're hungry on the journey.
- 6 Plug it in, ______ it won't work.
- Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

69 I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places

Hidden away in this remote part of rural France is the village of La Toque. It's a curious, old-fashioned sort of place. There's only one hotel, so it's vital to book in advance, but don't expect anything grand. The accommodation and food are very simple, but the prices are reasonable and I was impressed with the overall quality. The local people are still a bit suspicious of tourists, but I found them very polite. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually deserted by 10 p.m.!

Glossary	
remote rural curious old-fashioned	 far away from where many people live. connected with the country, not the town. OPP urban. unusual or strange. typical of the past but not of the present. OPP modern.
vital	 necessary and important. syn essential.
grand	impressive and large or important.
simple	 including the things you need but no extra things. syn basic.
reasonable	 If prices are reasonable, they are not too high. syn fair opp unreasonable.
impressed with sth/sb	• feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
overall	• general; considering everything.
suspicious of sth/sb	• feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
polite	 behaving in a good or correct way. opp rude.
deserted	empty because everyone has left. opps busy, crowded.

1	Fir	nd seven more pairs of synonyms or oppos	sites in the box.	
		simple√ modern curious fair polite e rural basic√ urban rude deserted vi	essential busy old-fashioned Ital strange reasonable	
	•	simple / SYN basic / SYN	OPP	/ OPP
2	Is	the meaning the same or different? Write	S or D.	
	1 2 3	No one was there. It was deserted !!	4 It's essential. It isn't vital 5 It wasn't grand. It was quite to 6 I'm suspicious of him. I don't 7 It was fair. It was unreasonab	oasic trust him
3	Co ▶	omplete the words in the sentences. It gets very busy, so it's vital to arrive The others found him normal, but I thought he	early.	
	2 3 4 5 6	It's a long way from town, so it's quite a r	place. d to give his name. s are r n, comfortable, and very friendly.	100 140 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100

B Describing feelings

Adjectives	Example(s)	Meaning
terrifying/ terrified	It was a terrifying film. I was terrified watching that film.	very frightening. very frightened.
disappointed/ disappointing	I was disappointed with my results. My results were disappointing .	feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.
amazing/ amazed	Some of the dancers were amazing .	surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.
shocking/ shocked	It was shocking to see so many people with nowhere to live.	upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.
alarming/ alarmed	When the police arrived, it was a bit alarming.	frightening or causing worry.
disgusting/ disgusted	Last night's meal was disgusting .	very unpleasant.
amusing/ amused	We all thought the film was quite amusing.	funny in a gentle way.
embarrassed/ embarrassing	I was embarrassed when I got his name wrong.	feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.
astonishing/ astonished	It's astonishing how much she has changed in the last five years.	very surprising.
satisfying/ satisfied OPP dissatisfied	Cooking for others is very satisfying.	making you feel pleased or happy.

(5) Circle the correct answer.

- ► The beaches were really amazing/amazed
- 1 I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
- 2 He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
- 3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
- 4 It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
- 5 The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
- 6 José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

spotlight -ed/-ing endings

We use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe our feelings. We use adjectives that end with **-ing** to describe the person or thing that makes us have these feelings. We were **shocked** by his behaviour. His behaviour was **shocking**.

6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- ► Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified
- 1 Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was guite _____
- 2 You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit _____
- 3 He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely _____
- 4 Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was _____ with them.
- 5 Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely
- 6 Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely _____.
- 7 Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit ______
- 8 Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't _____ with it.



Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

C Describing qualities

People have mixed feelings about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

The rooms were adequate but I didn't like the artificial flowers. contemporary design - simple but effective.

The bed was a bit firm for my liking.



Most of the staff were temporary but they seemed very efficient.

I was able to take my dog. It's rare for a hotel to allow them.

I was glad we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit cramped.

They put champagne in our room, which was very unexpected.

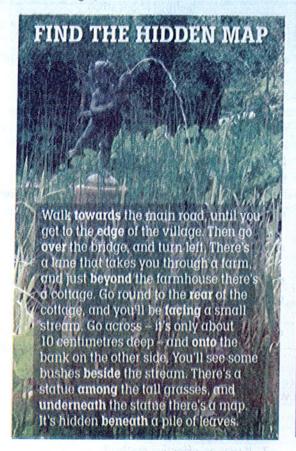
Glossary

- mixed feelings both positive (+) and negative (-) feelings about sth.
- · just good enough but nothing more. adequate OPP inadequate.
- · made by people and used instead of artificial
- sth natural, opps real, natural. contemporary • of the present time, syn modern.
- OPP old-fashioned.
- · successful and giving the result you effective
- want, opp ineffective. · quite hard. opp soft. firm
- · employed or continuing for only a temporary limited period of time. opp permanent.
- · working well, quickly, and without efficient mistakes, opp inefficient.
- · not done, seen, or happening very rare often. opp common.
- pleased; quite happy, syn pleased. glad · small, and not having enough space. cramped OPP spacious.
- If sth is unexpected, it surprises you unexpected because you didn't know it was going to happen. opp expected.
- Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.
 - ► I had <u>positive</u> feelings. <u>negative</u> 5 Is that real snow? ____
 - 1 The food was adequate.
 - 2 We had a firm mattress.
 - 3 The service was efficient.
 - 4 My room was cramped.

- 6 It's a rare disease. _ 7 It was an effective method.
- 8 The visit was expected.
- 9 It's a temporary arrangement.
- Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.
 - You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very <u>cramped</u>
 - 1 I have _____ feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
 - 2 It's a fantastic climate here. It's very ______ to have bad weather in the summer.
 - your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week. 3 I'm ___
 - 4 She wears very old-_____ clothes.
 - 5 My sister's having a baby. It was completely _____, but we're all very happy.
 - 6 This machine does the work of ten men; it's very _____.
 - 7 I think his work is ______, but it could be better. 8 A lot of people don't like _____ art because they don't understand it.
 - 9 Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite _____
 - 10 She's only a _____ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?

70 I can express place and time

A Place



Glossary

towards in the direction of (also toward).

edge the place where sth, e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.

beyond past a place and further away.

rear the back of sth, especially a car or a building.

opp front.

face sth look towards sth. opp have your back to sth.

onto moving to or on a particular place or position. beside next to. syn by.

among surrounded by things (also amongst).
underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered).
beneath FML under.

spotlight over

Over has different meanings:

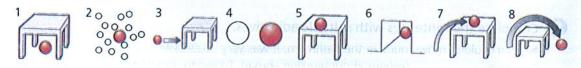
1 up and across to the other side of something. Go **over** the bridge.

2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker.

Sit over there.

3 **all over**: in all or most parts of sth. His clothes were **all over** the floor.

Match the pictures with the words below.



- ▶ towards _3 over ___ the rear ___ beside ___ beneath ___ onto ___ the edge ___ among ___
- Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.
 - The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the rear

 The glass fell the floor and smashed.
 - 2 I could see a few of my friends ______ the crowd.
 - 3 Don't sit _____ there. Come and sit ____ me.
 - 4 I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was _____ all those books.
 - 5 We didn't stay in one town we went all _____ the place.
 - 6 I couldn't see what was happening because I had my ______ to the window.
 - 7 Don't stand so close to the ______ of the road it's dangerous.
 - 8 There's a village in the valley, and ______ it, you can see the mountains in the distance.

B Time 🕟

We'd already played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes to go - it's not over yet.'

The children were woken during the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which lasted throughout the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. In the meantime, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and eventually found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but these days I just watch football on TV. I go to a game now and again with my son. Recently we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

words?

Glossary	
already	 before now or before a particular point in time.
to go	 If there are five minutes to go, then five minutes remain before sth will happen.
over	• finished.
not yet	 used for talking about sth tha has not happened, but will probably happen in the future
during	 at some point in the period of time mentioned.
last	· continue for a period of time.
throughout	 from the beginning to the end of sth.
in the meantime	• during the time between two events. syn meanwhile.
eventually	 after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).
these days	 in the present time. syn nowadays.
now and again	syns occasionally, from time to time.
recently	· not long ago. recent ADJ.

		I saw Petra not long ago recently			
	1	Do you see your uncle much these days?			
	2	The play continued for about two hours.			
	3	I go to the theatre from time to time.			
	4				
	5				
	6	We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived.			
4	Co	omplete the dialogues.			
		They want us to meet them later this afternoon. ~ Well, in themeantime, let's go to the market.			
	1	He's writing a book, but it's not finished ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me			
	2	Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most film? ~ Yes, it came out the summer. I think he's working on another film now.			
	3	Is the match yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to			
	4	How long does the film? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's seen it.			
	5	I used to go to Rome for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived there the 1990s – I loved it.			

71 I can use prepositions in phrases

A Preposition + word(s)

Phrase	Example 90.91	Meaning
by chance	We met in the shop by chance.	without it/sth being planned.
on board	Are all the passengers on board?	on a plane or ship or bus.
on purpose	She broke my watch, but she didn't do it on purpose.	with a definite intention; not accidentally syn deliberately .
at least	It takes at least an hour to get home.	not less than, and probably more.
at first	I didn't understand him at first.	at the beginning.
in a hurry	He got up late and left in a hurry .	quickly, and usually because you haven't enough time. syn in a rush .
in advance	Can I buy tickets in advance?	before a particular time or event.
in charge of sth/sb	Who's in charge of the office while Matt's on holiday?	in a position of control over sth/sb. syn responsible for sth/sb .
in general	In general, I don't work on Saturdays.	usually; in most cases. syn generally.
in public	I don't like it when people argue with each other in public .	when other people are present. orp in private .

Make eight more phrases using in, at, by, or on, and one of the words from the box.

general	purpose	advance 🗸
least	private	public
first	board	chance

in advance		
	-	

spotlight in the end and at the end

In the end can mean 'finally', 'after a period of time', or 'in conclusion'.

All the restaurants closed early, so **in the end** we went home.

At the end can mean 'in the final part', or 'when sth finishes'.

At the end of the film, they go to live in New York.

- Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.
 - We'll need not less than two hours to get there. at least
 - 1 Generally, he's very helpful.
 - 2 I think he took my dictionary deliberately.
 - 3 All the passengers are on the plane.
 - 4 <u>In the final part</u> of the story, the old woman dies.
 - 5 Who's responsible for these noisy children?
 - 6 I had to have breakfast quickly.

- Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
 - He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.
 - 1 All the buses were full, so ____ the end we took a taxi.
 - 2 If you want to get seats on the train, you'll have to book ____ advance.
 - 3 ____ first I didn't like the book, but actually it got better.
 - 4 I found the shoes I wanted ____ chance.
 - 5 Like many actors, he doesn't like talking about his private life ____ public.

B Word(s) + preposition 🕟

Phrase	Example	Meaning
access to sth	Do you have access to the internet?	the chance to use or have sth.
make the most of sth	If he lets you use the gym, you must make the most of it.	make the best use of sth that will help you. syn take advantage of sth .
capable of (doing) sth	She's capable of passing the exam if she works hard.	having the ability or qualities to do sth.
involved in sth	He's become very involved in local politics.	connected with sth or taking an active part in it.
approve of sb/sth	My mother doesn't approve of men who smoke.	think that sb/sth is good or suitable. OPP disapprove of sb/sth .
get rid of sth/sb	We got rid of our old sofa. They got rid of two workers.	throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.
care about sth/sb	She cares about people. He doesn't care about money.	be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.
take care of sb/sth	After their mother died, they took care of their father.	help and protect sb/sth. syn look after sb/sth.
insist on (doing) sth	He insisted on pay ing for dinner.	say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.
cope with sth/sb	I'll have more work next year, but I think I can cope with it.	take action successfully with a difficult situation. SYN manage.
	一	

spotlight depend on sb/sth

- 1 be able to trust someone or something. syn rely on sb/sth.

 You can never depend on the trains in this country.
- 2 be decided or influenced by someone or something.

 We may go out it depends on the weather.

Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

We can look after the children.
She approves my new boyfriend.
Is he still involved the company?
They can't cope all this work.
He insisted doing the cooking.
Don't get rid that lovely dress.
Can you depend him?
Mark is capable doing very well.
I don't have access email.
We must take advantage the weather.

(5) Complete the word in each sentence.

Does she really care about Conrad?
How do you c with three children and a full-time job?
I had to get r of all my old records.
We're taking c of the house while they're away.
It's your only chance to speak English, so make the m of it.
Do you want me to after the dog when you go shopping?
I want to go out, but it d on the amount of homework we have to do.
He wants us to get i in making arrangements for the conference.
Lucy's friends strongly d of her decision to marry Jack.

72 I can use prefixes

A Negative prefixes 🕟

Adjective/opp	Example	Meaning	Other words
insecure opp secure	She's very insecure about her appearance.	not confident about yourself.	informal inflexible
immoral opp moral	She stole money from my children. That's immoral .	thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.	impossible impatient
illegible OPP legible	My doctor's writing is illegible.	very difficult or impossible to read.	illegal
<u>ir</u> relevant opp relevant	I need some new shoes. The colour's irrelevant .	not important to what you are discussing or doing.	irregular irresponsible
unfair opp fair	His office is bigger than mine. It's so unfair !	not treating each person in the same way or equally.	unpleasant unsuccessful
unacceptable	The player hit the ref. That's unacceptable.	so bad that you think it should not be allowed.	uncertain unkind
disloyal opp loyal	They were very disloyal to the family.	not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.	dishonest disorganized
non-alcoholic	Is this drink non-alcoholic?	Juice is non-alcoholic , beer and wine are alcoholic .	non-smoking non-fiction

spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning 'not', e.g. *insecure* = not secure, *illegible* = not legible.

Over the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adjectives.

	<u>im</u> moral	3	legal	6	formal	9	regular
1	kind	4	responsible	7	smoking	10	honest
2	alcoholic	5	certain	8	secure	11	relevant

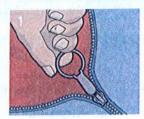
2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

- ▶ Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful
- 1 Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's _____.
- 2 Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's ______.
- 3 Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's _____.
- 4 Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite _____.
- 5 Men and women don't earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that's _____
- 6 He didn't support his country, did he? ~ No, he was _____.

Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU 1 Do you think life is generally fair or _____? 2 Is teenagers' behaviour nowadays acceptable or _____? 3 Are your friends generally loyal or _____? 4 Is your handwriting legible or _____? 5 Do you think it should be legal or _____ to drive at 17?

B Reversing an action



do your jacket up syn fasten your jacket opp undo/unfasten



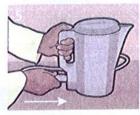
tie your shoelace (up) syn fasten opp untie/unfasten



pack your suitcase opp unpack



load the van (up)
opp unload



plug the kettle in opp unplug



wrap the parcel (up)



lock the cupboard



get dressed opp get undressed

- 4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.ov notified assistant and an address and as also
 - ► You can wrap a) a parcel b) a present c) water.
 - 1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
 - 2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
 - 3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
 - 4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
 - 5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
 - 6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.
- 5 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

Sentence	Synonym	Opposite
► Take the bags out of the car.	Unload the car.	Load the car.
1 Take the paper off the present.	resusing a word from	Attive and statement
2 Shut the suitcase with a key.		
3 Put your clothes on.	A second	2 ¹ For boardston
4 Put your things in your suitcase.	oz moor ani to	odd Makvestije
5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.		Hit serve need the
6 Fasten your shoelaces.	and the second reserved to the beautiful to the second reserved to t	mexals a sit tatular



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.

73 I can use suffixes

A Noun suffixes

Suffix	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
+ ment	judge	judgement	measure	measurement
+ ion / sion ation / ition	react interpret	reaction interpretation	extend define	extension definition
+ ance / ence	disappear	disappearance	prefer	preference
Suffix	Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
+ ty / ity	cruel	cruelty	real	reality
+ ness	gentle	gentleness	kind	kindness

W	Circle the nouns.
	disappeardefinitiongentlenessreactpreferkindness
	disappearanceextensioncruelrealitydefine
	preferenceinterpretmeasurejudgementextend

Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

disappear	disappearance
	Andrews of the second second second second
-	

Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

She cooked for me when I was ill; I really

	appreciated her kindness .	kind
1	Could I have the of the room so	oth
	that I can order the new carpet?	
2	I get very upset when I hear about	towards
3	He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to	face the
4	The police are investigating the	of the your
5	I told the boss I was leaving; her	was very s
6	She chose the wrong person for the job. That'	s just poor
7	I like most types of novel, but my	is for crim

Glossary

judgement an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the judgement is the judge's official decision). measurement(s) the height, weight, etc. of sth. reaction sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.

extension a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.

interpretation an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.

disappearance a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.

preference an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.

cruelty behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.

reality the way life really is.

gentleness kind and calm behaviour towards other people.

ness behaviour that shows you care about ers and want to help them.

	that I can order the new carpet?
2	I get very upset when I hear about towards animals.
3	He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the of the situation.
4	The police are investigating the of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
5	I told the boss I was leaving; her was very surprising. She laughed!
	She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor
	I like most types of novel, but my is for crime stories and murder mysteries.
8	We're planning a new for the old building; it'll be twice the size.

B Adjective suffixes Meaning Suffix Examples Feel powerless in your job? Want to be powerful? Buy our POWERGUY video! powerless not able to influence or control -less people or things. opp powerful. -ful waterproof not allowing water to enter. -proof The world's only waterproof and shockproof made so that it isn't easily shockproof digital camera. Great for underwater photography! damaged if it is hit or dropped. practical useful and suitable. -ical Cool, practical, economical clothing for economical using money, goods, etc. carefully tropical conditions. Go to practicalgear.com and without wasting any. tropical from or in the hottest parts of the world. Fabulous fashlonable shoes - and they're fashionable popular at the moment. -able machine washable too! washable able to be washed. ridiculous very silly. Get our T-shirts with ridiculous -ous humorous funny; amusing. or humorous slogans spicy with a strong, hot flavour. **-y** Try our spicy curry or fish with a creamy sauce. creamy containing cream, or smooth like cream. Tick (✓) the correct form. Both forms may spotlight Adjectives ending in -ful and -less be correct. There are several pairs of opposites ending in ▶ ridiculous ✓ ridicical ✗ -ful and -less: He's a careful student. = He doesn't make 1 waterproof proofwater mistakes. opp careless. 2 careful careless It was a useful/useless suggestion. creamy 3 creamful This gas is harmful/harmless. humorous 4 humorful It's a painful/painless treatment. practical 5 practicy washless 6 washable powerful powerless Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B. 6 an economical car . a powerful speaker G 3 harmful medicine 7 a powerless government 4 painless medical treatment ____ 1 washable trousers 5 tropical fruit ____ 2 a shockproof watch ____ 6 Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below. spice pain practice fashion ridicule use harm humour/ economy

	spice pain product
	The article wasn't supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.
1	Don't leave that powder there – it could be to the children.
2	The price of the meal was I just couldn't afford it.
3	Throw that thing away – it's absolutely
1	A bike is much more than a car in the centre of town.
5	These shoes may be, but they're incredibly uncomfortable.
6	My car uses less petrol than my sister's, so it's a lot more
7	Is your toothache very?
8	I couldn't eat the meal; it was much too for me.

0

Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

74 I can use verb patterns 6

Verb + infinitive	Example	Meaning
intend to do sth	We intend to leave early tonight.	plan or mean to do sth.
manage to do sth	I managed to get a job, but it wasn't easy.	succeed with sth that is often difficult.
tend to do sth	I tend to get up late on Sundays.	usually do sth. tendency N.
pretend to do or be sth	He pretended to be ill because he just didn't want to go to school.	act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn't true.
refuse to do sth	Why did she refuse to help you?	say that you won't do sth that sb has asked you to do.

Other common verbs used in this way: expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.

Verb + -ing form		a cur
imagine doing sth	I can't imagine working without a computer.	think what sth will be like.
admit doing sth deny doing sth	He admitted taking the vase. She denied taking his watch.	agree that you have done sth wrong. opp deny doing sth.
recall doing sth	I don't recall meeting them.	remember sth you did in the past.
mind doing sth	Do you mind working late?	feel unhappy that you have to do sth.
regret doing sth	I regret leaving school at 16.	feel sorry that you did sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.

Verb + object + infinitive		
persuade sb to do sth	He persuaded me to buy a new car.	make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.
encourage sb to do sth	My sister encouraged me to have dancing lessons.	give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.
warn sb not to do sth	He warned me not to go into that area.	tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.
remind sb to do sth	I had to remind her to post the letter.	help sb to remember sth that they have to do.
enable sb to do sth	His map enabled me to find it.	make it possible for sb to do sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.

Verb + object + preposition		
accuse sb of sth	The teacher accused the boy of cheating.	say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.
blame sb for sth	They blamed the teachers for the bad exam results.	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.
remind sb of sb/sth	You remind me of my dad.	cause sb to remember sb/sth.
introduce sb to sb	I introduced Miss Anderson to my boss.	tell sb another person's name when they meet for the first time.

Other common verbs used in this way: ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.

1	Cr	oss out the ve	erb that cannot	be	used in each	n se	ntence.	
	•	They	to go.					
			b) enjoyed	c)	refused	d)	intended	
	1	She					A PARTICIO	
			b) persuaded		reminded	d)	pretended	
	2		_ losing the mone				BGX12	
			b) admitted			d)	denied	
	3	We	to go away in t	he s	summer.	XIE		
		a) hope	b) enjoy	c)	tend	d)	intend	
	4		staying ther	e.	A STATE OF THE STA			
		a) recall			tend	a)	regret	
	5	Did they	to spend a	all tr	ne money?	-11	Landa de la companya	
			b) intend			a)	mean	
	6	They	me not to go	thei	re.	-1\	warned	
		a) reminded	b) accused	C)	persuaded	a)	warned	
2	Ci	rcle the correc	t verb.					
				out (denied/admit	ted	causing the trouble.	
	1	The extra mon	ev Learn will war	n/en	able me to h	ave	a holiday this year.	
	2	The roads will	be busy, so we int	enc	I/pretend to le	eave	early.	
	3		nagine living in an					
	4	He said it was	dangerous and w	arne	d/encourage	d m	e not to go there.	
	5	The girl hehind	the bar accuses/	remi	nds me of yo	ur s	ister.	
	6	Actually, I don'	t mind/admit goir	ng te	o the dentist.			
		, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	- 1					
3	M	atch 1-6 with	a-g.					
		She suggested	e a	m	naking any mi	stak	es.	
	1	She accused			ne to her siste			
	2	She persuaded			be an actres			
	3	She denied			ne for the mis		s.	
	4	She pretended			oing out. 🗸		Wrong? Write B or W.	
	5	She introduced			ne of lying.			
	6	She blamed			ne to go.			
							The state of the s	
4	A	BOUT YOU W	rite your answe	rs o	r ask anoth	er s	tudent.	
	Is 1	there anything:			er etter en			
	1	you managed	to do recently tha	t wa	s difficult? W	hat	?	
	2	you intended t	o do recently but	didr	n't? What?		To see all a port uplies en-	
	3	way roarst dair	og rocently? What	7				
	4	you have refus	ed to do recently?	W	nat?		Assumed For The Date of the Section	
	5	someone has p	persuaded you to	do r	ecently? Wha	it?_		
	6	someone has v	warned you not to	do	recently? Wh	nat!	Annual Control of the	
	7							
	8	someone has r	reminded you to d	o re	cently? What	?	The second secon	
	100							
6	10	Test yourse	elf. Cover the th	ird	column of e	ach	table and look at the verbs and	
	-	examples.	Can you remem	ber	the meani	igs.	A STATE OF THE STA	

75 I can use phrasal verbs

A Grammar 💫

Verb	Example	Meaning
give up [no object]	They gave up when the other team scored the second goal.	accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.
go up	Sales went up last month.	increase in price, level, etc. opp go down .
run out	My visa runs out next week.	come to an end.
take after sb [object goes after the verb and particle]	I take after my father in looks but my mother in character.	look or behave like an older member of your family.
get over sth ↓	She's been very ill, but she's getting over it now.	recover from an illness or bad experience.
give sth away [object can go between or after the verb and particle]	I had a bike but I gave <u>it</u> away . He's given away <u>his old CDs</u> .	give sth to sb without wanting money for it.
make sth up	I couldn't remember the story, so I made something up.	invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.
switch sth on	Could you switch the light on? Could you switch on the light?	press sth to start electric power. opp switch sth off.
put sth out	They put out the fire quickly. They put it out quickly.	make sth stop burning, syn extinguish FML.
get on with sb [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]	Do you get on with your brother?	have a good relationship with sb.
run out of sth	We've run out of bread.	finish your supply of sth.

- 1 Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.
 - She gave away it. W
 - 1 The numbers have gone up. ____
 - 2 Did he make the story up? __
 - 3 Does he take his father after?
 - 5 Does he take his lather al
 - 4 Don't put out it.
 - 5 He'll get over it.
 - 6 You can't switch off it. ___
 - 7 She couldn't do it, so she gave up. ____
- ② Circle the correct answer.
 - Prices have gone up/given up.
 - 1 He definitely takes after/gets over his dad.
 - 2 It's not true: he made it up/took after it
 - 3 Do you get on with/run out of his cousin?
 - 4 My passport runs out/gets over soon.
 - 5 I switched on/got over the cooker.
 - 6 Did he give away/take after any food?

spotlight Separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun must go in the middle (3).

- 1 He gave away the bike.
- 2 He gave the bike away. 🗸
- 3 He gave it away. ✓ (NOT He gave away it.)
- Complete the sentences.
 - ▶ He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away .
 - 1 The price went _____ from €5 to €6.
 - 2 You can't smoke in here you'll have to put that cigarette _____.
 - 3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it ______
 - 4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get ______ it.
 - 5 She gets _____ well ____ my parents.
 - 6 Oh no! We've run _____ rice



B In the classroom

STUDENT I can't work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can't see the board, Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you getting on, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you pick up those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I'll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you've finished?

T If you get through the exercises today, we can go over them tomorrow in class.

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth.
leave sth out not include sth. syn omit sth.
go on (with sth) continue (with sth). syn carry on
(with sth).

put sth on begin wearing sth. opp take sth off.
get on make progress with sth you are doing.
pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher
place. opp put sth down. (See spotlight.)
give sth out give one of sth to each person in a
group. SYN hand sth out.

put sth back return sth to its place (see spotlight).get through sth complete a task or activity.go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

spotlight Different meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

Pick sth or sb up also means 'go and collect sth or sb':

I have to **pick** the car **up** this morning. Can you **pick** me **up** at 5.00?

Put sth back also means 'move sth to a later time':

We put the wedding back until the spring.

6	Replace the underlined words with	a phrasal verb with the same meaning.
---	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

- ► When are you going to collect the tickets? pick up
- 1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise?
- 2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term?
- 3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question.
- 4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday.
- 5 Lasked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well.
- 6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9.

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out
- 1 Could you give _____ the books to the students, Claude?
- 2 I'd like to get _____ Unit 5 by Friday, then go _____ with Unit 6 on Monday.
- 3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them ______ yesterday.
- 4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get _____?
- 5 She took her boots _____ and left them on the steps.
- 6 I couldn't read it until I put my glasses.
- 7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting ______ to next Monday.
- 8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it _____ and putting it _____

76 I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying very 🕠

Phrase

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean very, a lot, or to a large degree.

Meaning

Other examples

disappointed. unlucky. injured. sorry. mportant. unlikely. strong belief. a lot. a lot. eletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally. inced 100 per cent sure.	bitterly cold desperately need seriously ill terribly sad highly intelligent strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined totally sure
injured. sorry. mportant. unlikely. strong belief. a lot. a lot. eletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	seriously ill terribly sad highly intelligent strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
sorry. mportant. unlikely. strong belief. a lot. a lot. eletely is used to asize an adjective b, syn totally.	highly intelligent strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
mportant. unlikely. strong belief. a lot. a lot. bletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	highly intelligent strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
anlikely. strong belief. a lot. a lot. bletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
strong belief. a lot. a lot. bletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	strongly oppose fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
a lot. a lot. bletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	fall sharply travel widely completely bald completely ruined
a lot. •letely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	travel widely completely bald completely ruined
eletely is used to asize an adjective b. syn totally.	completely bald completely ruined
asize an adjective b. syn totally .	completely ruined
where it should go. Paula's been ill. Their profits have fallen. We need to earn more m It was unnecessary to do	oney.
	 ry.
5	merica. nent should change its polic he's doing with that camer sentence.

B Frequency and degree

AXEL Do you and Mac still go to concerts together regularly?

HARRY No, we rarely see each other these days. The last time was roughly a year ago.

AXEL Oh. Why's that?

HARRY Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That's mainly the reason.

AXEL But you still go to concerts, don't you?

HARRY No, actually I don't. I think I'm getting a bit old for rock concerts. Generally I

just listen to music at home.

AXEL Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?

HARRY That's partly why I don't go. I find the noise and hysteria rather annoying, actually.

spotlight rather, fairly, quite, pretty

These words are all used to say that something is true to some extent. Rather and pretty INF are usually stronger, quite and fairly are usually weaker.

He's fairly/quite lazy.

The film was pretty good.

With positive words, rather suggests a positive opinion is unexpected.

It was a very cheap restaurant, but surprisingly the food was **rather** good.

Glossary

regularly · happening quite often.

rarely

not happening often. syn seldom.

roughly

about; not exactly, SYN approximately.

mainly

· mostly. syn largely.

actually

 really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). syn in (actual) fact.

genera

generally • usually; most of the time. syn on the whole.

to some degree but not completely, syn to some
 / a certain extent (To some extent I agree.

or I agree to a certain extent.).

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

1 It's quite good. | It's fairly good. ___

2 Generally it's very quiet here. | On the whole it's very quiet here. _

3 The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment.

4 It's approximately ten kilometres. | It's roughly ten kilometres. ____

5 We go there regularly. | We rarely go there. __

6 I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. ___

7 The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. ____

8 They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. ___

B Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ I go to the gym regularly. quite often

1 Generally I enjoyed the play.

2 The students were largely Italian.

3 There were roughly 30 at the party. ___

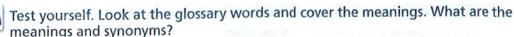
4 We go there mainly for the skiing.

5 It's a nice flat but it's pretty small.

6 I wasn't sure about Leo at first, but in fact he's very nice.

7 We seldom go out during the week.

8 Your sister is guite tall, isn't she?



Review: Language

Unit 68

1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.

▶ as / since / due to
1 despite / because / in spite of 5 though / so / therefore
2 as a result / all the same / consequently 6 in addition / moreover / however
3 what's more / still / plus 7 so / nevertheless / however
4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore 8 provided that / whereas / as long as

2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.

1	I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg. Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with
	conversation, and as a (1), I made a lot of progress. And what's
	(2), by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay with them next summer (3) that they don't have other guests.
2	The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the hotel (4) to the bad weather. In (5), there was no electricity in the evening (6) the storm had brought down the power lines. (7), the following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

Unit 69

1 Complete the table.

Definition	Word	Opposite
▶ working well and quickly, and without mistakes	efficient	inefficient
1 not done or seen or happening very often	r	
2 just good enough, but nothing more	a distribution	balur aleksata kert
3 typical of the past, but not now	0	Edition Spring Rich (43 fm.)
4 connected with the town, not the country	u	
5 full of people	C	
6 made by people and used instead of something natural	a 1986	natural or
7 behaving in a bad and offensive way	ne max	Hara Sales
8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved	S	
9 quite hard	f	
10 successful and giving the result you want	e	

- 1 Tick (✓) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.
 - ▶ We live on the edge ☑ the rear ☐ of the village.
 - 1 The cat was sitting underneath \(\simeg \) over \(\simeg \) the chair.

2 3 2 5 6 7	We don't play cards very often nowadays \begin{align*} these days \begin{align*}. The man behind us coughed during \begin{align*} throughout \begin{align*} the film. It was so annoying. We knocked on nearly every door, and now and again \begin{align*} eventually \begin{align*} found Lisa's house. She jumped down from the window beneath \begin{align*} onto \begin{align*} the grass. I go there occasionally \begin{align*} recently \begin{align*} to get some peace and quiet. I could see her in the distance as she was running beside \begin{align*} towards \begin{align*} me. We were working hard in the lesson. Meanwhile \begin{align*} In the meantime \begin{align*}, Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.	
Uni	: 71	
1 (omplete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.	
	a hurry ✓ get rid involved ✓ capable insist general rely favour of take care purpose public approve depend a rush board	
	in on of of	1
	in a hurry involved in	CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF
Uni	: 72	
1 (ross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.	
1 2 3 3 4 5 6 6 7	We outloaded the car and put the shopping awayunloaded Margo's behaviour is completely non-acceptable His opinion is unrelevant; I'm going to leave anyway I think she's feeling a bit dissecure – let's look after her Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please? You can disfasten your seat belt now	
Uni	: 73	
1 (omplete the dialogues.	
	Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? ~ No, it isn't _washable . He judges situations well, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he has very good Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can't give you a How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don't know what my would be. That's a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she's extremely This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour's OK for me; I don't have a That's cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of Why are you building an ? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.	

1 Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

C	deny ✓ accuse remind tend recall persuade pretend regret admit refuse	blame
•	She said she didn't take the ring. She denied taking the ring	
1	I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't	
	He wouldn't leave. He	
3	Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie	
4	Mario said I took all the food. Mario,	
5	She's sorry she moved to London. She	
6	When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris	
7	He said the mistake was my fault. He	
8	I usually work in the evening.	
9	Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal	
10	She gave me good reasons to leave. She	

Unit 75

- 1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
 - I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. 9et
 - 1 My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother.
 - 2 If you don't need the money, why don't you give it?
 - 3 I don't get very well with my boss. ___
 - 4 If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out.
 - 5 He put his coat and ran out of the house.
 - 6 I can't work how to use this camera.
 - 7 Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news.
 - 8 I've done my essay, but I need to go it again.

Unit 76

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

S	seriously widely sharply totally roughly highly rather rarely strongly
	He's got a PhD from Harvard; he's highly intelligent – and he's charming too.
1	Salaries have risen in the last three years.
2	I feel very about the need to improve public transport.
3	The garden is thirty metres long.
	I didn't enjoy the food very much, and the place was expensive.
5	I'm always saying I'm going to do more exercise, but I go to the gym.
6	This kind of tool was used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
7	I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn't injured.
8	I'm convinced that better communication can change the world

77 I can recognize informal English

A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (The play will **commence** in three minutes.), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (Keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**.). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. turn sb/sth down
- · uses of get, e.g. Could you get me a pen?
- many idioms, e.g. keep an eye on sth, out of the blue
- many examples of vague language, e.g. thing(s), stuff, sort of.

1		informal,	or	neutral?	Write	F,	١,
	or N.						

- ▶ get I
- 4 commence
- 1 sort of ____
- 5 vague ____6 out of the blue _
- 2 purchase
- 7 neutral

Glossary

neutral not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).

commence FML begin.

purchase FML the act of buying sth. purchase v. turn sb/sth down INF refuse an offer.

get sth INF go to a place and bring sth back. SYN fetch sth.

idiom an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. idiomatic ADJ.

keep an eye on sth INF look after sth and make sure it is safe.

out of the blue INF suddenly and unexpectedly. vague not clear or definite.

sort of INF not exactly, but partly (e.g. Are you busy? Yes, sort of.)

spotlight stuff

Stuff INF is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns. *Do you need much of this stuff*? (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)

Put that stuff over there. (e.g. books, papers, files)

2	Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phra	ase that has the same
	meaning in the context.	

- I made him a good offer but he refused it. turned it down
- 1 Do you want me to get your coat for you? _
- 2 [announcement] The film will start in five minutes.
- 3 Where can I leave my clothes? .
- 4 [business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity.
- 5 Then my parents arrived unexpectedly.
- 6 Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee?

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My brother arrived out of the blue
- 1 Do you understand? ~ Yes, sort _____
- 2 I don't know exactly where she lives, but I have a _____idea.
- 3 Could you get some of that organic _____ the children like to drink?
- 4 'Keep an eye on something' is quite a common _____ in English.
- 5 I offered him a lot of money but he still ______ it down.
- 6 The walls are _____ of green, but it's not a strong colour; it's quite _____

B Common exchanges A What've you been up to lately? B Nothing much. A Hi. How's it going? B Not bad. And you? A Take care. See you soon. B Yeah. Cheers. A Could you give me a hand? B Yeah sure, no problem. A Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute. B OK, but hurry up. A What's up with Mark? B I haven't a clue. Glossary Hi · INF hello. Same or different? Write S or D. How's it going? • INF = How are you? SYN How are ► Yeah | Yes S 1 no problem | nothing much ____ give sb a hand • help sb. syn lend sb a hand. 2 cheers | goodbye ____ · INF yes. yeah 3 recently | lately ____ · INF used to say that you are no problem 4 late | lately ____ happy to do sth. 5 I don't know | I haven't a clue ____ What's up • INF = What's the matter (with 6 How's it going? | How are things? ____ (with sb)? 7 What've you been up to? | What's up? I haven't a clue • INF = I don't know. What've you • INF = What've you been doing? Put these words and expressions in been up to? more informal English. lately · recently. ► Hello. Hi nothing much · INF nothing of importance. · INF used when saying goodbye. take care 1 Yes. ____ · INF wait a moment, syn hold on. 2 Wait a moment. __ hang on 3 What's the matter? ____ hurry up INF move or do sth quickly. 4 I don't know. spotlight cheers 5 How are you? _____ 6 What've you been doing? . We use cheers to express good wishes when we 7 Thank you. _____ have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'. Complete the dialogues. ▶ What's Ψ? ~ Nothing. Why? 1 See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take _

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

on a minute.

2 Hi. How's it _____? ~ Fine, thanks. And you? 3 Could you _____ me a hand? ~ Sure. No ____ 4 We have to go. Hurry _____ . ~ OK. Just ____

5 What've you been up _____ ? ~ Nothing much.

C An everyday conversation 🕟

- A Do you fancy a drink?
- B No, I'd better be off in a minute.
- A Really? I thought you had loads of time.
- B No, I've got to get to Mark's to pick up a tent1.
- A What for?
- B It's for a mate of mine. He wants to take his kids camping this weekend.
- A At this time of the year? You're joking!
- B I'm not. He reckons the weather's going to be fine.
- A That's nonsense. The forecast is awful.
- B Oh well. If it's a **disaster**, they'll just have to come back home.
- 8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

6 reckon

disaster e
a child

1 mate ____
b want

2 loads ____
c a lot

3 rubbish ____
d think

4 fancy ____
e failure ✓

5 kid ____
f nonsense



Glossary

- fancy sth INF want sth. syn feel like
 - (doing) sth.
- I'd better be off . INF I have to leave now.
- loads (of sth) INF a lot of sth. syn masses
- (of sth) INF.
- pick sth/sb upgo and collect sth/sb.What for?INF Why are you doing sth? or What do you need sth for?
- mate INF a friend.
 kid INF a child.
 reckon INF think.
- nonsense

 ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true.

 syn rubbish INF.
- disaster INF a complete failure.

spotlight joke

A joke is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story.

We use the expression you're joking or you must be joking to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

- 9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.
 - Do you <u>fancy</u> going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?

friend

- 1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be _____
- 2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute _____.
- 3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new _____
- 4 He said he had _____ of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks _____
- 5 I'd ______ be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?
- 6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What _____?
- 7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's _____ up the kids from school.
- 8 Do you feel _____ going out? ~ Yes, good idea.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

78 I can write a formal letter 6

Notes	Beginnings	Endings
If you are writing to a stranger or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.	Dear Sir Dear Madam Dear Sir or Madam	Yours faithfully your name
If you know the person, use <i>Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr,</i> etc. and their surname.	Dear Mr Wu Dear Miss Gilberto	Yours sincerely
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.	Dear Rosa Dear Conrad	(With) best wishes Kind regards
For an informal letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name. Note: Love (from) is not normally used by a man writing to another man.	Dear Min Ho Hi, Pavel	Love (from) All the best / Take care

45 Muswell Rd London NW4 15 April 2008

Sunshine Holiday Cottages Fore St Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Further to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I enclose a cheque for £50 as a deposit for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, commencing 21 August. I would be grateful if you could send me further information about the property, in particular, whether there is parking nearby.

We are planning to bring our dog.

If this is a problem, please don't hesitate to contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely Louise Robertson

Louise Robertson

Glossary	
stranger	· a person that you do not know.
enclose sth	 put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
deposit	 a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a deposit on or for sth.)
commence	• FML begin.
I would be	· used when you request sth.
grateful if you	syn I would appreciate it
could	if you could
in particular	 syns especially, particularly.
whether	• if.
nearby	• not far away. syn close by.
don't hesitate to do sth	don't feel worried about doing sth
look forward to	• think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
hearing from you	• receiving your letter.

spotlight further, further to

Further ADJ has several meanings:

- 1) comparative of far: The station is further than the bank.
- 2) (only before a noun) more: Have you any further questions?

Further to... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:

Further to my letter of 5 July, I am happy to . . .

O	Cover the letter and answer these que	estions.							
>	Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage?	Yes, she is.							
1	Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellis								
2	Why is she sending him £50?	Acceptation of the second seco							
3	Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August?								
4	Are there any other things she needs to know	? If so, what?							
5	Whose address did she write on the right-han	id side?							
6	Whose address did she write on the left-hand side?								
7	Did she write the date? If so, where?	3 CC 148 GR 101 CT 1							
	Which beginning did she use?								
9	Which ending did she use?								
10	Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Wh	ny not?							
2 Tic	k (/) the sentences that are correct and a	dd a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.							
		end it with 'Love' and your signature.							
1	If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with	'Kind regards'							
2	If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end								
3	If you don't know the name of the person you	u are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'.							
4	If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could	d also write 'Take care'							
5	If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should e	nd 'Yours faithfully'							
6	'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when yo	ou are writing to a stranger.							
	31000 11								
	hich words are missing where the slashes								
	Could you send me / details of the accommod	dation? <u>further</u>							
1	I look forward / hearing / you.	Basin Again and a series of the state of the series of th							
2	If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me	e							
3	I/a photocopy/my identity card with the app	olication form.							
4	I would be / if you / phone me about the mee	ting.							
5	Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm	n my booking.							
	Lwould / it if / could help me	Colored to the colore							
7	Please let me know / particular / there is a bea	ach nearby.							
8	I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the renta	of the room.							
57.8	1-21-22-2-4								
4 Co	mplete the letter.	V Palitika a ancar aran wa turun waka majika maka majika a ara							
	40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire	nices all virus 101, 100, 100, 111							
	14 January 2008	send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.							
	t Property Rentals	I would also (6) it if you could let me know (7) I will be able to park							
We	rton St eatherfield	in the basement of the building. If not, will I be							
		able to find parking (8)?							
(1)	Dear Mrs Stephens to your letter of 12 January,	If you need any (9)information							
(1) I (1)	2) a cheque for £500 as a (3)	from me, please don't (10) to call							
1 (2	on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings.	me.							
As	we agreed, my rental contract will (4)	Yours (11),							
Acceptant	on 1 February and run for one	Jurek Gorzy							
yea	ar. I would be (5) if you could	A STATE OF THE STA							
10000000									

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements 6

metric weight 1 g / gm (gram) = 1000 mg (milligrams) 1000 g = 1 kg (kilo/kilogram) 1000 kg = 1 t (tonne)	metric length 1 cm (centimetre) = 10 mm (millimetres) 100 cm = 1 m (metre) 1000 m = 1 km (kilometre)
metric capacity 1 cl (centilitre) = 10 ml (millilitres) 100 cl = 1 l (litre)	money UK £1 (pound) = 100 p (pence) (a sum of money); penny pt pennies (coins) USA \$1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)
speed metric: 80 kph (kilometres per hour) = n	USA \$1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)

Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

•	litre		ilso write 'Later				
1	metre	5	tonne	9	centimetre	13	gram
2	pence	6	miles per hour	10	milligram	14	millimetre
3	kilometre	7	centilitre	11	cents	15	pound
4	millilitre	8	kilogram	12	kilometres per hour	16	dollar

- Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.
 - For sale: 20 petrol cans at reduced prices.

 In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 on the motorway, or 81
 - You need a piece of card 20 _____ thick.
 To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 _____ of spaghetti.
 - 4 The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85

B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	advertisement	paper	newspaper
pub	public house FML a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.	deli	delicatessen a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.
flu	influenza FML	TV, telly INF	television
gym	gymnasium	board	blackboard; notice board.
lab inf	laboratory a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.	vet	veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.
pop (music)	popular music	bike motorbike	bicycle or motorbicycle motorbicycle
fridge	refrigerator	plane	aeroplane

Write the short form of these words	(2)	Write	the	short	form	of	these	words
-------------------------------------	-----	-------	-----	-------	------	----	-------	-------

•	television TV, telly	4	bicycle	8	newspaper
1	veterinary surgeon	5	gymnasium	9	public house
2	popular music	6	aeroplane	10	delicatessen
	refrigerator	7	blackboard	11	laboratory

Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

	Have you taken the cat to the vet yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the
1	Could you buy some cheese from the? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the
2	Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some in the
3	Do you fancy a drink at thetonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the
	How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I've got

C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. AIDS is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. BBC is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It stands for British Broadcasting Corporation.





NATO*	North Atlantic Treaty Organization	UFO1	unidentified flying object
AIDS*	acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)	PIN*	personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)
UEFA*	Union of European Football Association	VAT	value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)
ATM	automatic teller machine (a cash machine)	ISP	internet service provider, e.g. AOL
EU	the European Union	DVD ²	digital versatile disc
UN	the United Nations	IT	information technology
CV	curriculum vitae (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)	ID card	identity card (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)

Complete the abbreviations.

- N ATO is a European and North American organization.
- 1 If you use an AT___, you'll need your __IN.
- 2 If you apply for a job, send in a C....
- 3 I showed my L card to the police.
- 4 You have to pay VA__ on those goods.
- 5 Who won the U.....A Cup last year?
- 6 He's good with computers: he's in I ___.
- 7 Millions are suffering from __IDS in Africa.
- 8 We watched a DV_ about UF_s last night.
- 9 There are over 25 countries in the __U.
- 10 The N is an international organization.
- 11 An ___ SP provides access to the internet and email.

Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?

80 I can understand American English 👀

US English B	ritish English	US English British English
candy s	weets	elevator lift
cellphone n	nobile (phone)	faucet tap
closet co	upboard	French fries chips
		truck lorry
cookies bi	scuits	billfold wallet
US English	British English	Meaning
apartment	flat	a set of rooms that is used as a home (apartment is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).
attorney	lawyer or barrister	a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (barrister in British English).
datebook	diary	a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.
drugstore	chemist	a shop that sells medicines and other goods.
garbage/trash garbage/trash ca	rubbish in dustbin	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away. a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.
gasoline/gas	petrol	fuel used in a car (e.g. We stopped for more gas on the way.).
high school	secondary school	a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).
mall	shopping mall / shopping centre	shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.
movie theater	cinema	a place where you see a movie (film in British English).
purse	handbag	a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a purse is mainly used for carrying coins).
railroad	railway	a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.
round trip	return (ticket)	a journey to a place and back.
sidewalk	pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
store	shop	a shop (large or small).
subway	underground	an underground railway system.
vacation	holiday	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.

S Audit the second of 8
es called an interstate (highway) in n English. 6 g_s_le 7 trp_t_t_t1 8 b_lld
6 g_s_le 7 trpt_t 8 b_lld
7 tr p t t 1 8 b II d () ***********************************
7 tr p t t 1 8 b II d () ***********************************
S No. 105 true Scott Housesia T That's (8) montes we everyone S Handw Angway electronomy
round *** **************************
sh words.

1	How often do you use the subway?
,	
	How often do you use the railroad?
3	How often do you go to a movie theater?
4	What was the last movie you saw?

5 How often do you eat French fries?

6 Where did you go for your last vacation?

7 When was the last time you went to a mall?

8 When did you leave high school?

Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?

Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1	Change	the	underlined	words to	make	them	informal.
---	--------	-----	------------	----------	------	------	-----------

T	Hello, Suki. Hi
S	Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you?
	Oh, not bad. What've you been (2) doing lately?
	Oh, nothing (3) important.
T	Listen, Suki, what's (4) the matter with Jodie?
S	Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her.
T	(6) I don't believe you!
S	No, it's true. She (7) thinks someone doesn't like her there.
T	That's (8) nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie.
S	I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around.
T	(10) Yes, you're right.
S	Sorry, Tomas, (11) Lhave to leave now.
T	OK, see you later. (12) Bye!

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

	These are idiomatic:	a) out of the blue	b) I haven't a clue	c) neutral
1	These verbs are formal:	a) commence	b) fancy	c) purchase
2	These mean 'go and bring something back':	a) get	b) fetch	c) reckon
3	These can mean 'goodbye':	a) hang on	b) cheers	c) take care
4	These mean 'wait':	a) hang on	b) hold on	c) hurry up
5	These are used to express surprise:	a) Tell me a joke	b) You're joking	c) You must be joking
6	These are examples of vague language:	a) stuff	b) keep an eye on someone	c) sort of

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Dear'Hi Mr Bruzzone
- 1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
- 2 Kind regard/regards
- 3 Your/Yours faithfully
- 4 I'd like further/further to details.
- 5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
- 6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
- 7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
- 8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
- 9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.
- 10 All the best/All best, Jamila

1 Complete the letter.

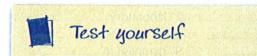
		Hot Pr	operty Rentals, Bart	on St, Weatherfie	eld
					25 March 2008
(1) — (2) — You a room I wou all fou of £3 Pleas to se	on Sasked for (4)	our letter of 23 N Sunnybank Villa, details rden. You have p if you cou that I can let the weeks before you	Southstoke, for two were about the cottage; it has barking (5)	eks (3) as four bedrooms, to , about 30 m from ays before your visit also (8)	eived your cheque for £90 as a 1 July. wo bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting
					narang)
lois '	70				
Jnit :	19				
1 Wh	at do these	abbreviation	ns stand for?		
	EU = Europea	n Union	4	VAT = value	markani
	ID =		5	CV = curriculun	n
	UN = United.		Ь		302093
3	PIN = persona	al	7	IT =	10 cm s cobert
2 (2)	a vou charta	n those wor	ds? If 'Yes', what i	s the short for	m?
	delicatessen				7 laboratory
	supermarket -		4 washing mach		
	refrigerator		5 advertisement		
	wardrobe		6 influenza	March I Comment	10 scientific
2	wardrobe				
	00				
Jnit 8	80				
	mplete the te box.	able with ni	ne more pairs of E	British and Ame	erican English words from
	sweets.	sidewalk	British English	2004-1	American English
	garbage	drugstore	sweets		candy.
	biscuit	candy 🗸			
	lift	diary			(11,4)
	truck	rubbish	Marie and Control and Control and Control	14 4 4	
	pavement	cookie		AND THE PERSON AND PROPERTY OF THE PERSON AND PARTY.	
	chemist	gasoline			
	elevator	datebook			
	lorry	closet faucet		Harris .	11
	petrol tap	wardrobe			
	tap	Waldiobe			

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
avoid	avoidance
approve	approval
breathe	breathing
celebrate	celebration
communicate	communication
consider	consideration
contain	container
criticize	criticism
decorate	decoration
disapprove	disapproval
divide	division
evaluate	evaluation
exhibit	exhibition
govern	government/governor
interrupt	interruption
investigate	investigation
involve	involvement
kill	killing
propose	proposal
recognize	recognition
refer	reference
remove	removal
require	requirement
shoot	shot
trade	trade, trading



2 Adjectives and verbs

Adjective	Verb
amusing/amused	amuse
amazing/amazed	amaze
complicated	complicate
concerned	concern
cracked	crack
delighted	delight
depressed/ depressing	depress
devoted	devote
frightening/frightened	frighten
irritating/irritated	irritate
repeated	repeat

3 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
accidental	accident
allied	ally
anxious	anxiety
artistic	artist
basic	basis
determined	determination
disgusting	disgust
electrical	electrician/electricity
mysterious	mystery
national	nation
proud	pride
regional	region
sexual	sex
suspicious	suspicion
sympathetic	sympathy
thick	thickness
traditional	tradition
valuable	value
wealthy	wealth
willing	willingness

4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
contrast embarrassment	contrast embarrass	contrasting embarrassing
entertainment	entertain	entertaining
disappointment imagination	disappoint imagine	disappointed imaginary
infection	infect	infectious/infected
impression	impress	impressive
preparation	prepare	prepared
relation	relate	related
sailing, sailor	sail	sailing
separation swelling	separate swell	separate swollen
variation	vary	varied

Answer key

Unit 1

1	1	gist	4	foreign
	2	identify	5	context
		construct	6	translate

- 2 1 guess 4 foreigners 2 gist 5 go
- 3 recognize/know 6 note, record
- 3 1 repetition 4 revision 2 pronunciation 5 chat
- 3 explanation 4 1 study it again
 - 2 successful 3 try something
 - 4 make
 - 5 a way of doing something
 - 6 an informal
- 5 1 discussion 4 works 2 opportunity 5 chance 3 chat

Unit 2

- 1 1 encouragement 4 frustrating
 2 improving 5 motivation
 3 accurately 6 enthusiastic
 2 1 getting better
 2 while 6 is aware of
 3 progress 7 express
- 4 obvious 8 frustrating
 4 1 fluently 4 expanded
- 2 everyday 5 appropriate/right
 - 3 relevant 6 aim
- 5 1 detail 5 expanding 2 inappropriate 6 specialized 3 complicated/complex 4 contain 8 range
- 6 Answers from a Polish person
 I'm learning English at the moment. My
 goal is to speak it fluently. I want to expand
 my vocabulary and be able to speak on
 a wide range of topics. I would like to
 learn complex structures and specialized
 vocabulary relevant to my job.

Unit 3

1 15 2D 3S 4D 5D 6S 7S 8S

١	١.	20	33	40	30	0	,	, ,	00	
2	1	instan	ce			5	syr	mbo	ls, syllab	ole
	2	selecti	on			6	idi	om,	entry	
	3	build,	provi	de, re	elated	7	co	lloca	ation	
		offend		•			str			

- 3 1 error, do sth wrong, fault
 - 2 two
- 3 informal
 - 4 no, it's informal
 - 5 / gar /
 - 6 a) correct
 - b) not correct (it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.')

Unit 4

1 1	full stop	5	question mark
	colon		exclamation mark
3	hyphen	7	semicolon
	brackets	8	apostrophe

- 2 1 comma
 - 2 question mark 3 exclamation mark
 - 4 apostrophe 5 semicolon
 - 6 brackets 7 hyphen, dash
 - 8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma
- 4 1 list 7 such
 2 instead 8 leave
 3 connect/join 9 separate/divide
 4 details 10 interrupt
 5 pause 11 connect/join
 6 abbreviation 12 alternative
- 5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks.

'p.m.' is an abbreviation.

'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing. 'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing. 'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing.

'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.

- 6 1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).
 - 2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.
 - 3 A slash is missing between 'in' and 'on'.
 - 4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.
 - 5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.
 - 6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.
 - 7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.

- 1 1 eyebrows 5 stubble 2 fattish 6 clean-shaven 7 in good shape
 - 4 broad shoulders

2 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6D 7S 8S 9D

- 3 1 shape 5 built 2 bald 6 skinny 3 clean 7 skinned 4 shoulders 8 scar
- 4 Answers from an Italian person
 - 1 My mother.
 - 2 My father.
 - 3 My cousin.
 - 4 My brother.
 - 5 My sister.
 - 6 My aunt.
 - 7 My whole family is dark-skinned.
 - 8 My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.

6 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T

- 7 1 hair, appearance 4 smooth, rough 2 tell, expecting 5 slim/slender
 - 3 wrinkles
- 6 tell, tan

Unit 6

1 1N 2N 3P 4P 5P 6B 7N 8B

- 2 1 energy 5 energetic 2 responsible 6 aggressive 3 generous 7 patient 4 cheerful 8 tolerant
- 3 1f 2a 3g 4h 5e 6b 7i 8d
- 4 honest dishonest responsible irresponsible lazy hard-working generous mean ambitious unambitious self-confident insecure honest honesty tolerant tolerance aggressive aggression arrogant arrogance generous generosity patient patience
- 5 1 crazy 5 self-confident 2 easy-going 6 hard-working 3 sense of humour 7 responsible 4 modest 8 energy
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 Yes, I am a very ambitious person. I like to do well in most things that I try.
 - 2 I am a hard-working person but I also enjoy letting my hair down.
 - 3 I'm not an intolerant person but I don't like people imposing things on me.

- 4 I get impatient when passport control only has one lane open at the airport.
- 5 I'm a self-confident, easy-going person with a good sense of humour.
- 6 I think honesty and tolerance are the most important qualities.

Unit 7

- 1 1 anxious 5 heartbroken
 2 furious 6 fed up
 3 astonished 7 scared stiff
 4 thrilled 8 kiss/kissed
- 2 1 delighted 4 amazed 2 miserable 5 jealous
 - 3 terrified
- 3 Answers from a Colombian person
 - 1 I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for exams!
 - 2 I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my best friend.
 - 3 I'd be miserable, but everything has to end some time, so I would be fine after a while.
 - 4 I'd be furious and would probably react violently.
 - 5 I'd be envious of my friends who could go out.
 - 6 I'd be heartbroken and would get another girlfriend.
 - 7 I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak in front of people.
 - 8 I'd be proud that I actually got into the plane in the first place.
- 5 1 hide 4 moody 2 sympathetic 5 insensitive 3 sensitive 6 emotions
- 6 1 mood 4 sympathetic 2 upset 5 in 3 supportive 6 hurt

- 1 a close friend, get on well with someone, make friends, keep in touch, depend on someone
- 2 1 reliable 4 disloyal 2 depend on 5 friendship 3 antisocial 6 close
- 3 1 He's friendly with Ruben.
 - 2 She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't keep in touch.
 - 3 I don't get on with my father.
 - 4 I made friends with her at university. / We made friends at university.
 - 5 I can rely on my boss.
 - 6 Donna's an old friend.

5	1	in anoth	4	in provided
	2	out	5	went woods
	3	get	6	get
6	1	argue, row		split, regrets
	2	know, common	4	realize, go out
7	1	another	6	split
	2	common	7	go
	3	relationship	8	regretted
		wrong	9	realized
	5	argument/row		

1	1	a	n onl	v chil	d	5	ge	et divorced
			alf-si			6	ac	lopt a child
	3 foster parents			7	single parent			
						ing somebody up		
2	1	c	2.0		40	5	D	6.0

3	1	brought		single
		only	5	divorced
	3	half		

4 Answers from a Spanish person

- 1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.
- 2 I've got a younger sister.
- 3 No, I don't have any half-brothers or sisters.
- 4 One of my friends is a single parent.
- 5 One of my colleagues has recently got divorced.

5	1	ancestors	4	relations
	2	looks like	5	originally
	3	emigrated	6	member
6	1	related	4	member, like
	2	royal, queen	5	after

- 2 royal, queen
- 3 previous

7 Answers from a Japanese person

- 1 No, I'm not related to anyone famous.
- 2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current monarch is Emperor Akihito.
- 3 Previous generations of my family have lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.
- 4 I'm often told that I look like my grandmother.
- 5 I take after my dad. We're both good with our hands.

Unit 10

7 wedding

•••		10		
1	1	anniversary	8	honeymoon correct
	2	I've chosen it	9	speech
	3	traditional	10	guest
	4	civil		ceremony
	5	bridesmaid		reception
	6	celebrate correct	13	religion

2	1	groom	5	after
	2	bridesmaid	6	best man
	3	chosen	7	reception
	1	quests	8	husband and wife

3 1 go on your honeymoon

2 drink a toast

- 3 wish someone a happy marriage
- 4 make a speech 5 bride and groom
- 6 celebrate your anniversary
- 7 a religious ceremony
- 8 the best man
- 9 a wedding reception
- 6 guests 4 1 choose, civil traditional, make 7 2 best
 - 8 toast 3 bridesmaids
 - couple, honeymoon 9 4 rings 10 celebrate 5 reception
- 5 Answers from a Norwegian person
- 1 Yes, you can choose either.
 - 2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best woman.
 - 3 Sometimes younger family members act as bridesmaids.
 - 4 Yes, they do.
 - 5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place in the late afternoon, and there's often a sit-down meal after that.
 - 6 It could be any number.
 - Yes, very much so. The best man, best woman, bridegroom, bride's father, and sometimes the bride all make speeches. After that, anyone else who wants to speak can do so, and some guests write a song which is performed by all the guests for the couple.
 - 8 Yes, they do.
- 9 Yes, normally the day after.
- 10 Yes, they do.

7	1	widower	5	inherit
	2	gravestone	6	death
		funeral	7	cemetery
	4	bury	8	coffin

- 4 buried, cremated 8 1 died widow, mourner 2 will, gravestone 5 grave, coffin 6 3 funeral, burial
- 5 funeral 9 1 of buried 6 2 in 7 will 3 widow inherited 4 death

1	1	space system	5	star planet
	-	moon sun		planes rockets
	3	planet star		earth universe / sola

4 sun moon system

2 1 space 2 words

3 roughly/approximately, reach

4 fetched 5 gained 6 revolves/circles knowledge

8 satellite

4 1 exist carried out 2 explore discovered 3 invention 6 analyse 5 1 scientists 4 analysis 2 discovery 5 exploration 3 confirmation 6 existence

6 1 exists 4 carry invented 2 explore 3 satellites confirmed

Unit 12

1	1	flood	6	narrow
	2	high tide	7	puddle
	3	shallow	8	drown
	4	float	9	waterfall
	5	surface	10	ocean

2 1c 2d 3h 4g 5b 6e 7f 8a

3 1N 2Y 3Y 4Y 5N 6Y 7N 8Y 9 N 10 N

4 1 on the surface 5 stream 2 lake 6 drowned 3 capsized 7 shallow 4 width 8 floods 5 1 burst 5 lake 2 caused 6 capsized 3 deep 7 sink 4 floating 8 drowned 6 1 horizon 6 shore

2 rock 7 harbour 3 beach 8 cave 4 cliff 9 coast 5 ship 10 bay 7 1 rough 4 sandy

2 wave 5 steep 3 protects 6 on

Unit 13

1 1 a gale 4 It poured for an hour 2 a frosty morning 5 fog

3 a muggy evening 6 I got soaked

2 1 soaking drops rainbow drizzled 3 mild 8 heatwave 4 bitterly 9 muggy 5 frost

4 1 predictable environment 2 disappear pollution 8 3 famine liquid 4 harmful 9 disease 5 atmosphere 10 climate

5 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 B

6 1 affect 5 melting 2 unpredictable 6 liquid 3 the environment 7 disappearing 4 human 8 atmosphere

7 1 extreme, climate 2 liquid, solid

polluted, affects/affected

4 predict, rise

5 global, disappearing

6 spread

7 Pollution, harmful

8 famine

8 Answers from a Polish person

1 I'm quite worried about global warming, but what worries me most is the fact that scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done about it.

2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.

3 Summers have become warmer and winters are milder now. Also, summer starts earlier, almost right after winter, so sometimes it seems as if we haven't had spring.

The changing of natural habitats, the construction of roads and buildings, and the growth of industry are all harming

the environment.

5 I think industrial pollution is probably most common in Poland.

Unit 14

1 volcanic eruption tidal wave surrounding land starve to death violent storm

2 1 destruction 4 surroundings 2 violence 5 damage

3 eruption

3 1 hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster

2 drought, crops, starve

3 erupted, ground, lava

4 sudden, violent, typhoon

5	1	strikes/hits	5	rescue
	2	collapse	6	supplies
	3	trapped	7	maintain
	4	evacuate	8	fear
6	1	collapsed	5	hit/strike
	2	crucial	6	death toll
	3	evacuated	7	considerable
	4	trapped	8	rescue/save

1	1	leopard	4	gorilla	7	snake
		elephant	5	whale	8	shark
		eagle	6	spider	9	monkey

2 > eagle, bee, mosquito

 leopard, elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey

2 fly, bee, mosquito 5 tiger 3 gorilla, bear 6 leopard 4 elephant 7 eagle

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F

5	1	survival	4	poisonous
	2	expectancy	5	harmful, harmless
	3	weight		

3 weight

6	1	survive	3	hunt	5	up
	2	average	4	sting	6	vary
7	1	calf	5	rat	8	herd
	2	mice	6	frog	9	turkey
	3	goats	7	male	10	cattle
	4	donkey				

8 1 horse 4 calf 7 donkey 2 goat 5 frog 8 turkey

3 bull 6 mouse

9 Answers from an Italian person

1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.

2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies. People keep goats for their milk. Not many people keep bulls. Donkeys are often kept in zoos. People use mice for animal testing.

Unit 16

1	1	papaya	3	thyme	5	stone
	2	spinach	4	sweetcorn		

2 In Britain artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C

3 1 plum 3 apricot 5 avocado 2 coconut 4 grapefruit 4 Answers from a British person
papaya Yes, but not much
coconut Yes, but not much
raspberries Yes
passion fruit Yes, but not much
plums Yes
basil Yes
parsley Yes
chick peas Yes, but not much
asparagus Yes
artichoke Yes, but not much
sweetcorn Yes
fennel Yes, but not much

6 1 calf 7 oyster
2 lobster 8 liver
3 rabbit 9 veal
4 squid 10 sea bass
5 kidney 11 mussels
6 trout 12 salmon

7 Answers from a German person

1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of veal.

2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.

3 I don't eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.

4 I don't eat any seafood because I don't like the taste of it very much.

5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don't like to eat the insides of animals.

6 Out of the five fish, the one I'm least likely to eat is carp.

Unit 17

1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G

2	1	on 11 2 diag	4	of
	2	on adjacombant	5	on
	3	up	6	of
3	1	plenty	4	diet
	2	exercise	5	waste
		cut	6	keep
5	1	peel	5	boil
		chop	6	fry
		add	7	bake
		mash	8	roast

6 1 recipe, ingredients 4 bake, oven 5 flour 3 pan, dish 6 stock, stir

1	1	afford	5	bargain
	2	discount/reduction	6	change
	3	reduced	7	receipt
	4	sales	8	refund

- 2 1 bargain 3 change 5 refund 2 scratch, off 4 sales
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I don't always look for a bargain but I'm very happy when I find one.
 - 2 I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.
 - 3 I check the number of notes, but I don't check the number of coins.
 - 4 I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.
 - 5 I don't usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.
- 4 1 €1,000,000.
 - 2 €250,000.
 - 3 Six months.
 - 4 She didn't live there, and she sold it for less money.
 - 5 Over €5,000.
 - 6 Yes (to the credit card company).
- 5 1 It's a huge house.
 - 2 The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.
 - 3 Rani is broke.
 - 4 I don't own the flat.
 - 5 Her shoes cost a fortune.
 - 6 Gisela owes €5,000.
- 6 1 amount, well 3 worth 5 income 2 broke 4 huge/massive

Unit 19

- 1 1 fell asleep 4 go/get to sleep 2 fast asleep 5 went off 3 nightmare 6 overslept
- 2 1 wake 5 awake 2 sleepy/tired 6 yawning 3 set, overslept 7 pyjamas, snores
 - 4 lie-in
- 4 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind
- 5 1 nap, habit
- 5 mind
- 2 like a log 6 disturbs, heavy 3 suffer from 7 exhausted
- 4 restless 8 lack

Unit 20

1	1	infection	5	blood
	2	bandage	6	symptom
	3	thoroughly	7	temporarily
	4	wound	8	develop
2	1	burn	7	temporarily
	2	running	8	dressing
	3	covered	9	bandage
	4	prevent	10	thoroughly
	5	symptoms	11	healed
	6	wound	12	infection

- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T
- 5 1 I slipped on the ice and fell over.
 - 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall backwards or forwards?
 - 3 He passed out, and when he came round he didn't know where he was.
 - 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were injured in the accident.
 - 5 She banged her head on the door and fell to the floor.
 - 6 My finger was **bleeding** so I put a dressing on it.

- 1 steering wheel door handle windscreen wiper gear lever number plate wing mirror
- 210 21 31 40 51 61 70 81 90
- 3 1 brake 6 headlights
 2 clutch 7 mirror
 3 accelerator 8 windscreen wipers
 4 boot 9 horn
- 5 bonnet
 5 1 past 4 advice
 2 faster 5 direction
 3 backwards 6 instead
- 6 1 prepared 4 watch 2 limit, close 5 keep 3 skidded 6 rather
- 7 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I know these things, but it's useful to be reminded of them.
 - 2 Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.
 - 3 No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it's easier to put things in the boot.
 - 4 Yes. I'm afraid so usually on motorways.
 - 5 I know what I'm supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.

6 We don't have much snow or ice in the south of England, so I don't make preparations for bad weather.

Unit 22

- 1 1B 2G 3B 4G 5B 6G 7B
- 5 meant, held 2 1 due 6 get 2 connecting
 - 7 3 trouble, delayed pick 4 cancelled 8 warning
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.
 - 2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I've often missed the ferry to France).
- 4 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car
- 4 rent/hire 5 nightmare 2 traffic jam
 - 3 overnight 6 via
- 1 hired/rented 3 stuck, heavy
 - 4 trips 2 stop, way
- 7 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.
 - 2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it's not dangerous.
 - 3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.
 - 4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Rath
- 5 occur 8 1 ambulance block 2 vehicle 6 7 avoid 3 serious
 - 8 collide 4 emergency
- skidded 4 9 1 injured emergency services 5 2 vehicles
 - occurred 6 3 collided with
- 5 broke down 10 1 blocking 3 serious 6 injured 2 skidded 4 lane

Unit 23

necklace 1 1 underwear 7 blouse 2 material earrings 8 3 sleeve 4 tights 9 vest 10 button 5 suede

- 2 1T 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7F 8F 9T 10 T
- 3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse
- 5 leather, silk 2 bracelet 6 neck 3 belts sleeves 8 material 4 denim
- 5 Answers from a Polish person
 - No, I don't think I've ever worn a cap.
 - 1 Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.
 - 2 I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.
 - 3 I've got four leather belts.
 - 4 I've got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.
 - 5 All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I've got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.
 - Yes, I've got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.
 - Yes, I often wear short sleeves.
 - 8 My favourite material is linen.
- 7 1 matches 5 suits
- 6 very good 2 unfashionable
- accessories 7 3 outfit
- 8 neutral 4 latest, style
- 8 1 matching
 - 2 elegant/stylish/fashionable
 - 3 latest
 - 4 suit
 - 5 versatile
 - 6 transforms
 - 7 accessories
 - 8 outfit

- 1 1 The dentist 6 The dentist 2 The tooth 7 3 1 8 4 The dentist 9 The tooth 5 1 10 I
- filling/check-up 2 1 look painful, chew 2 surgery
 - 6 take 3 have
- 3 Answers from an Italian person
 - I don't have a check-up very often -about once a year.
 - I don't look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.
 - My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.
 - I had toothache last month.
 - About two years ago.

- 5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
- 6 I can't remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

6 into

1	1	consultant	6	urgent
	2	immediately	7	well enough
	3	recover	8	successful
	4	patient	9	benefit
	5	straightaway	10	surgeon
2	1	patient	5	surgeon
	2	specialist	6	nurse
	3	patient	7	patient
	4	patient	8	nurse
3	1	consultant	7	risks
	2	tests	8	successful
	3	operation	9	enough
	4	urgent	10	get over
	5	straightaway	11	take care

- 4 Answers from a German person
 - 1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.
 - 2 Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.
 - 3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.
 - 4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.
 - 5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.
 - 6 It depends on the operation. If it's a minor operation, people go home.

Unit 26

1	1	needle	5	a hammer
	2	scissors	6	a drill
	3	screwdriver	7	Sellotape
	4	rope	8	screw

- 2 1 tools
 - 2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread
 - 3 stick, glue
 - 4 string
 - 5 screwdriver, tighten
 - 6 hole
 - 7 nail
 - 8 tied
- 4 These are possible
 - 1 fix, repair
 - 2 faulty, not working
 - 3 remove, replace
 - 4 lamp, light bulb
 - 5 is out of order, isn't working properly
 - 6 leaking, faulty

5	1	stains	6	working
	137	fixed		repaired
	3	decorate		properly
	4	repair		leaking
	5	cracked		remove

Unit 27

1		dust	3	grease
	2	muddy	4	vacuum
2	1	Sweep	6	mop, bucket
	2	vacuum cleaner	7	Dust, polish
		up	8	wipe
	4	cloth	9	sweep
	5	Do	10	Throw

3 Answers from a Colombian person

- 1 I do the washing up and I clean my room. Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.
- 2 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

Unit 28

1	1	fringe	5	parting
	2	scissors	6	trim
	3	hairstyle	7	colour
	4	hairdryer	8	blow-dry

- 2 1 Could you colour it for me, please?
 - 2 Sasha is letting her hair grow.
 - 3 I'd like a fringe and a parting on the right.
 - 4 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.
 - 5 I want to keep the same hairstyle, please.
 - 6 She's going to have/get her hair trimmed.

3 Answers from a Spanish person

- 1 Yes, I'm letting my hair grow longer.
- 2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.
- 3 I don't have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.
- 4 I go to a different hairdresser's every time.
- 5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

1 1 filthy	4 whistle
2 litter	5 graffiti
3 pavement	6 depressing
2 1 dirty	5 floors
2 quickly	6 money, food
3 walk	7 lips
4 ground	8 pictures/writing
3 1 litter	4 hurry/rush
2 subway	5 graffiti
3 wonder	6 depressing
E 1 C 2 C 2 D 4 C	C ED 65 75 00

- 6 1 suburb
 - 2 surrounded, shame/pity
 - 3 local/handy
 - 4 handy/convenient
 - 5 disadvantage/drawback
 - 6 ideal
- 7 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 The area where I live is built-up. I'd like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
 - 2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
 - 3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
 - 4 It's not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes' walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
 - 5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

		30				
1	2	impressive cellar separate	5	attic basement spacious		currently feature
2	-	basement corridor	3	hall drive	5	1
3		enormous store tiny	4 5 6	staircase leads convert		
4	2	detached currently drive		leads cellar store	7 8 9	huge wall convert
5	7	features chimney original	4 5 6	storage bricks roof		

- 6 Answers from a British person
 - 1 We don't have shutters on our windows.
 - 2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
 - 3 Yes, there's a small room we use for storage and a children's bedroom.
 - 4 We haven't got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
 - 5 There's a drive in front of the house.
 - 6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

Unit 31

1	1	boot	5	wooden	9	gold
	2	concrete	6	silver	10	pipe
	3	tyre	7	wooden	11	metal
		llan	0	plactic		

- 4 woollen 8 plastic
- 2 1 silver, gold 4 wood, metal 2 wood, plastic 5 plastic, wood, cardboard 3 plastic, metal 6 iron, steel, concrete
- 4 1 pointed 6 circular 11 square
 2 L-shaped 7 round 12 parallel
 3 curved 8 circle 13 diamond
 4 rectangle 9 triangle 14 star-shaped
- 5 vertical 10 horizontal
 5 1 oval 4 square 7 curved
 - 2 rectangular 5 triangular 8 straight 3 round 6 pointed
- 6 1 a rectangular table
 - 2 a curved needle
 - 3 pointed shoes
 - 4 a triangular handbag
 - 5 an oval mirror
 - 6 a star-shaped box

Unit 32

1	1	notice		5	glance	dat	
	2	see		6	can see	nueum T	
	3	look		7	overhe	ard	
	4	watch		8	hear		
2	1	catch		5	looked		
	2	can, soun	ds	6	glance	d/looked	
		staring		7	observ	ant	
		seem/app	eai	8	disapp	eared	
4	1	stinks	3	bland	5	touched	
	2	damp	4	like	6	rubbed	
5	1	like, like	4	touch	7	smell	

6 grabbed

Unit 33

1 1 five

3 Press

- 2 the background
- 3 no
- 4 yes
- 5 yes
- 6 a painting
- 7 in the distance/background
- 8 on the right-hand side

2 tapping 5 tapped

- 9 bright
- 10 on the left-hand side
- 2 1 no 4 dark 2 work 5 see 3 feeling 6 light

8 flavour, taste

- 3 1 You can see it in the distance.
 - 2 He's lying in the bottom left-hand corner.
 - 3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?
 - 4 They're sitting in the centre of the drawing.
 - 5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.
- 4 1 industrial 4 painting
 - 2 illustrate 5 even 3 warmth 6 shade
- 5 Answers from a Polish person
 - 1 Gabriela Trykler.
 - 2 Yes, in 1995.
 - 3 It's an abstract painting.
 - 4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.
 - 5 No, I don't.

- 1 1 Yes 5 Yes 2 No 6 No 3 Yes 7 No 4 Yes 8 Yes
- 2 1 drag 5 smashed 2 tore up 6 squeeze 3 folded 7 scratched 4 shake 8 sprayed
- 4 1 sneeze 7 burst into tears/cry 2 breath 8 shout
 - 3 burst out laughing 9 out loud / aloud
 - 4 breathe in 10 silent 5 whisper 11 tears 6 sigh 12 silence
- 5 Answers from an Italian person
 - Yesterday I heard my neighbours' baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.
 - 2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.
 - 3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.
 - 4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

Unit 35

- 1 steal, commit, attack, offend, obey
- 2 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 D
- 3 1 violence
- 5 violent/serious 6 serious/violent, jail
- 2 attacked 3 stole
- 7 broken
- 4 Property 8 minor, against

- 5 These words are wrong
 - 1 attacker
 - 2 mug
 - 3 breaking into
 - 4 shoplifting
 - 5 burglary
- 6 1 broke, stole, stabbed
 - 2 deliberately
 - 3 mugged/attacked, shoot/kill
 - 4 murdering/killing, shot
- 5 thief/burglar
- 6 robbed

Unit 36

- 1 1 report 7 suspect
 2 Victims 8 arrest
 3 investigate 9 evidence
 4 fingerprints 10 charge
 5 took place 11 court
 - 6 may
- 2 1 The police 5 The suspect
 - 2 The suspect 6 The victim or a witness 7 The suspect
 - 4 The victim 8 A witness / witnesses

4 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6T 7F 8T

- 5 1 tried 5 sentenced 2 prove 6 trial 3 prosecution 7 fined
 - 4 defendant

Unit 37

- 1 1 allergic 3 depressed 2 obese 4 diabetic
 2 1 Diabetes 4 increased 2 allergy 5 dramatic 3 Diseases 6 heart
- 3 1 allergic 6 diabetic 2 obesity 7 breathe, lungs
 - 3 attack 8 lead, diseases 4 depressed 9 decrease
 - 5 suffer
- 4 1 memory loss 5 stroke 2 arthritic 6 heart disease 7 disability
 - 4 blind

5 1T 2F 3T 4T 5F 6F 7F 8T

6 1 arthritis 4 memory 2 deaf 5 cancer 3 sight 6 heart

- 1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F
- 2 1 elections
- 4 vote
- 2 consists, parties 5 represent
- - 3 power
- 6 majority
- 3 Answers from a Colombian person
 - 1 My country holds elections every four
 - 2 The Uribista party is in power at the moment.
 - 3 They have been in power for five years.
 - 4 The President of the Republic.
 - 5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.
- 4 1 public
- 4 start it
- 2 important
- coming 5
- 3 deal with it
- disagree 6
- 5 1 policy
- aim/objective/goal
- 2 campaign
- 6 Opposition
- 3 persuade
- 7 focus
- 4 immigrants
- 8 need

Unit 39

- 1 1g 2e 3f 4b 5a 6c
- 2 1 enemy
- 4 captured
- 2 critical
- twelve
- 3 surrendered
- 6 explode
- 3 1 out
- 4 soldiers
- 2 bomb
- control
- 3 battle
- 6 war
- 4 1f 2h 3b 4d 5g 6e 7a
- 5 1 sides
- 6 unwilling
- 2 ceasefire
- involved compromise
- 3 leaders
- 8 9 reach/negotiate
- 4 settlement 5 determined
- 10 peace

Unit 40

- 1 1 f, release
 - 2 a, assassination
 - 3 e, establishment
 - 4 b, invasion
 - 5 d, attempt
- 2 1 assassinated
- 4 defeated
- 2 established
- attempt 5
- 3 Revolution

- independence, independent

Unit 41

- 1 whole, daily, entire, national, cultural
- 2 1D 2S 3D 4D 5S 6D
- 4 whole, international 3 1 culture
 - 2 press, journalist 5 declining
 - 3 published

- 6 daily
- 5 1 scare
- claimed 5
- 2 axed
- pension 6
- 3 clashed
- 7 threat
- 4 demonstration
- 6 1 pledged
- 5 demonstrate/protest
- 2 claims
- 6 clashed
- 3 aid
- 7 threatened 8 promise
- 4 scare

Unit 42

- 5 award 1 1 equivalent
 - 2 produce
- 6 achieve
- 3 supporting role
- 7 winner
- 8 prize
- 4 individual
- 2 1F 2F 3T 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F 9T 10 T
- 3 1 winner
- 5 role
- 2 achieve
- 6 award
- 3 leading 4 produced
- equivalent 7 8 individual
- 5 1P 2N 3P 4N 5N 6P 7N
- 6 1 indeed
- 4 extraordinary
- 2 plot
- suitable 5 6 performance
- 3 movie
- 7 1 entertaining 2 extraordinary performance
 - 3 disappointing indeed

 - 4 fan 5 moving
- 8 Answers from a Spanish person
 - 1 The Bourne Ultimatum is a really
 - entertaining film. 2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in The Others.
 - 3 I thought Music and Lyrics was very disappointing indeed.
 - 4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.
 - 5 Life is Beautiful was very moving.

- 1 1D 2S 3D 4S 5S 6D 7D 8S 9D
- 2 1 styles
- 6 watercolours
- 2 abstract 3 techniques
- 7 portrait/painting 8 masterpiece
- 4 oils 5 vary
- 9 display 10 exhibitions

- 4 1 camera 5 a film 2 lens 6 of film 3 photographer 7 flash 4 focus 8 album
- 5 1 She can develop films in her studio.
 - 2 I put the photo in the frame.
 - 3 Can I have two prints of this negative please?
 - 4 He focused on the girl in the foreground.
 - 5 Amateur photographers often buy automatic cameras.
 - 6 You can transfer the pictures to the computer.
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - I'm interested in taking photographs of beautiful scenery and wildlife.
 - 2 I have a new Japanese digital camera.
 - 3 It has a digital screen and a very good 'zoom' feature.
 - 4 I find it hard to stop my hands shaking when I try to take photos at night without the flash.

- 1 1 violin/violinist
 - 2 organ/organist
 - 3 trumpet/trumpeter
 - 4 guitar/guitarist
 - 5 saxophone/saxophonist
 - 6 cello/cellist
 - 7 flute/flautist
- 2 1 orchestra 5 songwriter 2 guitar, band, lead 6 player 3 instrument 7 musicians
 - 4 composers
- 7 musicians 8 conductor
- 4 1 lyrics 5 living 2 solo 6 melody 3 live 7 appeals
 - 4 voice
- 5 1 influenced 5 solo 2 release 6 albums 3 recorded 7 appeals
 - 4 recording 8 admire
- 6 Answers from a Japanese person1 I like Marcus Miller very much.
 - 2 His music has been influenced by Jaco Pastorius.
 - 3 He records his own music but sometimes writes for other people.
 - 4 He often does live concerts. I have seen him play live in Osaka several times.
 - 5 The last album he released was called 'Free'.
 - 6 I like his music because he is a genius and the rhythms he plays are brilliant.

Unit 45

- 1 1 golfer 5 rugby player 2 athlete 6 skier 3 boxer 7 gymnast
 - 4 racing driver
- 2 1 captain
 - 2 referee
 - 3 support
 - 4 umpire
 - 5 supporters
- 3 1 referee 5 fans 2 linesman 6 crowd 3 flag 7 pitch 4 commentator 8 manager
- 4 1 length 5 depth
- 2 track 6 construction
- 3 width 7 lap
- 4 maximum
- 5 1 construct, stadium, capacity
 - 2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed
 - 3 Championship, worldwide, courts
 - 4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

Unit 46

- 1 1 gymnastics 4 cycling 2 weightlifting 5 athletics 3 fencing 6 wrestling
- 2 1 took part 4 takes place 2 take part, participate 5 race, medal 3 record 6 hold
- 3 1 take 4 competitors, professionals
 - 2 compete 5 race
 - 3 record 6 medal, competition
- 5 1 achievement 5 brilliant 2 criticize 6 favourite 3 resistance 7 defeat sb
 - 4 praise
- 6 1 contest 4 favourite, sided 2 overall 5 critical
 - 3 achievement 6 opponent, semi

- 1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi Non-fiction: autobiography, manual, reference book, encyclopedia, biography
- 2 1 encyclopedia 5 mystery 2 poetry/poems 6 alphabet
 - 3 reference 7 autobiography
 - 4 pleasure 8 manual
- 4 1 attention 4 readable 2 well known 5 paperback
 - 3 chapter 6 browsing

5 1 author 5 chapter
2 attention 6 fascinating
3 title 7 cover
4 paperback 8 written

6 Answers from a Polish person

- 1 I like detective stories and biographies.
- 2 I use lots of different dictionaries.
- 3 I used to when I was younger and had more free time.
- 4 No, not really.
- 5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks because they are cheaper, but also because many books only come out in paperback.

Unit 48

1 1 illuminated 5 festival 2 Carnival 6 fireworks 3 approached 4 spectacular 8 blossom

2 1 c 2 b 3 h 4 d 5 i 6 f 7 a 8 g

3 1 participated

4 striking

2 dress up 3 illuminated 5 occasion6 neighbourhood

4 1 festival, carnival 5 dressed up

2 parade 6 occasions, fireworks

3 entertainment 7 mean 4 taken part 8 participate

5 Answers from a German person

1 The 'Oktoberfest' in Munich is a very important and popular festival. It was originally a harvest festival.

2 No, they don't.

3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing and there's a fairground.

4 No, I haven't taken part in a parade.

5 Yes, at 'Fasching' in February, when I was small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!

6 Yes, on New Year's Eve.

7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot of people like tradition.

8 Yes, I'd like to participate in 'La Tomatina' because I think it would be a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people!

4 attitude

12 examiner

13 relief

Unit 49

1 1 invigilator

		Illyighator	-	attitude
	2	success	5	follow
	3	succeed	6	disqualified
2	1	attitude	8	essential
	2	instructions	9	carefully
	3	invigilator	10	devotes
		cheating	11	planning

6 item 7 paper

5 disqualified

Unit 50

1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.

2 1 attend 6 widely
2 seminars 7 academic
3 lectures 8 assessment
4 notes 9 graduate
5 tutor

4 1 opportunity 5 manage 2 on time 6 in time 3 freedom 7 homesick

4 revision

5 1 away 4 loans 2 residence 5 scholarship 3 tuition 6 chance

6 Answers from an Italian person

1 Students usually live at home, unless they go to university in another city.

2 Some students live in halls of residence, but most of them live in shared flats or houses.

3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees unless they receive a scholarship.

4 Normally they don't have to take out loans because their parents help them.

5 Yes, scholarships are available.

6 It would be great to have the chance to study abroad.

Unit 51

1 1 application, assessment, confirmation, acknowledgement, interview

2 1 They said they'd contact to me.

2 Is she applying for a job?

3 Have you got a work permit?

4 The company is based in Tokyo.

5 He gave me some good advice.

6 She gave me feedback after the interview.

7 I have to confirm it in writing.

8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long process.

3 1 requested 4 require 2 position 5 subject to 3 attended

4 1 based 6 candidates 2 acknowledge 7 vacancies

3 confirmation 8 give

4 contact 9 apply, application 5 automatically 10 process

5 Answers from a German person

1 I've applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT specialist.

2 I think I've had more than twenty interviews in my life.

- 3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
- 4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
- 5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
- 6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

- 1 1 training 5 manufacturing
 2 military 6 management
 3 retail 7 finance
 4 engineering 8 recruitment
- 2 1 sector 5 qualifications 2 management 6 profession 3 experience 7 military 4 training
- 3 Answer from a Colombian person
 I have some management experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don't have experience in any of the other fields.

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7T

- 5 1 estate travel
 - 2 landing land
 - 3 produces products
 - 4 servant service
 - 5 exports imports
 - 6 takes care for takes care of / cares for
 - 7 representants representatives/reps

Unit 53

115 2D 3D 45 55 65 7D 85 9D

- 2 1 challenging 5 elsewhere 2 department 6 unemployed 3 prospects 7 sack/fire 4 promoted 8 resign/quit
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 My job is very challenging.
 - 2 In fact I've already transferred from another department.
 - 3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.
 - 4 I'm not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!
 - 5 No, I'm not bored, so I won't be looking elsewhere.
 - 6 No, I've never been unemployed.
 - 7 I would hate to have to sack someone.
 - 8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.
- 4 1 I'd like to make an enquiry about the club.
 - 2 I talked to her face-to-face.
 - 3 It's very hard to deal with this situation.
 - 4 Who's in charge of this department?
 - 5 You have to make sure the door is locked.
 - 6 We're not responsible for the cleaning.

- 7 Do you know how to solve the problem?
- 8 I want to make a complaint about the service.
- 5 Text A
 - 1 duties 4 responsible 2 enquiries 5 sure
 - 3 solutions

Text B

- 6 involves 10 responsibility
- 7 public 11 deal
- 8 handling 12 complaints
- 9 clerical

Unit 54

- 1 1 trade 5 overtime 2 strike 6 takes, off 3 bonus 7 stress
 - 4 working conditions
- 2 1 Is she a member of a trade union?
 - 2 Are we entitled to sick pay?
 - 3 I'd like to take a week off.
 - 4 Why don't you like shift work?
 - 5 I left on time today; I didn't do overtime.
 - 6 Why did the workers go on strike?

3 Answers from a British person

- 1 Yes, it is very stressful.
- 2 We get 25 days' holiday each year.
- 3 No, we don't do shift work.
- 4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.
- 5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.
- 6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.
- 7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.
- 8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

Unit 55

1 1e 2i 3g 4c 5a 6b 7d 8h

- 2 1 turnover 5 inflation 2 flow 6 took out, loan 3 rate 7 costs, loss 4 tax profit 8 finance/start/operate
- 4 1 grew/rose significantly
 - 2 rose gradually
 - 3 fell slightly
 - 4 stable/smallers
 - 4 stable/unchanged
 - 5 risen steadily
- 5 1 sharply 5 by
 - 2 rise 6 fall/drop 3 peak 7 fluctuated
 - 4 gone 8 stable/unchanged
- 6 1 rose slightly
 - 2 sharp rise/increase
 - 3 remained stable/unchanged
 - 4 fell slightly
 - 5 fell sharply

- 1 asset, goods, stock
- 2 1 up the business 4 quality 2 of business 5 employer
 - 3 supplier 6 her on
- 3 1 research
 - 2 assets
 - 3 rivals
 - 4 employs
 - 5 optimistic/ambitious, estimates
- 4 1 takeover
- 4 leader 5 survival
 - 2 reputation 3 break even
- 6 struggle
- 5 1 share
- 4 growth, market
- 2 shares
- 5 taken
- 3 brand
- 6 gained

Unit 57

- 1 1 1993.
 - 2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
 - 3 b) it had to give protection c) it had to retain heat
 - 4 He did some research.
 - 5 He took out a bank loan.
 - 6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.
 - 7 Feedback from his customers.
 - 8 A good partnership with suppliers.
- 2 1 contract
- 5 innovate
- 2 retain
- 6 diversify
- 3 crucial
- partnership
- 4 feedback
- potential
- 3 1 exploit
 - 2 Both answers are correct.
 - 3 potential
 - 4 adapt
 - 5 Both answers are correct.
 - 6 founded
 - 7 investment
 - 8 Both answers are correct.
- 4 1 gap

ahead

2 case

- contract
- 3 producers/manufacturers
- retain/keep 8
- 4 research
- factor

- 5 invest
- 10 diversify

Unit 58

- 1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G
- 2 1 sector
 - 2 demand
 - 3 strengths
 - 4 threat
 - 5 resources

- reduce 3 1 skills weaknesses 2 advertise
 - 3 demand/market
- 4 1f 2e 3a 4c 5b
- 4 data/facts 5 1 strategy 2 objective realistic 5
 - 3 response 6 tip
- 4 target 6 1 ignored
 - 5 gathered 2 forecast
 - 3 assume

Unit 59

- 1 1 almost think/believe 2 probably probably 3 may don't 8 4 possible bad
- 2 1 She's bound to pass.
 - 2 She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. / I expect she'll pass.
 - 3 She may/might pass.
 - 4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. / She's unlikely
 - 5 She'll definitely fail.
- 3 Answer from a Japanese person Next week, I'm definitely going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a good chance for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are unlikely to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I expect some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a disaster! But maybe I'm too

My friend and I might go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm likely to ask her advice about the boy I fancy, even though I doubt she has a good opinion of him.

Unit 60

3 alike

pessimistic.

- 1 1 in comparison main
 - 2 apart from 5 compared 6 identical
- 5 greedy 2 1 similar
 - alike, completely 2 Compared
 - apart 3 similarity
 - 8 difference 4 except
- 3 Answers from a British person

Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.

- 1 1 meant
 - 2 busy
 - 3 What
 - 4 free (to see you)
 - 5 put it off
 - 6 for example/for instance
 - 7 Are you able to come
 - 8 meet
 - 9 I'm afraid
- 2 1 Shall we get together for a meeting?
 - 2 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow.
 - 3 I could put the meeting off until Friday.
 - 4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. or I'm sorry but I'm tied up then.
 - A Let's meet at a restaurant, say? B No, what about the station instead?
 - 6 As an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

Unit 62

- 1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore
 - Like: fond of, keen on
 - Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all
- 2 1 I'm fond of . . .
 - 2 I can't stand . . .
 - 3 I loathe cooking . . .
 - 4 I'm mad about . . .
 - 5 I can't bear . . .
 - 6 I detest . . .
 - 7 ladore eating . . .
 - 8 I'm crazy about . . .
- 9 Recently, I've got to like . . .
- 10 I'd rather eat . . . than . . .
- 3 Answers from a Polish person
 - 1 chocolate cake
 - 2 cigarette smoke
 - 3 liver
 - 4 reading
 - 5 people who smoke in my presence
 - 6 waiting in departure lounges at airports
 - 7 white chocolate
 - 8 travelling to new places
 - 9 mussels
 - 10 fish, meat

Unit 63

- 1 1 What do you think of this idea?
 - 2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
 - 3 I agree with it in principle.
 - 4 It seems to me we have no choice.
 - 5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.

- 2 1 It seems to me we should do something.
 - 2 How do you feel about that?
 - 3 In my opinion, we should help them.
 - 4 I'm to blame.
 - 5 I reckon it'll be a problem.
- 3 1 Apparently, fault 4 point
 - 2 concerned
- 5 principle/theory
- 3 issues
- 4 1 sensible
- support
- 2 consider
- believe
- 3 reduce
- 6 proposal
- 5 1 against
- 5 silly favour
- 2 reduce 3 opposed
- 7 dependent

- 4 believe/think

- 8 mature

Unit 64

- 1 1 force to you
- 4 with
- 2 to 3 be
- 5 to
- 6 on
- 2 1 behaved
- 4 banned
- 2 allowed
- punishment 5 behaviour
- 3 disobedient
- 3 1 obedient
 - 2 disobeyed
 - 3 strict
 - 4 force
 - 5 behave
- 4 Answers from an Italian person
 - Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.
 - 1 Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.
 - 2 If you disobeyed the rules, you would have to stand outside the classroom.
 - 3 The rules were not that strict.
 - 4 The teachers didn't force me to do anything I didn't want to do.
 - 5 I think children probably behaved much better then compared to nowadays.

5 1S 2D 3S 4D 5D 6S 7S 8S

- 6 1 let
- 6 compulsory/
- 2 choice
- obligatory, choice
- 3 allowed, forbidden 7 allowed/permitted 8 option
- 4 up
- 5 optional

- 1 1D 2S 3D 4D 5S 6S
- 2 1 making
- 6 wrong
- 2 intend
- 7 fact
- 3 hoping 4 expecting
- smoothly 8 9 forward
- 5 intention
- 4 1 I doubt it.
- 5 I'm afraid so
- 2 I'm afraid not.
- 6 I hope not
- 3 I don't think so. 7 Definitely not

4 I guess so.

5 1 imagine so 5 assume so

6 doubt it / don't think so 2 think so

3 hope not 7 Definitely 4 afraid hot 8 suppose so

Unit 66

11d 2f 3g 4b 5a 6e

2 1 dissatisfied, complained

2 guarantee

3 point

4 back

5 writing

6 keep/stay, temper

7 expert

8 considered

4 mention

5 1 fed

5 bother join 2 bother 6

3 nuisance

7 bothered

4 spoilt/ruined

8 mentioned

6 Answers from a German person

1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the morning when I drive to work; it's so busy.

2 Sometimes the small child living above us can be a bit loud and that gets on my

3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however, postal strikes are a real inconvenience to me and others.

4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a real nightmare, as it's so crowded.

5 I'm not particularly bothered about my level of English at the moment; however, I do try to improve constantly.

Unit 67

1 1 Do you need any assistance?

2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek medical help. OR Seek medical help if symptoms continue.

3 Beware of the dog; it bites.

4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is down.

5 In case of fire, leave the building immediately.

6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR In case of emergency, ring the police.

2 1 swallows

5 warned, danger

2 Beware, case

careful, aircraft 6

3 Mind

7 assistance

4 out

premises

Unit 68

5 plus 1 1 as a result 6 Since 2 what's more Moreover

3 due to 4 therefore

8 **Furthermore**

2 REASON: due to, since RESULT: therefore, as a result

ADDITION: what's more, plus, moreover, furthermore

3 1 close/shut

2 she couldn't

3 was terrible/bad/dreadful

4 didn't have

5 get in / get into / enter

6 they aren't / they're not

4 1e 2i 3b 4c 5d 6f 7a 8h

5 1 despite

2 that

3 However/Nevertheless

4 though/however

5 although/though

6 spite, still

even

8 Despite

6 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

4 whereas 7 1 as long as

2 so that

5 in case

3 On the one hand

6 otherwise

Unit 69

1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable, essential/vital Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/ rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban

2 1S 2D 3S 4D 5S 6S 7D

3 1 curious

reasonable 5 2 rural/remote

3 suspicious

impressed overall 6

5 1 shocked 2 satisfied

4 terrifying 5 disgusting

3 disappointing

embarrassed 5 disgusting

6 1 amusing

2 embarrassing 6

amazed/astonished

3 shocking 4 disappointed 7 alarming 8 satisfied

8 1 inadequate

common 6

2 soft 3 inefficient 7 ineffective unexpected

4 spacious 5 artificial

9 permanent

6 efficient 9 1 mixed 2 rare

7 adequate 8 modern/contemporary

10 temporary

3 glad 4 fashioned 5 unexpected 9 negative

Unit 70

- 1 over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2
- 2 1 onto 5 over 2 among 6 back 3 over, beside edge 7 4 underneath/beneath 8 beyond
- 3 1 nowadays 2 lasted
 - 3 occasionally / now and again
 - 4 Meanwhile 5 throughout
 - 6 eventually
- 4 1 yet, recently / not long ago
 - 2 recent, during
 - 3 over, go 4 last, already
 - 5 occasionally / now and again / from time to time, during/throughout

Unit 71

- 1 in general, in private, in public at least, at first by chance on purpose, on board
- 2 1 In general 4 At the end 2 on purpose in charge of 5 3 on board 6 in a hurry/rush
- 3 1 in 4 by 2 in 5 in 3 At
- 4 1 of
 - 6 on 2 in/with 7 of 3 with 8 to of 9 4 on 5 of
- **5** 1 cope
 - 5 look depends 2 rid 3 care 7 involved 4 most 8 disapprove

- Unit 72
 - 1 1 unkind 7 non-smoking insecure 2 non-alcoholic 8 3 illegal 9 irregular 4 irresponsible dishonest 10 uncertain irrelevant 6 informal
 - 2 1 immoral 4 insecure
 - 5 unfair/unacceptable 2 non-alcoholic 3 irrelevant 6 disloyal
 - 3 1 unfair 4 illegible 2 unacceptable 5 illegal 3 disloyal
 - Answers from a Colombian person
 - 1 Life is always unfair, but knowing that means that I do not expect anything marvellous to happen and have therefore become cynical.
 - 2 It has always been acceptable to them and unacceptable to others and it will
 - 3 My friends tend to be loyal but a disloyal friend can always appear loyal at first.
 - 4 My handwriting is probably the clearest sign of a confused mind! Even I can't read it - it is completely illegible.
 - 5 I think it should be legal. I learnt to drive when I was 17 and didn't have an accident for the first four years.
- 4 1 a, c 3 b, c 2 a, b 4 a, b 6 a, b
- 5 1 Unwrap the present. Wrap (up) the present.
 - 2 Lock the suitcase. Unlock the suitcase.
 - 3 Get dressed. Get undressed.
 - 4 Pack your suitcase. Unpack your suitcase.
 - 5 Do up your shirt. Undo your shirt.
 - 6 Tie up / Do up your shoelaces. Untie / Undo your shoelaces.

- 1 gentleness, kindness, disappearance, extension, reality, preference, judgement
- 2 1 react reaction
 - 2 prefer preference
 - 3 cruel cruelty
 - 4 define definition
 - 5 interpret interpretation
 - 6 measure measurement
 - 7 extend extension

- 3 1 measurements 5 reaction 6 judgement 2 cruelty preference 3 reality
 - 8 extension 4 disappearance
- practical 4 1 waterproof 5 2 careful, careless 6 washable
 - 3 creamy 7 powerful, powerless 4 humorous
- 5 1G 2G 3B 4G 5G 6G 7B
- 6 1 harmful
 - 2 ridiculous
 - 3 useless/ridiculous
 - 4 practical/useful/economical
 - 5 fashionable
 - 6 economical
 - 7 painful
 - 8 spicy

- 1 1d 2a 3b 4c 5a 6b
- 5 reminds 3 imagine 2 1 enable 4 warned 6 mind 2 intend
- 3 1f 2g 3a 4c 5b 6d
- 4 Answers from a Spanish person
 - 1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.
 - 2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.
 - 3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.
 - 4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.
 - 5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.
 - 6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.
 - 7 I'm pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.
 - 8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

Unit 75

- 1 1R 2R 3W 4W 5R 6W 7R
- 4 runs out 2 1 takes after 5 switched on 2 made it up 6 give away
- 3 get on with 5 on, with 3 on 3 1 up
- 6 out of 4 over 2 out
- 4 go over 5 1 leave out 2 get through 5 getting on
 - 6 go on / carry on 3 work out
- 7 back 6 1 out 4 on 8 up, down 2 through, on 5 off
 - 6 on 3 back

Unit 76

- 1 1 They're highly intelligent boys.
 - 2 It's bitterly cold outside.
 - 3 That man is completely/totally mad.
- 4 Paula's been seriously ill.
 - Their profits have fallen sharply.
 - 6 We desperately need to earn more money.
 - 7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.
- 4 travelled 2 1 risen
 - feel 5 2 injured
 - 6 convinced/sure 3 sorry, forgot
- 4 completely/totally 3 1 vitally
 - 5 bitterly 2 highly
- 3 desperately 6 terribly
- 4 15 25 3D 4S 5D 6S 7S 8S
- 5 rather 5 1 On the whole 2 mainly/mostly 6 actually
 - 3 approximately/about 7 rarely 4 largely/mostly 8 fairly

- 1 11 2F 3I 4F 5N 6I 7N
- 4 purchase 2 1 fetch
 - 5 out of the blue 2 commence 6 keep an eye on 3 stuff
- 5 turned 3 stuff 6 sort, neutral 4 idiom 2 vague
- 4 1D 2S 3S 4D 5S 6S 7D
- 5 1 Yeah
 - 2 Hang on. / Hold on.
 - 3 What's up?
 - 4 I haven't a clue.
 - 5 How are things? / How's it going?
 - 6 What've you been up to?
 - 7 Cheers.
- 4 up, hang/hold 6 1 care
 - 2 going
 - 3 give/lend, problem
- 8 1g 2c 3f 4b 5a 6d
- 9 1 joking
 - 2 disaster

 - 3 tent
 - 4 loads/lots/masses, nonsense/rubbish
 - 7 picking 5 better
 - 8 like 6 for

- 1 1 No.
 - 2 As a deposit for the cottage.
 - 3 Arriving.
 - 4 Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.
 - 5 Her own address.
 - 6 Mr Ellison's address.
 - 7 Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.
 - 8 Dear Mr Ellison
 - 9 Yours sincerely
- 10 No, because it's a formal letter.

21/ 2x 3/ 4/ 5x 6/

- 3 1 I look forward to hearing from you.
 - 2 If there's a problem, please don't hesitate to ring me.
 - 3 I enclose a photocopy of my identity card with the application form.
 - 4 I would be grateful if you could phone me about the meeting.
 - 5 Further to your letter of 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
 - 6 I would appreciate it if you could help me.
 - 7 Please let me know in particular whether/ if there is a beach nearby.
 - 8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a deposit for the rental of the room.
- 4 1 Further
- 7 whether
- 2 enclose
- 8 nearby / close by
- 3 deposit
- 9 further
- 4 commence 5 grateful
- 10 hesitate 11 sincerely
- 6 appreciate

Unit 79

- 1 1 m 7 cl 13 g/gm 14 mm 2 p 8 kg 3 km 9 cm 15 £ 4 ml 10 mg 16 \$
 - 5 t 11 c/ct
 - 6 mph 12 kph
- 2 1 kph, mph 3 gm
 - 2 mm p or c/ct 4
- 3 1 vet 5 gym
- 9 pub 2 pop/pop music 6 plane 10 deli 11 lab
 - 3 fridge 7 board 4 bike 8 paper
- 4 ▶ lab
 - 1 deli, fridge 3 pub, TV/telly
 - 4 flu 2 ads, paper
- 5 1 ATM, PIN 9 EU 5 UEFA
 - 10 UN 2 CV 6 IT
 - 11 ISP 3 ID 7 AIDS
 - 4 VAT 8 DVD, UFOs

- 1 1 sidewalk 3 datebook 5 railroad 2 cellphone 4 drugstore
- 2 1 garbage 5 attorney 2 subway gasoline
 - 3 closet 7 transportation 4 candy 8 billfold
- 3 1 can 4 fries
- 2 theater trip 3 store 6 highway
- 4 1 holiday vacation
 - 2 lift elevator
 - 3 rubbish garbage/trash
 - 4 handbag purse
 - 5 diary datebook
 - 6 sweets candy
 - 7 lorry truck
 - 8 biscuit cookie
 - 9 tap faucet
- 10 pavement sidewalk
- 5 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.
 - 2 I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.
 - 3 I go to a movie theater about twice a month.
 - 4 The last movie I saw was No Reservations.
 - 5 I sometimes eat French fries, when I go for a beer with friends.
 - 6 I went to Seoul on my last vacation.
 - 7 The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.
- 8 I left high school eighteen years ago.

Answer key to review units

Learning

Unit 1

- 1 1 a translation (of this), please?
 - 2 (some) revision for an exam
 - 3 I repeat
 - 4 his explanation (of it)
 - 5 a guess
 - 6 a record of new words in a book
 - 7 a chat (about it)
 - 8 the pronunciation of that word
- 2 1 recognize
- 7 translation 8 pronounce
- 2 gist
- 9 make
- 3 go through 4 make a note of
- 10 pronunciation
- 5 guess
- 11 experiment
- 6 context
- 12 foreign

Unit 2

- 1 1 complex/complicated 2 expand, aim
- 5 range 6 contain
- 3 fluently
- 7 specialized
- 4 detail
- 8 appropriate
- 2 1 frustrating
- 6 getting
- 2 motivated 3 while
- aware 8 express 9 accurate
- 4 progress
- 5 encouraging

Unit 3

- 1 1 definitions
- 7 stress
- 2 entry 3 select
- 8 syllable 9 idiom
- 4 instance
- 10 expression
- 5 symbols
- 11 style
- 6 stressed
- 12 offend

Unit 4

- 1 1 a colon
- 5 an exclamation mark
- 2 a full stop 3 a semicolon
- an apostrophe 7 a question mark
- 4 quotation marks
- 2 1 separates
- 3 interrupts
- 2 details, list
- 4 instead, connected

People

Unit 5

- 5 figure 1 1 expecting tanned 2 contact wrinkles 7 3 neat
 - shape 4 tell 8
 - 4 appearance, shape
- 2 1 shoulders 2 bald, losing
- 5 shaven
- 3 scar
- 6 plump

Unit 6

- 1 generous, generosity, mean honest, honesty, dishonest tolerant, tolerance, intolerant patient, patience, impatient arrogant, arrogance, modest hard-working, lazy
- 2 1 crazy
- 4 aggressive
- 2 boring/dull
- 5 sense of humour
- 3 lazy
- 6 cheerful

Unit 7

- 1 1 OPP insensitive 4 OPP hides
 - 2 SYN fed up
- 5 SYN scared stiff
- 3 SYN astonished 6 SYN thrilled
- 2 1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. terrified I scared stiff or He was furious delighted with me, and
 - I was thrilled. 2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. thrilled/delighted
 - I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. (logical)
 - I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled. miserable I fed up
 - She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. (logical)
 - 6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive. moody

- 1 Petros and I have nothing ^ common. in
- 2 How did you get ^ know her? to
- 3 Hike Imran; we get ^ very well. on
- 4 Don't forget to keep ^ touch. in
- You can't rely her brother. on
- I don't think they're ^ a relationship at the moment. in

2	1	sociable	5	common
	2	realize	6	rows/arguments
	3	loval	7	regrets

4 together 8 reliable

Unit 9

- 1 1 immigrant 2 stepmother
 - 3 ancestor 4 adopt
 - 5 look like sb 6 take after sb
 - 7 get divorced / get a divorce
 - 8 generation
- 2 1 immigrants 6 up previous 2 only 3 parent 8 half 4 brought 9 step 5 divorced 10 step

Unit 10

1	D	R	1	N	K	A	Т	0	Α	S	T	
	С				w				C			M
	Ε				E				0	R		Α
	R	1	N	G	D				U	Е		K
	E			G	D				P	C		Ε
	М	Α	R	R	1	Α	G	E	L	Ε		Α
0.00000	0			0	N				E	Р		S
MARKETER	N			0	G	G	U	Ε	S	T		P
	Υ			М						-1		E
	Н	0	N	E	Y	М	0	0	N	0		E
										N		C
S S P P S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S		В	R	1	D	E	S	M	Α	1	D	Н

2	1	funeral	8	civil
	2	widower	9	chose
	3	buried	10	bride
	4	mourners	11	best
4	5	inherited	12	reception
	6	choose	13	anniversary
	7	ceremony/wedding	14	celebrate

The world around us

Unit 11

	1	reach	8	discovered
	2	approximately	9	invented
	3	earth	10	space
	4	planet	11	satellites
	5	system	12	circle
	6	exists	13	universe
	7	scientists	14	roughly
2	1	go/travel	5	studies
	2	not	6	true
	3	circle	7	different
	4	test	8	exist

Unit 12

1 1 wave

	2	puddle	5	flood
	3	float	6	steep
2	1	narrow	5	horizon
	2	surface	6	rough
	3	protection	7	deep
	4	sank/capsized	8	steep
3	1	socks rocks	6	cave wave
	2	chip ship	7	floor flood
	3	sleep steep	8	pink sink
	4	pony pond	9	blows flows
		boots boats	10	peach beach

4 ocean

10 peach beach

Unit 13

ct
e
me, affect
d
ially
pear

Unit 14

1	1	volcanic eruption	6	tidal wave
	2	hurricane	7	volcanic eruption
	3	tidal wave	8	drought
		drought	9	hurricane
	5	earthquake		
2	1	d 2g 3b 4h	5 c	6a 7e

Unit 15

1 Wild animals: lion, gorilla, leopard Farm animals: calf, donkey, goat Insects: fly, bee, mosquito Sea creatures: whale, shark

- 2 Some snakes are poisonous. Leopards have spots. Elephants have a trunk. Eagles have a beak. Bears have fur. Bees can sting. Goats have horns.
- Down 3 Across 2 wings 1 mice 5 bone 3 snake 4 poison 6 vary 7 harmless 8 camel 9 shark 9 sting
 - 10 monkey 11 calf 12 weight 13 spider

Daily life

Unit 16

1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli, leeks Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

Unit 17

1 1	not	6	oil or fat
2	less	7	without
3	good	8	cut
	bad	9	weight
5	fatter	10	cooking

Unit 18

1	1	receipt	7	broke
	2	well off	8	bargain
	3	the sales	9	debt
	4	waste	10	reduction
	5	change	11	amount
			12	huge
	T	ne phrase in the	grey	squares is 'cost a
		rtune'.		

Unit 19

1	1	fall	6	sleepy/exhausted/tired
		go/get		habits
		lack	8	nap
	4	irritable	9	night
	5	concentrate	10	mind

Unit 20

1 bleed dizzy prevent symptom infection injury develop thoroughly

Unit 21

1 1f 2a 3h 4d 5c 6e 7b

Unit 22

- 1 Correct answers 1 cancelled, held up 2 the outskirts, the way 3 a vehicle, an ambulance 4 a coach, a van 5 broke down, crashed 6 injured, delayed 7 a valid ticket, a day return 8 gets in, is due
- 5 skid 2 1 hire 6 stop pick 7 end 3 turn 4 get

Unit 23

1	1	style	5	button
	2	bracelet	6	suede
	3	dress	7	underwear
	4	vest		
2	1	versatile	4	outfit
	2	matches		jewellery
	3	suits	6	materials/fabrics

Getting things done

- 1 Is it painful when you bite?
- 2 I will probably have to take the tooth out.
- 3 This is the tooth which is causing the pain.
- 4 When did you last have a check-up?
- 5 Can you come back to the surgery tomorrow?
- 6 Just ask the receptionist to make an appointment for you.
- 7 There's a hole in this tooth you need a filling.
- 8 I'm going to examine your teeth and then decide what you need.

- 1 treat
- 2 concerned
- 3 surgeon
- 4 straightaway
- 5 benefit
- 6 take care of / care for someone
- 7 get over something / recover from something
- 8 patient
- 9 ward
- 10 risk

Unit 26

- 1 1 stain, remove
 - 2 out of, fix/repair/mend
 - 3 leaking
 - 4 mend/repair
 - 5 working, bulbs
 - 6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend
- 2 1 hammer
- 5 rope
- 2 drill
- 6 string/wire
- 3 screwdriver
- 7 glue
- 4 scissors
- 8 Sellotape/glue/string

Unit 27

- 1 broom
- 4 throw
- 2 bucket
- 5 dust/polish
- 3 vacuum cleaner 6 wipe

Unit 28

- 1 I had my hair cut last week.
- 2 I just want a trim, please.
- 3 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.
- 4 Are you letting your hair grow?
- 5 Can you pass me the scissors?
- 6 She's got a parting on the left.
- 7 I'm having my hair coloured tomorrow.
- 8 Can I borrow your hairdryer?

Describing things

Unit 29

- 1 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6F
- 2 1 filthy
- 5 handy
- 2 lively 3 pity
- graffiti 6 begging

- 4 space
- 8 disadvantage

Unit 30

- 1 Possible answers
 - It's a semi-detached house.
 - There's a chimney on the roof.
 - The cellar is used for storage.
 - There's a lawn in the garden.
 - The drive leads to the front door.

226 REVIEW ANSWER KEY

Unit 31

- 1 1 a wooden fence 5 a woollen blanket 2 a rubber tyre a cardboard box 6
 - 3 a wax candle 7 iron railings
- 4 a gold medal 8 a concrete bridge
- 2 1 round 4 square
 - 2 four 5 parallel
 - 3 horizontal 6 straight

Unit 32

11h 2f 3a 4d 5g 6b 7i 8e

Unit 33

- 1 1 artist 5 distance 6 shade 2 scene
 - 3 foreground hand
 - 8 ignoring 4 just

Unit 34

- 1 1 smash burst 2 tear sighed 8 3 fold shake
 - 4 sprayed 9 dragging 5 crying

Social and political issues

Unit 35

- 1 1 criminal 5 thief 2 murderer 6 shoplifter 3 mugger 7 robber
 - 4 burglar/thief
- 2 1 stabbed 5 killed 6 violence 2 obey
 - 3 commit 7 serious
 - 4 the museum, stole 8 attacked

Unit 36

- 1 c1 h2 g3 e4 b5 d6 f7 a8 i9
- 2 1 place 5 fine, sentence
 - 2 prove 6 may/might 7 evidence 3 accused
 - 8 arrest 4 witness

Unit 37

1 1 obesity 5 heart attack 2 allergy 6 cancer 3 stroke 7 arthritis 4 asthma 8 diabetes

- 2 1 She has suffered from asthma for years.
 - 2 He had a heart attack and died last week.
 - 3 My grandfather is going deaf so I have to shout to him.
 - 4 It's an infectious disease so he can't mix with other people.
 - 5 The doctor told me to breathe in deeply through my nose.
 - 6 She is allergic to some medicines.
 - 7 Obesity can lead to heart disease.
 - 8 He suffers from memory loss and can't remember where he puts things.

- 1 1 g 2 e 3 i 4 b 5 k 6 a 7 c 8 h 9 f 10 d
- 2 1 objective 5 politician 2 oppose 6 power 3 priority 7 consist
 - 4 parliament

Unit 39

- 1 1 Yes 5 Yes 2 No 6 No 3 Yes 7 Yes 4 Yes 8 No
- 2 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6D 7D 8S

Unit 40

- 1 assassination, released
- 2 president, attempted, assassinate
- 3 Revolution
- 4 established
- 5 discovered
- 6 Princess
- 7 republic
- 8 gained

Media and entertainment

Unit 41

- 1 1 threats 4 current
 2 declined 5 protesting
 3 scares 6 daily
- 2 1 I enjoy all sorts of cultural events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
 - 2 I think he must receive a pension because he's nearly 70.
 - 3 I saw a strange newspaper headline the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
 - 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the editor for three years.
 - 5 The government claims that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.

6 My cousin's a newspaper journalist; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

- 1 1 editing 5 incredible
 2 movie 6 plot
 3 role 7 disappointing
 4 winner 8 swearing
 - The word in the grey squares is 'director'.

Unit 43

1 1 automatic 5 realistic 2 abstract 6 landscape 3 studio 7 sort 4 out of 8 skilled

Unit 44

1 1 conductor P 7 trumpet
2 lead singer P 8 melody
3 keyboard player P 9 flautist P
4 composer P 10 guitarist P
5 flute 11 saxophone
6 band P 12 solo artist P

Unit 45

- 1 1 ground, stadium 4 track, circuit 2 court, umpire 5 club, referee 3 coach, manager 6 deep, standard
- 2 1 constructing 5 interrupted 2 capacity 6 crowd 3 supported 7 championship 8 length, width

Unit 46

1 1e 2h 3b 4c 5f 6i 7d

Unit 47

1 1 Yes 5 No 2 Yes 6 No 3 No 7 No 4 Yes 8 No

- 1 1 Everyone parades through the main streets in the town.
 - 2 The people in the neighbourhood where I live are very friendly.
 - 3 It's a two-day festival, which we have every year.
 - 4 It was quite a wild party; we had great fun.
 - 5 Do you ever take part / participate in parades?
 - 6 I enjoy the carnival: it means a lot to me.
 - 7 She wore a really striking dress with gold flowers on it.
 - 8 We all had to throw a ball and try to hit the moving object.

Work and study

Unit 49

- 1 1 You have to follow his instructions.
 - 2 Don't communicate with anyone.
 - 3 Your attitude is important.
 - 4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
 - 5 Devote ten minutes to making notes.
 - 6 He would never cheat in an exam.
 - 7 If you don't succeed, try again.
 - 8 Are dictionaries essential?

Unit 50

- 1 Correct answers
 - 1 seminar, lecture
 - 2 at home, away from home
 - 3 Professors, Tutors
 - 4 take out a loan, try to get a scholarship
 - 5 have a debate, take notes
- 2 1 Our seminar started on time at 10.00.
 - 2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall of residence.
 - 3 How much were the tuition fees for your summer course?
 - 4 We had to hurry but we arrived just in time for the beginning of the lecture.
 - 5 At the moment, she's **doing** some medical research as part of her studies.
 - 6 I would like to have the chance/ opportunity to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
 - 7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous assessment.
 - 8 Do you study away from home?

Unit 51

1 1 vacancy 5 assess
2 advice 6 require
3 acknowledge 7 automatically
4 valid 8 process

2 1 apply 5 references 2 interview 6 candidates 3 feedback 7 in 4 contact 8 permit

Unit 52

- 1 carpenter/plumber
- 2 nanny
- 3 civil servant / estate agent
- 4 electrician/mechanic
- 5 sales rep / travel agent
- 6 plumber/carpenter
- 2 1 experience, profession
 - 2 arrangements, agent
 - 3 servant, career, service
 - 4 training, qualifications
 - 5 products, rep

Unit 53

- 1 1 involved 7 resign
 2 challenging 8 elsewhere
 3 promoted 9 work
 4 dealing 10 charge
 5 transferred 11 responsibility
 - 6 complaints
- 2 1 appoint 6 duties 2 reward 7 clerical 3 notice 8 solve 4 unemployed 9 handle
 - 5 prospects
- The word in the grey squares is 'promotion'.

Unit 54

1 1 stressful 5 shift
2 right 6 overtime
3 trade union 7 bonus
4 entitled 8 strike

Business

Unit 55

- 1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital
- 2 1 rose slightly
 - 2 fell/dropped sharply
 - 3 remained unchanged/stable
 - 4 dropped/fell by
 - 5 fluctated
 - 6 slight increase/growth

- 11G 2B 3B 4G 5B 6G 7G
- 2 1 even 5 quality 2 growth 6 market 3 risks 7 reputation 4 rivals 8 shares

1e 2h 3g 4b 5a 6d 7c 8f

2 1 Innovation 5 contract 2 crucial 6 potential 3 research 7 feedback 4 invest 8 diversify

Unit 58

1 danger/threat advice/tip ability/skill plan/strategy aim/objective reply/response data/information need/demand

2 1 strengths, weaknesses 5 objectives 2 opportunities 6 ignore 7 forecasts 4 assume 8 evaluate

Social English

Unit 59

1 1 definitely go 4 he'll go 2 doubt (if/that) 5 likely 3 to be a disaster 6 pessimistic

Unit 60

1 except 5 completely
2 exactly 6 apart
3 alike 7 main
4 compared 8 comparison

Unit 61

1 1 make 5 to 2 afraid 6 tied

3 How/What 7 postpone / put off 4 available/free 8 confirm

Unit 62

1 1 keen 5 all 2 fond 6 bear/stand 3 mad 7 keen

4 adore/love 8 loathe/detest

2 Answers from a British person

 I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.

2 I'm fond of the people I work with.

3 I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.

4 Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!

5 In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.

6 Lagree. I can't stand waiting in queues.

7 In fact I like cheese very much.

8 I hate cold weather, especially if it's wet as well.

Unit 63

1 1 not in favour of, against

2 is to blame, is his fault

3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned

4 in principle, in theory 5 is opposed to, is against

6 I believe, I reckon

2 1 in favour 5 consider 2 fault 6 in principle 3 sensible 7 support

4 of

Unit 64

1 1 He disobeys me.

2 They force us to work hard.

3 You aren't allowed to eat here. or Eating here isn't allowed.

4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. or Wearing a uniform is compulsory.

5 She let us sit down.

6 The boss insists that we go.

7 His behaviour in class is terrible.

8 He punishes us if we're late.

Unit 65

1 1 fact 7 afraid

2 expecting 8 actually/apparently

3 definitely 9 smoothly 4 intending 10 going 5 hope 11 guess

6 intention

Unit 66

1 1U 2U 3H 4U 5H 6U 7H 8U 9U

2 1 There's no point in going out.

2 You should speak to her in person.

3 I would ask an expert for advice.

4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?

5 She joined the tennis club.

6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.

7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.

8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? or Did she mention the divorce to you?

Unit 67

1 1 mind 4 case

2 out 5 assistance/help 3 beware 6 careful

Language

Unit 68

1 1 because 5 though 2 all the same 6 however 3 still 7 so 4 furthermore 8 whereas

2 Text 1

1 result 3 provided

2 more Text 2

4 due 6 as/since 5 addition 7 However/ Nevertheless

Unit 69

1 1 rare, common

2 adequate, inadequate

3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary

4 urban, rural

5 crowded, deserted

6 artificial, real 7 rude, polite

8 satisfied, dissatisfied

9 firm, soft

10 effective, ineffective

Unit 70

1 1 underneath

2 nowadays / these days

3 throughout

4 eventually

5 onto

6 occasionally

7 towards

8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

Unit 71

1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a rush

ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend

on, on board

OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of, approve of

Unit 72

1 1 non-acceptable unacceptable

2 unrelevant irrelevant

3 dissecure insecure

4 an unalcoholic a non-alcoholic

5 disfasten unfasten

6 unhonest dishonest

7 inpatient impatient

Unit 73

2 1 judgement 5 preference 2 definition 6 cruelty 3 reaction 7 extension 4 powerful 8 harmless

Unit 74

1 1 I don't recall meeting your parents.

2 He refused to leave.

3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.

4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.

5 She regrets moving to London.

6 Boris reminds me of your brother.

7 He blamed me for the mistake.

8 I tend to work in the evening.

9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.

10 She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75

1 1 I take after my mother.

2 why don't you give it away?*

3 I don't get on very well with my boss.

4 just leave it out

5 put his coat on / put on his coat

6 I can't work out

7 switch the TV on

8 go over it

Unit 76

1 1 sharply 5 rarely
2 strongly 6 widely
3 roughly 7 seriously
4 rather 8 totally

Styles of English

Unit 77

- 1 1 are things / 's it going?
 - 2 up to
 - 3 much
 - 4 up
 - 5 turned her down
 - 6 You're joking! / You must be joking!
 - 7 reckons
 - 8 rubbish
 - 9 loads/masses
 - 10 Yeah
 - 11 I'd better be off
- 12 Cheers!
- 2 1 fancy 4 hurry up 2 reckon 5 Tell me a joke
 - 3 hang on 6 keep an eye on someone

Unit 78

whether 1 1 Sir or Madam in particular 2 regards hearing 8 3 Yours don't hesitate 4 further 10 All the best 5 enclose 7 whether/if 2 1 Further 8 appreciate 2 deposit 9 hesitate 3 commencing 10 further 4 further/more 11 forward 5 nearby / close by 12 sincerely 6 grateful

Unit 79

- 1 1 identity card
 - 2 United Nations
 - 3 personal identification number
 - 4 value added tax
 - 5 curriculum vitae
 - 6 internet service provider
 - 7 information technology
- 2 1 Yes, fridge 6 Yes, flu 2 No 7 Yes, lab 3 Yes, vet 8 No 4 No 9 Yes, gym
 - 5 Yes, ad/advert 10 No

Unit 80

1 tap faucet
chemist drugstore
biscuit cookie
lift elevator
petrol gasoline
wardrobe closet
diary datebook
rubbish garbage
pavement sidewalk
lorry truck

Spotlight boxes

Uni	t Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1A	formal	10	44A	The suffix -ist	116
1B	conversation, chat, discussion,		44B	living, alive, live	117
	argument	11	45A	Suffix -er and player	118
2B	contain and include	13	45B	long, wide, deep	119
3A	stress and emphasize	14	46A	record	120
5B	-ish	21	46B	defeat	121
6	crazy, mad, stupid	22	47B	Compound adjectives with well	123
7A	absolutely and very	24	48A	festival, carnival, parade	124
7B	sensitive	25	50B	in time, on time	131
A8	friend	26	51	Formal language	132
8B	have a row / an argument	27	52A	career, job, profession	134
10A	wedding and marriage;		53A	dismiss, sack, fire	136
	bride and groom	30	54	time off	138
11B	discover or invent	37	55A	finance	142
12A	cause v, N	38	56A	Prefixes over- and under-	144
13B	effect N, affect V	42	56B	market	145
15C	cows and cattle	48	57	Verbs of change	146
17A	diet	54	58A	skill	148
21B	keep	63	60	compare v, comparison N	153
22B	way	65	61	be supposed to, be meant to	
23A	jewellery and material	67		+ verb	154
24	dread, look forward to	73	62	Verb + -ing	155
25	enough	74	63A	Giving opinions	156
26A	Nouns	76	65A	actually	160
26B	repair, fix, or mend sth	77	66A	point	162
28	have/get sth done	79	66B	bother	163
29B	area, region, district, part	83	68A	in addition, moreover, furthermore	e 168
30	passage, corridor, hall	84	68B	still	169
31A	Noun + noun	86	68C	purpose	170
31B	shape, -shaped	87	69B	-ed/-ing endings	172
32A	can + sense verbs	88	70A	over	174
32B	like	89	71A	in the end and at the end	176
33	painting and drawing	90	71B	depend on sb/sth	177
34B	loud, out loud / aloud, silent,		72A	Prefixes	178
	silence	93	73B	Adjectives ending in -ful and -less	181
35A	crime	96	75A	Separable phrasal verbs	184
35B	steal and rob	97	75B	Different meanings	185
37B	go + adjective	101		rather, fairly, quite, pretty	187
38B	oppose, opposition	103		stuff	191
41B	Verbs and nouns with the			cheers	192
	same form	111	13	joke	193
42B	indeed	113		further, further to	194
43B	photography, photograph, etc.	115	80	highway, freeway, expressway	199

Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers

ATM /,er ,ti: 'em/ 79 abbreviation /ə,bri:vi'er[n/ 4 absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli/ 7 abstract /'æbstrækt/ 43 academic / ækə'demik/ 50 accelerate /ək'seləreit/ 21 accelerator /ək'seləreitə(r)/ 21 acceptable /ək'septəbl/ 72 access /'ækses/ 71 accessory /ək'sesəri/ 23 accident /'æksidənt/ 22 accurate /'ækjərət/ 2 accurately /'ækjərətli/ 2 accuse /ə'kju:z/ 74 accused as in the accused /ə'kiu:zd/ 36 achieve /ə'tfi:v/ 42, 46 achievement /ə'tfi:vmənt/ 42, 46 acknowledge /ək'nplidz/ 51 acknowledgement /ək'nplidmənt/ 51 actually /'æktfuəli/ 65, 76 ad (= advertisement) /æd/ 79 adapt /ə'dæpt/ 57 add /æd/ 17 addition as in in addition /ə'dı[n/ 68 adequate /'ædikwət/ 56, 69 admiration / ædmə reisn/ 44 admire /əd'marə(r)/ 44 admit /əd'mɪt/ 74 adopt /ə'dopt/ 9 adore /ə'dɔ:(r)/ 62 advance as in in advance /əd'va:ns/ 71 advantage /əd'va:ntidy/ 29 advantage as in take advantage of /əd'va:ntidy/ 71 advert /'ædvs:t/ 79 advertise /'ædvətaɪz/ 58 advertising /'ædvətaızın/ 58 advice /ad'vars/ 51 advise /ad'varz/ 51 afraid as in I'm afraid ... /ə'freid/ 61 afraid as in I'm afraid not/so /a'freid/ 65

affect /ə'fekt/ 13

afford /ə'fɔ:d/ 18 after a while /a:ftər ə 'waıl/ 2 against /ə'genst/ 63 against the law /ə, genst őə 'lo:/ 35 aggression /ə'gresn/ 6 aggressive /ə'gresiv/ 6 ahead /ə'hed/ 57 aid N, v /erd/ 41 AIDS /eidz/ 79 aim /em/ 2, 38, 58 aircraft /'eəkra:ft/ 67 alarm N /ə'la:m/ 19 alarmed /ə'la:md/ 69 alarming /ə'la:mɪŋ/ 69 album (= music collection) /'ælbəm/ 44 album as in photo album /'ælbəm/ 43 alcoholic / ælkə holik/ 72 alike /ə'laɪk/ 60 alive /ə'larv/ 44 all over /.o:1 'auva(r)/ 70 all over the world ,o:l ,əuvə ðə 'wa:ld/ 45 all the best /o:1 do 'best/ 78 all the same / o:l do 'sem/ 68 allergic /ə'la:dʒɪk/ 37 allergy /'ælədzi/ 37 allowed /ə'laud/ 64 allow /ə'lau/ 64 ally /'ælar/ 39 aloud /ə'laud/ 34 alphabet /'ælfəbet/ 47 alphabetical / ælfə'betikl/ 47 already /o:l'redi/ 70 alter /'o:ltə(r)/ 57 alternative /o:l'ta:nətɪv/ 4 although /ɔ:l'ðəu/ 68 amateur /'æmətə(r)/ 46 amateur photographer / emətə fə'togrəfə(r)/ 43 amazed /ə'merzd/ 7,69 amazing /ə'meizin/ 69 ambition /æm'bısn/ 6 ambitious /æm'bifəs/ 6 ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 22 among /ə'mʌŋ/ 70 amongst /ə'mʌŋst/ 70

amount /ə'maunt/ 18 amused /ə'mju:zd/ 69 amusing /ə'mju:zɪŋ/ 69 analyse /'ænəlarz/ 11 analysis /ə'næləsis/ 11 ancestor /'ænsestə(r)/ 9 anniversary / ænr'v3:səri/ 10 announce /ə'nauns/ 38 announcement /ə'naunsmənt/ 38 annual /'ænjuəl/ 55 antisocial / ænti'səufl/ 8 anxious /'ænkfəs/ 7 apart /ə'pa:t/ 60 apartment /ə'pa:tmənt/ 80 apostrophe /ə'postrəfi/ 4 appalling /ə'pɔ:lɪŋ/ 66 apparently /ə'pærəntli/ 63 appeal N, v /ə'pi:l/ 44 appear /ə'pɪə(r)/ 32 appearance /ə'pɪərəns/ 5 application / æplr'kerfn/ 51 apply /ə'plaɪ/ 51 appoint /ə'pɔmt/ 53 appointment /ə'pəmtmənt/ 24 appreciate as in I would appreciate it if ... /ə'pri:fiert/ 78 approach /ə'prəutf/ 48 appropriate /ə'prəupriət/ 2 approve /ə'pru:v/ 71 approximately /ə'proksmətli/ 11,76 apricot /'eiprikot/ 16 area /'eəriə/ 29 argue /'a:gju:/ 8 argument /'a:gjument/ 1,8 army /'a:mi/ 39 arrangements /ə'remdmənts/ 52 arrest /ə'rest/ 36 arrogance /'ærəgəns/ 6 arrogant /'ærəgənt/ 6 arthritic /α:'θrιτιk/ 37 arthritis /α:'θraɪtəs/ 37 artichoke /'a:trtfəuk/ 16 artificial /a:tr'frs1/69 artist /'a:tist/ 33 as /æz, əz/ 68

as a result /əz ə rī'zʌlt/ 68 as an alternative /əz ən o:l'ta:nətrv/ 61 as far as I'm concerned ... /əz ˌfɑ:r əz 'am kən,s3:nd/ 63 as long as /əz 'lon əz/ 68 ask as in if you ask me ... /a:sk/ 63 asleep /ə'sli:p/ 19 asparagus /ə'spærəgəs/ 16 assassinate /ə'sæsmert/ 40 assassination /ə,sæsı'neısn/ 40 assault /ə'so:lt/ 35 assess /ə'ses/ 51 assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 51 asset /'æset/ 56 assistance /ə'sıstəns/ 67 assume /ə'sju:m/ 58,65 assumption /ə'sampfn/ 58 asthma /'æsmə/ 37 astonished /ə'stonift/ 7,69 astonishing /ə'stonıʃıŋ/ 69 at first /ət 'fa:st/ 71 at home /at 'haum/ 50 at least /ət 'li:st/ 71 at the end /ət ði 'end/ 71 athlete /'æθli:t/ 45 athletics /æθ'letiks/ 45, 46 atmosphere /'ætməsfiə(r)/ 13 atrocious /ə'trəufəs/ 66 attack N /ə'tæk/ 15 attack v /o'tæk/ 15, 35 attacker /ə'tækə(r)/ 35 attempt n, v /ə'tempt/ 40 attend /ə'tend/ 50,51 attention /ə'tenfn/ 47 attic /'ætɪk/ 30 attitude /'ætɪtju:d/ 49 attorney /ə'ta:ni/ 80 attract sb's attention /ə trækt ... ə ten sn/ 47 author /'o:θə(r)/ 47 autobiography /,o:təbar'ngrəfi/ 47 automatic /,o:tə'mætɪk/ 43 automatically /,o:tə'mætıkli/ 51 available /ə'veiləbl/ 61 average / everity 15 avocado / ævə ka:dəu/ 16 avoid /ə'void/ 3, 22 awake as in wide awake /ə'werk/ 19 award n /ə'wo:d/ 42 aware /ə'weə(r)/ 2

away from home /ə,wei frəm 'həum/ 50 axe n, v /æks/ 41

BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /,bi: ,bi: 'si:/ 79 back /bæk/ 70 back sth up /,bæk ... 'Ap/ 66 background /'bækgraund/ 33 backward(s) /'bækwədz/ 20 bad diet / bæd 'darət/ 17 bad for you /'bæd fə ju:/ 17 bake /beik/ 17 balanced diet /,bælenst 'daret/ 17 bald /bo:ld/ 5 ban v /bæn/ 64 band /bænd/ 44 bandage /'bændidy/ 20 bang N /bæn/ 26 bang v /bæŋ/ 20 bank loan /'bænk loun/ 55 bank /bænk/ 12 bargain /'ba:gm/ 18 barrier /'bæriə(r)/ 67 barrister /'bæristə(r)/ 80 based /beist/ 51 basement /'beisment/ 30 basic /'beisik/ 69 basil /'bæzl/ 16 bass as in sea bass /bæs/ 16 battle /'bætl/ 39 be bothered / bi 'bood/ 66 be going to /,bi 'goun to/ 65 be keen on /,bi 'ki:n ,pn/ 62 be meant to /.bi 'ment tə/ 61 be stuck / bi 'stak/ 22 be supposed to /,bi sə'pəust tə/ 61 be to blame for sth /,bi tə 'blem fə ,.../ 63 be up to sb /bi 'ap to .../ 64 beach /bi:tf/ 12 beak /bi:k/ 15 bear N /bea(r)/ 15 bear as in can't bear /beə(r)/ 62 beat /bi:t/ 46 beauty contest /'bju:ti_kontest/ 48 because /bi'koz, bi'kəz/ 68 bee /bi:/ 15 beetroot /'bi:tru:t/ 16 beg /beg/ 29

behave /br'herv/ 64

behaviour /bi'heivjə(r)/ 64 believe /br'li:v/ 63 belong /bi'lon/ 18 belt /belt/ 23 beneath /br'ni:θ/ 70 benefit /'benıfıt/ 25 beside /br'sard/ 70 best man / best 'mæn/ 10 best wishes /'best wistz/ 78 better as in I'd better be off /'beta(r)/ 77 beware /bi'weə(r)/ 67 beyond /br'jond/ 70 bike /bark/ 79 billfold /'bilfəvld/ 80 biography /bar'pgrəfi/ 47 bite /bart/ 24 bitterly /'bitəli/ 76 bitterly cold / bitəli 'kəuld/ 13 blame as in be to blame /blem/ 63 blame v /blem/ 74 bland /bland/ 32 blanket /'blænknt/ 31 bleed /bli:d/ 20 blind /blamd/ 37 block /blok/ 22 blood /blad/ 20 blossom /'blosem/ 48 blouse /blauz/ 23 blow-dry /'blou drai/ 28 blue as in out of the blue /blu:/ 77 board /bo:d/ 79 board as in on board /bo:d/ 71 boat /bout/ 12 boil /boil/ 17 bomb /bom/ 39 bomb scare /'bom skeə(r)/ 41 bone /bəun/ 15 bonnet /'bonit/ 21 bonus /'bəunəs/ 54 book /buk/ 47 boot (of a car) /bu:t/ 21 boot (item of clothing) /bu:t/ 23 bother /'boðə(r)/ 66 bottom /'botem/ 33 bound to /'baund tə/ 59 box /boks/ 31 boxer /'boksə(r)/ 45 bra /bra:/ 23 bracelet /'bresslət/ 23 brackets /'brækits/ 4 brain /brem/ 37 brake N. v /breik/ 21

brand /brænd/ 56 break down / breik 'daon/ 22 break even / breik 'i:vn/ 56 break into /'breik .intə/ 35 break out / breik 'aut/ 39 break the law /,breik ða 'lo:/ 35 break a record /breik ə 'rekə:d/ 46 breath /bre0/ 34 breathe /bri:ð/ 34, 37 breeze /bri:z/ 13 breezy /'bri:zi/ 13 brick /brik/ 30 bride /braid/ 10 bridesmaid /'braidzmeid/ 10 bridge /brids/ 31 bright /brait/ 33 brightness /'braitnes/ 33 brilliant /'briliant/ 46 bring sb up / brin ... 'Ap/ 9 broad shoulders /,bro:d 'souldaz/ 5 broccoli /'brokəli/ 16 broke /brauk/ 18 broom /bru:m/ 27 browse /brauz/ 47 bruised /bru:zd/ 20 bucket /'bakit/ 27 build /bild/ 3 built-in flash /, bilt , in 'flæs/ 43 built-up / bilt 'Ap/ 29 bulb as in light bulb /balb/ 26 bull /bʊl/ 15 burglar /'bs:glo(r)/ 35 burglary /'ba:gləri/ 35 burial /'beriəl/ 10 burn /b3:n/ 20 burst /ba:st/ 12 burst into tears /,ba:st into 'tiəz/ 34 burst out laughing /ba:st aut 'la:fin/ 34 bury /'beri/ 10 business trip /'biznəs trip/ 22 busy /'bizi/ 69 button /'batn/ 23 by /bai/ 70 by chance / bar 'tfo:ns/ 71

c (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79 cl (centilitre(s)) /'sentuli:tə(z)/ 79 cm (centimetre(s)) /'sentmi:tə(z)/ 79 ct (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79

CV (curriculum vitae) /,si: 'vi:/ 79 cabinet /'kæbmət/ 34 calf /ka:f/ 15, 16 calf's liver /'ka:fs |livə(r)/ 16 calm /ka:m/ 66 camel /'kæml/ 15 campaign /kæm'pem/ 38 can /kæn, kən/ 32 can as in trash can /kæn/ 80 can you make it? /kən ju: 'merk it/ 61 canal /kə'næl/ 12 cancel /'kænsl/ 22 cancer /'kænsə(r)/ 37 candidate /'kændidət, -deit/ 49, 51 candle /'kændl/ 31 candlestick /'kændlstik/ 31 candy /'kændi/ 80 can't bear / ka:nt 'bea(r)/ 62 can't stand / ka:nt 'stænd/ 62 cap /kæp/ 23 capable /'kerpəbl/ 71 capacity /kə'pæsəti/ 45 capital /'kæprtl/ 55 capital letter / kæpītl 'letə(r)/ 4 capsize /kæp'saɪz/ 12 captain /'kæptɪn/ 45 capture /'kæptfə(r)/ 39 cardboard /'ka:dbo:d/ 31 care about /'kear a baut/ 71 care for /'keə ,fo:(r), fo(r)/ 25, 52 career /kəˈrɪə(r)/ 52 careful /'keəfl/ 67,73 carefully /'keəfəli/ 49 careless /'keələs/ 73 cargo ship /'ka:gəu ,ʃɪp/ 12 carnival /'ka:nɪvl/ 48 carp /ka:p/ 16 carpenter /'ka:pəntə(r)/ 52 carry on / kæri 'on/ 75 carry out / kæri 'aut/ 11 case /kers/ 57 case as in in case /kers/ 67, 68 cash flow /'kæf flou/ 55 cash flow problem /'kæf flau problam/ 55 catalogue /'kætəlog/ 47 catch (= find and hold) /kætf/ 36

catch (= hear/understand)

/kætf/ 32

cattle /kætl/ 15

cause n /ko:z/ 12

cause v /ko:z/ 12, 24 caution /'ko:sn/ 67 cave /kerv/ 12 ceasefire /'si:sfaip(r)/ 39 celebrate /'selibreit/ 10 celery /'seləri/ 16 cellar /'selə(r)/ 30 cellist /'tfelist/ 44 cello /'tfelou/ 44 cellphone /'selfoun/ 80 cemetery /'semətri/ 10 cent /sent/ 79 centilitre /'sentili:to(r)/ 79 centimetre /'sentmi:tə(r)/ 79 centre /'sentə(r)/ 33 ceremony /'serəməni/ 10 challenge N /'tfælinds/ 53 challenging /'tfælindsin/ 53 championship /'tfæmpiənsip/ 45 chance (= opportunity) /tfa:ns/ 1, 50 chance (= possibility) /tfa:ns/ 59 change /tfemds/ 18 chapter /'tfæptə(r)/ 47 charge as in in charge /tfa:ds/ 53, 71 charge v /tfa:dz/ 36 chat /tfæt/ 1 cheat v, N /tfi:t/ 49 check-up /'tfek , Ap/ 24 cheerful /'tfrəfl/ 6 cheers /tʃiəz/ 77 chew /tfu:/ 24 chickpeas /'tskpi:z/ 16 chilly /'tfili/ 13 chimney /'tfimni/ 30 choice /tfois/ 10,64 choose /tfu:z/ 3, 10 chop /tfpp/ 17 circle N /'s3:kl/ 31 circle v /'s3:kl/ 11 circuit /'s3:kit/ 45 circular /'sa:kjələ(r)/ 31 city as in inner city /'sɪti/ 29 civil ceremony /.srvl 'serəməni/ 10 civil servant / sivl 'sa:vant/ 52 civil service / sivl 's3:vis/ 52 civil war /sivl 'wo:(r)/ 39 claim N /klerm/ 41,66 claim v /kleim/ 41 clam /klæm/ 16 clash N, v /klæs/ 41 clean-shaven /kli:n 'fervn/ 5

cleaner as in vacuum cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 27 clear /kliə(r)/ 2 clerical /'klerikl/ 53 clerk /kla:k/ .53 cliff /klif/ 12 climate /'klarmət/ 13 close /klaus/ 21 close by /klaus 'bai/ 78 close friend / klaus 'frend/ 8 closet /'klpzit/ 80 cloth /klpθ/ 27 club /klab/ 45 clue as in I haven't a clue /klu:/ 77 clutch /klatf/ 21 coach (= vehicle) /kəutf/ 22 coach (= person) /koutf/ 45 coast /kəust/ 12 coconut /'kəukənat/ 16 cod /kpd/ 16 coffin /'kpfm/ 10 collapse N, v /kə'læps/ 14 collar /'kpla(r)/ 23 collide /kə'lard/ 22 collocation /kplə'kerfn/ 3 colon /'kəulon/ 4 colour /'kʌlə(r)/ 28 come round /kam 'raund/ 20 comma /'komə/ 4 commence /kə'mens/ 77, 78 commentator /'kpmanterta(r)/ 45 commit a crime /kə,mit ə 'kraim/ 35 common /'kpmən/ 69 communicate /kə'mju:nıkeıt/ 49 community /kə'mju:nəti/ 48 company /'kampəni/ 56 compare /kəm'peə(r)/ 60 comparison /kəm'pærısən/ 60 compete /kəm'pi:t/ 46 competition /kompo'tisn/ 46 competitive /kəm'petətiv/ 46 competitor (= sports person) /kəm'petitə(r)/ 46 competitor (= rival company) /kəm'petitə(r)/ 56 complain /kəm'plein/ 53,66 complaint /kəm'plemt/ 53,66 completely /kəm'pli:tli/ 60.76 complex /'kpmpleks/ 2 complicated /'kpmplikertid/ 2 compose /kəm'pəuz/ 44 composer /kəm'pəuzə(r)/ 44

compromise N. V /'kpmpremaiz/ 39 compulsory /kəm'palsəri/ 64 concentrate /'konsontreit/ 19 concerned /kən's3:nd/ 25 concrete /'kpŋkri:t/ 31 conditions /kən'dı[nz/ 54 conductor /kən'daktə(r)/ 44 confirm /kən'f3:m/ 11, 51, 61 confirmation /kpnfə'mer[n/ 11.51 conflict /'konflikt/ 39 connect /kə'nekt/ 4 connecting flight /kə,nektıŋ 'flait/ 22 conscious /'konfos/ 20 consequently /'konsikwentli/ 68 consider /kən'sıdə(r)/ 63, 66 considerable /kən'sıdərəbl/ 14 consideration /kən sidə reifn/ 66 consist /kən'sıst/ 38 constituency /kən'strtjuənsi/ 38 construct (= make a sentence) /kən'strakt/ 1 construct (= build) /kən'strakt/ 45 construction (= sentence) /kənˈstrʌkʃn/ 1 construction (= building) /kən'straksn/ 45 consultant /kən'saltənt/ 25 contact v /'kontækt/ 51 contact lenses /'kontækt |lenziz/ 5 contain /kən'tem/ 2 contemporary /kən'temprəri/ 69 contest /'kontest/ 46,48 context /'kontekst/ 1 continuous assessment /kən,tmjuəs ə'sesmənt/ 50 contract /'kontrækt/ 57 contrast N /'kontra:st/ 68 contrast v /kən'tra:st/ 68 control as in in control /kən'trəul/ 39 convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 29 conversation /kpnvə'seifn/ 1 convert /kən'v3:t/ 30 convinced /kən'vınst/ 76 cookie /'kuki/ 80 cope /kəup/ 71 corner /'ko:no(r)/ 33

corridor /'kprido:(r)/ 30 cost a fortune /,kpst a 'fo:tfu:n/ 18 costs as in operating costs /kpsts/55 costume /'kostju:m/ 48 cotton /'kptn/ 23, 26 couple /'kapl/ 10 court (for tennis, badminton. etc.) /ko:t/ 45 court as in go to court /ko:t/ 36 courtroom /'ko:tru:m/ 36 cover n /'kava(r)/ 47 cover v /'kava(r)/ 20 cow /kau/ 15 crab /kræb/ 16 cracked /krækt/ 26 cramped /kræmpt/ 69 crash /kræs/ 22 crazy /'kreizi/ 6 crazy about /'kreizi ə,baut/ 62 creamy /'kri:mi/ 73 create /kri'eɪt/ 43 creature /'kri:tfə(r)/ 15 cremate /krə'meit/ 10 cremation /krə'meisn/ 10 crime /kraım/ 35 criminal /'kriminl/ 35 crisis /'kraisis/ 39 critical (= dangerous) /'kritikl/ 39 critical (of sth/sb) / kritikl/ 46 criticize /'krıtısaız/ 46 crops /krops/ 14 cross /krps/ 67 crowd /kraud/ 45 crowded /'kraudid/ 69 crucial /'kru:[1/ 14, 57 cruel /kru:əl/ 73 cruelty /'kru:əlti/ 73 cry /krai/ 34 cultural /'kaltfərəl/ 41 culture /'kaltfə(r)/ 41 curious /'kjuəriəs/ 69 current affairs /karant a'feaz/ 41 currently /'karentli/ 30 curriculum vitae /kə,rıkjələm 'vi:taɪ/ 79 curved /k3:vd/ 31 cut n /knt/ 20 cut v /knt/ 28 cut down / kat 'daun/ 17 cycling /'sarklın/ 46

DVD /di: vi: 'di:/ 79 daily /'derli/ 41 damage N, v /'dæmidy/ 14 damp /dæmp/ 32 danger /'deindso(r)/ 67 dark /da:k/ 33 dark-skinned /,da:k 'skind/ 5 dash /dæs/ 4 data /'dertə/ 58 datebook /'dertbuk/ 80 day return /,dei ri'ta:n/ 22 day trip /'dei trip/ 22 dead /ded/ 10 deaf /def/ 37 deal with /'di:l wið/ 53 death /deθ/ 10 death toll /'de0 tol/ 14 debate /dr'bert/ 50 debt /det/ 18 decline N, v /dr'klam/ 41 decorate /'dekəreit/ 26 decrease v /dr'kri:s/ 37 decrease N /'di:kri:s/ 37 deep /di:p/ 12, 45 deep sleep /di:p 'sli:p/ 19 defeat N /dr'fi:t/ 46 defeat v /dr'fi:t/ 40, 46 defence as in the defence /dr'fens/ 36 defend /dr'fend/ 36 defendant /dr'fendant/ 36 define /dr'fam/ 3,73 definitely /'defmətli/ 59,65 definitely not /,definatli 'not/ 65 definition /,defr'ntsn/ 3,73 delayed /dr'lerd/ 22 deli /'deli/ 79 deliberately /dr'liberetli/ 71 delicatessen / delikə 'tesn/ 79 delighted /dr'lartid/ 7 demand /dr'ma:nd/ 58 demonstrate /'demonstrett/ 41 demonstration /demon'streisn/ 41 denim skirt / denim 'ska:t/ 23 dental surgery /'dentl_sa:dsari/ 24 deny /dr'nar/ 74 department /dr'pa:tmont/ 53 depend /dr'pend/ 8,71 dependent /dr'pendent/ 63 deposit /dr'ppzrt/ 78 depressed /dr'prest/ 37 depressing /dr'presin/ 29 depression /dr'presn/ 37

depth /dep0/ 12, 45 deserted /dr'z3:tid/ 69 desperately /'despərətli/ 76 despite /dr'spart/ 68 destroy /di'stroi/ 4 destruction /dr'straksn/ 14 detail as in in detail /'di:teil/ 2 details /'di:terlz/ 4 determined /dr'ta:mmd/ 39 detest /dr'test/ 62 develop (= grow/increase) /di'velap/ 20 develop (a film) /dr'veləp/ 43 devote /dr'vout/ 49 diabetes / darə bi:ti:z/ 37 diabetic /,darə'betik/ 37 diagonal /dar'ægənl/ 31 diary /'darəri/ 80 die /dar/ 10 diet /'darət/ 17 different /'difrent/ 60 digital camera /diditl 'kæmərə/ 43 direct /də'rekt, dı-, daı-/ 42 director /də'rektə(r), dı-, daı-/ 42 dirt /ds:t/ 27 dirty /'da:ti/ 27 disability / disə biləti/ 37 disabled /drs'erbld/ 37 disadvantage /disad'va:ntidy/ 29 disappear /disə'piə(r)/ 13, 32, 73 disappearance /disə'piərəns/ 73 disappointing /disə'pointin/ 42, 69 disappointed / disa pointed/ 69 disapprove /disə'pru:v/ 71 disaster /dr'za:stə(r)/ 14, 59, discount /'diskaunt/ 18 discover /dr'skavə(r)/ 11, 40 discovery /dr'skavəri/ 11, 40 discuss /dr'skas/ 1 discussion /dr'skasn/ 1 disease /dr'zi:z/ 13,37 disgusted /dis'gastid/ 69 disgusting /dis'gastin/ 42,69 dish /drs/ 17 dishonest /dis'pnist/ 6 dislike /dis'lark/ 62 disloyal /dis'loral/ 8,72 dismiss /dis'mis/ 53 disobedient /disə'bi:diənt/ 64

disobey /disə'bei/ 64 display as in on display /dr'spler/ 43 disqualify /dis'kwolifar/ 49 dissatisfaction /dis.sætis'fæksn/ 66 dissatisfied /dis'sætisfaid/ 66, 69 distance /'distans/ 33 district /'distrikt/ 29 diversify /dar'va:srfar/ 57 divide /dr'vard/ 4 dizzy /'dızi/ 20 do overtime /du: 'auvatam/ 54 do research /,du: rr's3:tf, 'ri:s3:tf/ 50, 57 do revision /du: ri'vi3n/ 1 do up /du: 'Ap/ 72 do the washing up /ˌdu: ðə ˌwɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ 27 doctor's surgery /'doktəz sa:dəri/ 24 donkey /'donki/ 15 don't bother /,daunt 'boða(r)/ 66 door handle /'do: hændl/ 21 doubt /daut/ 59 doubt as in I doubt it /daut/ 65 downturn /'daunts:n/ 58 dozen /'dazn/ 39 drag /dræg/ 34 drama /'dra:mə/ 42 dramatic /drə'mætık/ 37, 42 draw /dro:/ 33 drawback /'dro:bæk/ 29 drawing /'dro:n/ 33, 43 dread /dred/ 24 dreadful /'dredfl/ 66 dream /dri:m/ 19 dress /dres/ 23 dress up / dres 'Ap/ 48 dressing /'dresin/ 20 dries up /draiz 'Ap/ 12 drill /dril/ 26 drink a toast /drink a 'taust/ 10 drive /draw/ 30 driver as in racing driver /'drarvə(r)/ 45 drizzle /'drizl/ 13 drizzling /'drizlin/ 13 drop N, v /drop/ 55 drop (of rain) /drop/ 13 drought /draut/ 14 drown /draun/ 12

drugstore /'dragsto:(r)/ 80 drummer /'dramə(r)/ 44 dry up /,drai 'ap/ 12 duck /dak/ 16 due (= expectéd) /dju:/ 22 due to /'dju: tə/ 68 dull /dal/ 6 during /'djuərin/ 70 dust N, v /dast/ 27 dustbin /'dastbin/ 80 dusty /'dasti/ 27 duty /'dju:ti/ 53

EU (European Union) /,i: 'ju:/ 79 eagle /'i:gl/ 15 earrings /'ıərıŋz/ 23 earth /3:θ/ 11 earthquake /'s:θkweik/ 14 easy-going /i:zi 'gəuɪŋ/ 6 economical / i:kə'npmɪkl/ 73 edge /edg/ 70 edit /'edit/ 41, 42 editing /'editin/ 42 editor /'editə(r)/ 41 effect /r'fekt/ 13 effective /r'fektry/ 2, 69 effectively /r'fektrvli/ 2 efficient /r'frsnt/ 69 effort /'efət/ 56 elbow /'elbəu/ 20 elect /r'lekt/ 38 election /r'leksn/ 38 electrical /r'lektrikl/ 52 electrician /e.lek'trɪ[n/ 52 elegant /'eligant/ 23 elephant /'elifant/ 15 elevator /'eliveitə(r)/ 80 elsewhere /,els'weə(r)/ 53 embarrassed /m'bærəst/ 69 embarrassing /m'bærəsın/ 69 emergency services

/r'ma:dɔənsi ˌsa:vɪsɪz/ 22
emigrate /'emɪgreɪt/ 9
emotion /r'məʊʃn/ 7
emotional /r'məʊʃənl/ 7
emphasis /'emfəsɪs/ 3
emphasize /'emfəsaz/ 3
employ /ɪm'pləɪ/ 56
employee /ɪm'pləɪi:/ 56
employer /ɪm'pləɪə(r)/ 56
enable /r'neɪbl/ 74
enclose /ɪm'kləʊz/ 78
encourage /ɪm'kʌrɪdʒ/ 2, 74
encouragement
/ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ 2

encouraging /m'karidan/ 2 encyclopedia /m,saɪklə'pi:diə/ 47 end as in at/in the end /end/ 71 end up / end 'Ap/ 22 enemy /'enəmi/ 39 energetic /enə'dzetik/ 6 energy /'enədxi/ 6 engine /'endsin/ 21 engineering /endgr'niərin/ 52 enormous /i'no:mas/ 30 enough /I'nAf/ 25 enquiry /m'kwarəri/ 53 entertainer /ento'temo(r)/ 48 entertaining /ento'temin/ 42 entertainment /entə'temmənt/ 48

/,entə'temmənt/ 48
enthusiasm /m'θju:ziæzəm/ 2
enthusiastic /m,θju:zi'æstık/ 2
entitled /m'taɪtld/ 54
entire /m'taɪə(r)/ 41
entry /'entri/ 3
envious /'enviəs/ 7
environment
/m'vaɪrənmənt/ 13

environmentalist
/m,vairən'mentəlist/ 13
equivalent /i'kwivələnt/ 42
erupt /i'rʌpt/ 14
eruption /i'rʌpʃn/ 14
especially /i'speʃəli/ 78
essential /i'senʃl/ 49,69
establish /i'stæbliʃ/ 40

establishment
/ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/ 40
estate agent

/ɪˈsteɪt ˌeɪʤənt/ 52 European Union

/jwərə,pi:ən 'ju:niən/ 79
evacuate /r'vækjuert/ 14
evacuation /r,vækju'ersn/ 14
evaluate /r'væljuert/ 58
evaluation /r,vælju'ersn/ 58
even /i:vn/ 33
even as in break even /'i:vn/ 56
even though /'i:vn ,ŏəu/ 68
eventually /r'ventsuəli/ 70
everyday /'evridei/ 2
evidence /'evidəns/ 36
exactly the same

/ɪgˌzæktli ðə ˈseɪm/ 60 examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ 24 examiner /ɪgˈzæmɪnə(r)/ 49 example as in for example /ɪgˈzɑːmpl/ 3

except /ik'sept/ 60 exclamation mark /ekskla'mersn ma:k/ 4 exercise /'eksəsaiz/ 17 exhausted /ig'zo:stid/ 19 exhibition / eksi'bifn/ 43 exist /ig'zist/ 11 existence /ig'zistəns/ 11 expand /ik'spænd/ 2 expect /ik'spekt/ 59,65 expect as in I expect so /ik'spekt/ 65 expect a baby/child /ık,spekt ə 'beibi, 'tfaild/ 5 expectancy as in life expectancy /ık'spektənsi/ 15 expected /ik'spektid/ 69 experience /ik'spieriens/ 52 experiment n /ik'sperima nt/ 11 experiment v /ik'speriment/ 1 expert /'eksp3:t/ 43,66 explain /ik'splein/ 1 explanation / eksplə neisn/ 1 explode /ik'splaud/ 39 exploit /ik'sploit/ 57 exploitation / eksploitein/ 57 exploration / eksplə reisn/ 11 explore /ik'splo:(r)/ 11 explosion /ik'splauzn/ 39 express /ik'spres/ 2 expression /ik'spresn/ 3 expressway /eks'preswei/ 80

extent /ik'stent/ 76
extinguish /ik'stingwis/ 75
extraordinary /ik'stro:dnri/ 42
extreme /ik'stri:m/ 13
eye as in keep an eye on /ai/ 77
eyebrows /'aibrauz/ 5

extent as in to some / a certain

extend /ik'stend/ 73

extension /ik'stensn/ 73

fabric /'fæbrik/ 23
face (= do sth about) /feis/ 38
face (= look towards) /feis/ 70
face-to-face /,feis to 'feis/ 53
fact as in in fact /fækt/ 65, 76
fact as in in (actual) fact
/fækt/ 76
factor /'fækto(r)/ 57
fail /feil/ 56
faint /feint/ 20
fair /feo(r)/ 69, 72
fairly /'feoli/ 76
faithfully as in yours faithfully
/'feifoli/ 78

fall /fo:1/ 13, 55 fall asleep /,fo:l ə'sli:p/ 19 fall out with /,fo:l 'aut wið/ 8 famine /'fæmm/ 13 fan /fæn/ 42, 45 fancy (= find sb attractive) /'fænsi/ 59 fancy (= want sth) /'fænsi/ 77 far-fetched /.fa: 'fetft/ 11 fascinating /'fæsmeitin/ 47 fashionable /'fæ[nəbl/ 23, 73 fast asleep / fa:st ə'sli:p/ 19 fasten /'fa:sn/ 72 fattening /'fætnin/ 17 fattish /'fætɪʃ/ 5 faucet /'fo:set/ 80 fault /fo:lt/ 63 faulty /'fo:lti/ 26 favour as in in favour of /'fervə(r)/ 63 favourite /'fervərit/ 46 fear N, v /fra(r)/ 14 feathers /'feooz/ 15 feature /'fi:tfə(r)/ 30 fed up / fed 'Ap/ 7 fed up with / fed 'Ap wio/ 66 feedback /'fi:dbæk/ 51,57 feel /fi:1/ 32 feel like (doing sth) /'fi:l ,laɪk/ 77 feelings as in mixed feelings /'fi:lmz/ 69 fees /fi:z/ 50 female /'fi:meil/ 5, 15 fence /fens/ 31 fencing /'fensin/ 46 fennel /'fenl/ 16 festival /'festrvl/ 48 fetch /fetf/ 77 fiction /'fiksn/ 47 fig /fig/ 16 fight N, v /fait/ 39 fighter /'fartə(r)/ 39 figure /'figə(r)/ 5, 23 filling /'film/ 24 film (for camera) /film/ 43 film (at cinema) /film/ 80 filthy /'frl0i/ 29 final /'faml/ 46 finance N / famæns/ 52, 55 finance v /'famæns/ 55 financial /far'næns1/ 55 find a solution /.famd ə sə'lu:fn/ 53

fine N, v /fam/ 36

fingerprints /'fingaprints/ 36

fire N /'faro(r)/ 67 fire v /'farə(r)/ 53 fireworks /'farewa:ks/ 48 firm /f3:m/ 69 first as in at first /f3:st/ 71 fix /fiks/ 26 fizzy drink / fizi 'drink/ 17 flag /flæg/ 45 flash /flæf/ 43 flautist /'flo:tist/ 44 flavour /'flervə(r)/ 32 flexibility / fleksə bıləti/ 50 flexible /'fleksəbl/ 50 float /flout/ 12 flood /flad/ 12 flour /'flavə(r)/ 17 flow /flou/ 12 flu /flu:/ 79 fluctuate /'flaktfuert/ 55 fluctuation / flaktfu'ersn/ 55 fluent /'flu:ont/ 2 fluently /'flu:antli/ 2 flute /flu:t/ 44 fly /flat/ 15 focus N, v (= attention/attend) /'faukas/ 38 focus N, v (in photography) /'faukas/ 43 fold as in fold in half/two /fauld/ 34 follow instructions /foleu m'straksnz/ 49 fond /fond/ 62 food scare /'fu:d .skeo(r)/ 41 footballer /'futbo:la(r)/ 45 for example /for ig'za:mpl/ 3 for instance /for 'mstans/ 3 for sure /fa '(va(r)/ 61 forbid /fə'bid/ 64 force /fo:s/ 64 forecast N, v /'fo:ka:st/ 58 foreground /'fo:graund/ 33 foreign /'foren/ 1 foreigner /'forene(r)/ 1 formal /'fo:ml/ 1 fortune as in cost a fortune /'fo:tfu:n/ 18 forward(s) /'fo:wod(z)/ 20 foster parent /'fosta_pearant/ 9 found /faund/ 57 founder /'faundə(r)/ 57 frame /frem/ 43 free /fri:/ 61 freedom /'fri:dəm/ 50

freeway /'fri:wei/ 80

French fries / frentf 'fraiz/ 80 fridge /frids/ 79 friends as in make friends /frendz/ 8 friendly /'frendli/ 8 friendship /'frendsip/ 8 fringe /frmds/ 28 frog /frog/ 15 from time to time /frem taum to 'taum/ 70 front /frant/ 70 frost /frost/ 13 frosty /'frosti/ 13 frustrating /fra'streitin/ 2 frustration /fra'streisn/ 2 fry /frai/ 17 frying pan /'fraun ,pæn/ 17 full stop / ful 'stop/ 4 funeral /'fju:nərəl/ 10 fur /f3:(r)/ 15 furious /'fjvəriəs/ 7 further /'f3:ðə(r)/ 78 further to /'f3:ðə tə/ 78 furthermore /,f3:ðə'mɔ:(r)/ 68 g (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79 gm (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79 gain /gem/ 11, 56, 40 gale /geil/ 13 gap in the market /,gæp m ðə 'ma:krt/ 57 garbage /'ga:bids/ 80 garbage can /'ga:bidz kæn/ 80

gas (= e.g. oxygen) /gæs/ 13 gas (= gasoline) /gæs/ 80 gasoline /'qæsəli:n/ 80 gather /'gæðə(r)/ 58 gear lever /'gia li:va(r)/ 21 gear stick /'gra strk/ 21 general as in in general /'denral/ 71 generally /'denroli/ 71,76 generation / deno'reisn/ 9 generosity / deno'rosəti/ 6 generous /'denoros/ 6 gentle /'dentl/ 73 gentleness /'dzentlnes/ 73 get (= fetch) /get/ 77 get (= receive) /get/ 36, 42 get better / get 'betə(r)/ 2 get divorced / a divorce / get dr'vo:st, a dr'vo:s/ 9 get dressed / get 'drest/ 72 get held up / get held 'Ap/ 22 get in / get 'm/ 22

get on / get 'on/ 75 get on with / get 'on wið/ 75 get on sb's nerves /,get ,pn ,... 'n3:vz/ 66 get over / get 'auva(r)/ 25, 75 get rid of / get 'rid əv/ 71 get sth done / get 'dan/ 28 get stuck / get 'stak/ 22 get the sack / get do 'sæk/ 53 get through / get 'θru:/ 75 get time off / get taim 'pf/ 54 get to know / get to 'nou/ 8 get to like / get to 'lark/ 62 get together / get tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61 get undressed /get an'drest/ 72 gift /qrft/ 47 gist /dxist/ 1 give it a trim / grv it a 'trim/ 28 give sb a hand /,grv ,... ə 'hænd/ 77 give sb advice /,grv əd'vars/ 51 give sb feedback /,grv ,... 'fi:dbæk/ 51 give sb the sack /,grv ðə 'sæk/ 53 give sth away /,grv ə'wei/ 75 give sth out / grv 'aut/ 75 give up / grv 'Ap/ 39, 75 glad /glæd/ 69 glance /gla:ns/ 32 global warming /,glaubl 'wa:mm/ 13 glue /qlu:/ 26 go as in to go /gou/ 70 go bald / gou 'bo:ld/ 5 go blind / gov 'blamd/ 37 go deaf / gov 'def/ 37 go down / gou 'daun/ 55, 75 go grey / gəu 'grei/ 5 go into hospital / geu inte 'hospitl/ 25 go off (= ring) /,gov 'pf/ 19 go off (= explode) / gov 'of/ 39 go on (with sth) / gov 'pn/ 75

go over / gou 'ouvo(r)/ 75 go smoothly / gou 'smu:ðli/ 65 go through / gov 'θru:/ 1 go to court / gov to 'ko:t/ 36 go to hospital / gau ta 'hospitl/ 25 go to jail / gou to 'dell' 35 go to prison / gou to 'prizn/ 35 go to sleep / gou to 'sli:p/ 19 go up / gou 'Ap/ 55, 75 go white / gov 'wart/ 5 go wrong / gou 'ron/ 8,65 goal /gəʊl/ 2, 38, 58 goat /gout/ 15 gold /gould/ 31 golfer /'golfə(r)/ 45 good chance /'gud tfa:ns/ 59 good for you /'god fə ju:/ 17 goods /gudz/ 56 gorilla /gəˈrɪlə/ 15 govern /'gavn/ 38 government /'gavnment/ 38 grab /græb/ 32 gradual /'grædguəl/ 13, 55 gradually /'grædguəli/ 13, 55 graduate n /'grædgjuət/ 50 graduate v /'grædsjuett/ 50 graffiti /grəˈfi:ti/ 29 gram /græm/ 79 grand /grænd/ 69 grapefruit /'greipfru:t/ 16 grateful as in I would be grateful if ... /'gretfl/ 78 grave /greiv/ 10 gravestone /'grervstoun/ 10 grease /qri:s/ 27 greasy /'gri:si/ 27 greedy /'gri:di/ 60 gripping /'gripin/ 42 groom /gru:m/ 10 ground (= earth's surface) /graund/ 14 ground (= sports area) /graund/ 45 group /gru:p/ 44 grow /grou/ 55, 56 growth /grav0/ 29, 55, 56 guarantee /gærən'ti:/ 66 guess N, V /ges/ 1 guess as in I guess so /ges/ 65 guest /gest/ 10 guilty /'grlti/ 36 guitar /gr'ta:(r)/ 44 guitarist /gr'ta:rist/ 44 gun /gan/ 39

go out with / gov 'aut wið/ 8

gun battle /'gʌn ˌbæti/ 39
gym /ʤɪm/ 79
gymnast /'ʤɪmnæst/ 45
gymnastics /ʤɪm'næstɪks/ 45,
46
habit /'hæbɪt/ 19
hair as in lose your bair

habit /'hæbit/ 19 hair as in lose your hair /hea(r)/ 5 haircut /'heəkat/ 28 hairdryer /'heədraıə(r)/ 28 hairstyle /'heastail/ 28 half as in fold in half /ha:f/ 34 half a dozen /ha:f ə 'dazn/ 39 half-brother /'ha:f ,brxðə(r)/ 9 half-sister /'ha:f ,sistə(r)/ 9 hall /ho:1/ 30 hall of residence /,ho:l av 'rezidans/ 50 hammer /'hæmə(r)/ 26 hand as in left-hand corner, right-hand side /hænd/ 33 hand as in lend sb a hand /hænd/ 77 hand as in on the one/other hand /hænd/ 68 hand in your notice /hænd m jo: 'noutis/ 53 hand sth out /,hænd ,... 'aut/ 75 handcuffs /'hændkafs/ 36 handle as in door handle /'hændl/ 21 handle v /'hændl/ 53 handy /'hændi/ 29 hang on /,hæn 'on/ 77 happy /'hæpi/ 66 harbour /'ha:bə(r)/ 12 hardback /'ha:dbæk/ 47 hard-working /,ha:d 'w3:km/ 6 harm N, V /ha:m/ 15 harm v /ha:m/ 13 harmful /'ha:mfl/ 13, 15, 73 harmless /ha:mləs/ 15, 73 have a chat /hæv ə 'tfæt/ 1 have a debate /,hæv ə dr'bert/ 50 have a haircut /hæv ə 'heəkat/ 28 have a lie-in /,hæv ə 'lar ,m/ 19 have a lot in common /,hæv ə ,lot ,m 'komən/ 8 have a nap /hæv ə 'næp/ 19

go on a diet

go on strike

go out of business

/gou on a 'daret/ 17

/gou on 'strark/ 54

/,gau aut av 'biznas/ 56

have a restless night /hæv ə restləs 'natt/ 19 have a row / hæv ə 'rau/ 8 have a stroke /hæv ə 'strəuk/ 37 have an operation /hæv ən ppə'reisn/ 25 have fun / hæv 'fan/ 48 have no choice /hæv nou 'tfors/ 64 have no intention of doing sth /hæv 'nou m ten n ov .../ 65 have nothing in common /,hæv ,naθıŋ ın 'komən/ 8 have sth done /,hæv ... 'dʌn/ 28 have the right to /hæv ðə 'rait tə/ 54 have time off /,hæv ,tam 'pf/ 54 have toothache /hæv 'tu:0eik/ 24 have your back to sth /.hæv .jo: 'bæk tə ,.../ 70 headlights /'hedlarts/ 21 headline /'hedlam/ 41 heal /hi:1/ 20 heal up /hi:l 'Ap/ 20 health scare /'helθ ,skeə(r)/ 41 healthy /'helθi/ 17 hear /hra(r)/ 32 hear from sb /'hra fram/ 78 heart /ha:t/ 37 heart attack /'ha:t ə,tæk/ 37 heart disease /'ha:t dr.zi:z/ 37 heartbroken /'ha:tbroukon/ 7 heatwave /'hi:twerv/ 13 heavy sleeper /hevi 'sli:pə(r)/ 19 heavy traffic / hevi 'træfik/ 22 held up / held 'Ap/ 22 helmet as in safety helmet /'helmit/ 57 herbs /ha:bz/ 16 herd /h3:d/ 15 hesitate /'hezrtert/ 78 hi /har/ 77 hide your feelings /hard jo: 'fi:linz/ 7 high-heeled /har 'hi:ld/ 23 high school /har sku:1/80 high tide /har 'tard/ 12 highly /'harli/ 76 highway /'harwer/ 80 hire a car / harer e 'ka:(r)/ 22

hit /hrt/ 14 hold an election /hauld an i'leksn/ 38 hold on /, hould 'pn/ 77 hold the record /hauld ða 'reka:d/ 46 hole /haul/ 26 home as in at home /houm/ 50 homesick /'houmsik/ 50 honest /'pnist/ 6 honesty /'pnəsti/ 6 honeymoon /'hanimu:n/ 10 hoover /'hu:və(r)/ 27 hope /houp/ 65 hope as in I hope so/not /həup/ 65 horizon /həˈraɪzən/ 12 horizontal /hpri'zontl/ 31 hospital /'hospitl/ 25 horn /ho:n/ 21 horns /ho:nz/ 15 horse /ho:s/ 15 hour as in rush hour /'aua(r)/ 22 how about? /'hau ə,baut/ 61 how are things? /'hau a ,0mz/ 77 how do you feel about ...? /'hau də ju: fi:l ə baut '.../ 63 however /hau'evə(r)/ 68 how's it going? /hauz it 'goun/ 77 huge /hju:dz/ 18, 30 human /'hju:mən/ 13 humid /'hju:mid/ 13 humorous /'hju:mərəs/ 73 humour as in sense of humour /'hju:mə(r)/ 6 hunt /hant/ 15 hurricane /'harikən/ 14 hurry /hari/ 29 hurry as in in a hurry /'hari/ 71 hurry up / hari 'ap/ 77 hurt sb's feelings /,hs:t ,... 'fi:liŋz/ 7 husband /'hazbənd/ 10 hyphen /'haifən/ 4

ID card (identity card)
/ˌaɪ 'di: ˌkɑ:d/ 79
ISP (internet service provider)
/ˌaɪ ˌes 'pi:/ 79
IT (information technology)
/ˌaɪ 'ti:/ 79

i.e. /aɪ 'i:/ 52 I assume so /aı ə'sju:m səu/ 65 I'd better be off /aid beta bi of/ 77 I don't think so /ar doont 'bink sou/ 65 I doubt it / ai 'daot it/ 65 I expect so /aı ık'spekt səu/ 65 I guess so /ai 'ges sou/ 65 I haven't a clue /ar hævnt ə 'klu:/ 77 I hope not /ai 'houp not/ 65 I hope so /ai 'houp sou/ 65 I imagine so /ai i'mædin səu/ 65 I suppose so /ar sə'pəuz səu/ 65 I think so /ai 'bink ,sou/ 65 I think ... / aι 'θιηk/ 63 I think that ... /ai 'θiŋk ðət/ 63 I would appreciate it if ... /aı wod ə'pri:sieit it if/ 78 I would be grateful if ... /aı wod bi 'greitfl if/ 78 ideal /ar'di:əl/ 29 identical /ar'dentikl/ 60 identify /ar'dentifar/ 1 identity /ar'dentati/ 79 idiom /'rdiom/ 3,77 idiomatic / rdiə mætık/ 77 if you ask me / if ju: a:sk 'mi:/ 63 ignition /ig'nisn/ 21 ignore /rg'no:(r)/ 33, 58 illegal /r'li:gl/ 35 illegible /r'ledgobl/ 72 illuminate /r'lu:mmert/ 48 illustrate /'iləstreit/ 33 illustration / Ilə streifn/ 33 I'm afraid ... /aim ə'freid/ 61 I'm afraid not /arm ə freid 'not/ 65 I'm afraid so /arm ə freid 'səu/ 65 I'm meant to /aim 'ment tə/ 61 I'm not bothered /am not 'bood/ 66 I'm supposed to /aim sə'pəust tə/ 61

imagine /r'mædzın/ 65,74

imagine as in I imagine so

/r'mædsm/ 65

immediately /r'mi:diatli/ 25 immigrant /'migrant/ 9,38 immigration / imi'greisn/ 38 immoral /r'mprəl/ 72 impatient /im'persnt/ 6 impressed /im'prest/ 69 impressive /m'presiv/ 30 improve /m'pru:v/ 2 improvement /m'pru:vmənt/ 2 in a bad mood /m ə bæd 'mu:d/ 7 in a deep sleep /m ə di:p 'sli:p/ 19 in a good mood /,in ə .god 'mu:d/ 7 in a hurry /in a 'hari/ 71 in a relationship /,in a ri'leisnsip/ 8 in a rush /m ə 'rʌʃ/ 71 in actual fact /m æktfuəl 'fækt/ 76 in addition /, in ə'dıſn/ 68 in advance /m əd'va:ns/ 71 in bad shape /m bæd 'feip/ 5 in case /, in 'keis/ 67, 68 in charge of /m 'tfa:dz əv/ 53, 71 in comparison with / in kəm'pærisən wið/ 60 in control /, in kən'trəol/ 39 in detail /,m 'di:teil/ 2 in fact / in 'fækt/ 65, 76 in favour of /m 'feiver ev/ 63, 71 in focus /m 'faukas/ 43 in general /m 'denral/ 71 in good shape / in god 'ferp/ 5 in mourning /,m 'mo:nm/ 10 in my opinion /m mar ə pmjən/ 63 in other words /m 'xðə w3:dz/ 11 in particular /m po'tikjələ(r)/ 78 in person /m 'pa:sn/ 66 in power /m 'pavə(r)/ 38 in principle / in 'prinsopl/ 63 in private /m 'praivot/ 71 in public /, in 'pablik/ 71 in spite of /, in 'spart av/ 68 in the centre /, in ðə 'sentə(r)/ 33 in the distance

in the end /m oi 'end/ 71 in the meantime /m ðə mi:ntam/ 70 in theory /m '010ri/ 63 in time / in 'taim/ 50 in writing /m 'raitin/ 66 inadequate /in'ædikwət/ 56, 69 inappropriate / ina 'praupriat/ 2 include /m'klu:d/ 2 income /'mkam/ 18 increase N /'mkri:s/ 37 increase v /m'kri:s/ 37, 55, 58, incredible /m'kredəbl/ 42 indeed /m'di:d/ 42 independence /mdr'pendons/ 40 independent / indi pendent/ 40 individual /mdr'vidual/ 42 industrial /m'dastrial/ 33 industry /'mdəstri/ 33 ineffective /mr'fektiv/ 69 inefficient /m'fifnt/ 69 infection /m'feksn/ 20 infectious /m'fekfos/ 37 inflation /m'flersn/ 55 influence N, v /'influens/ 44 influenza / mflu'enzə/ 79 informal /m'fo:ml/ 1 information technology /info mersn tek'nologi/ 79 ingredients /m'gri:dients/ 17 inherit /m'herit/ 10 inheritance /m'heritans/ 10 injure /'indxə(r)/ 20 injured /'mdzəd/ 22 injury /'mdzəri/ 20 inner city /,ma 'siti/ 29 innocent /'məsnt/ 36 innovate /'mayert/ 57 innovation / ma'veisn/ 57 innovative /'məvətiv/ 57 insect /'msekt/ 15 insecure /msr'kjua(r)/ 6, 72 insensitive /m'sensətiv/ 7 insist /m'sist/ 71,64 insomnia /m'somnia/ 19 install /m'sto:1/52 instance as in for instance /'mstans/ 3 instead /m'sted/ 4,61 instructions /m'strak snz/ 49

instrument as in musical instrument /'instrament/ 44 intend /m'tend/ 65, 74 intention /m'tenfn/ 65 interest /'introst/ 55 interest rate /'intrest reit/ 55 international /intə'næfnəl/ 41 internet service provider / intenet 'sa:vis pra, vaida(r)/ 79 interpret /in'ta:prit/ 73 interpretation /m ta:pri'tei n/ 73 interrupt / into rapt/ 4, 45 interstate /'intestert/ 80 interview N, v /'mtəvju:/ 51 interviewer /'mtəvju:ə(r)/ 51 intolerant /m'tolerent/ 6 introduce / mtrə dju:s/ 74 invade /m'veid/ 40 invasion /m'vei3n/ 40 invent /m'vent/ 11 invention /m'ven n/ 11 invest /m'vest/ 57 investigate /m'vestigeit/ 36 investment /m'vestment/ 57 invigilator /m'vidgileitə(r)/ 49 involve /m'volv/ 53 involved /m'volvd/ 39 involved in /m'volvd m/ 71 iron /'arən/ 31 irrelevant /i'relevent/ 2,72 irresponsible /,ırr'sponsəbl/ 6 irritable /'ırıtəbl/ 19 -ish /If/ 5 issue /'ıʃu:/ 63 it seems to me /it si:mz to 'mi:/ 63 item /'artəm/ 49 it's up to me / tts Ap to 'mi:/ 64

jail /deil/ 35
jam as in traffic jam /dæm/ 22
jealous /'deləs/ 7
jewellery /'dgu:əlri/ 23
job /dgɒb/ 52
join a class /,dəm ə 'kla:s/ 66
join (= put together) /dəin/ 4
joke /dəuk/ 77
joking as in you must be joking,
you're joking /'dəukin/ 77
journalism /'də:nəlizəm/ 41
journalist /'də:nəlist/ 41
judge n /dəd/ 36

/ in 85 distans/ 33

judge v /ʤʌʤ/ 73 judgement /'ʤʌʤmənt/ 73 junk food /'ʤʌŋk ˌfuːd/ 17 jury /'ʤʊəri/ 36 just /ʤʌst/ 33

kg (kilo(s)/kilogram(s)) /'ki:ləu(z), 'kıləgræm(z)/ 79 km (kilometre(s)) /'kıləmi:tə(z)/ 79 kph (kilometres per hour) /kıləmi:təz pər 'auə(r)/ 79 keen as in be keen on /ki:n/ 62 keep /ki:p/ 21, 28 keep a record of /ki:p ə 'reko:d əv/ 1 keep ahead of /ki:p ə'hed əv/ 57 keep an eye on /,ki:p ən 'aɪ ,pn/ 77 keep calm / ki:p 'ka:m/ 66 keep in touch / ki:p m 'tatf/ 8 keep sth up /ki:p 'Ap/ 17 keep your temper /ki:p jo: 'tempo(r)/ 66 key /ki:/ 57 keyboard /'ki:bo:d/ 44 keyboard player /'ki:bo:d plera(r)/ 44 kid /kid/ 77 kidney /'kıdni/ 16 kill /kıl/ 35 kilogram /'kıləgræm/ 79 kilometre /'kıləmi:tə(r)/ 79 kilometres per hour /kıləmi:təz pər 'auə(r)/ 79 kind /kamd/ 73 kind regards /'kamd ri,ga:dz/ 78 kindness /'kamdnes/ 73 king /kin/ 9

l (litre(s)) /'li:tə(z)/ 79 lab /læb/ 79 laboratory /lə'bɒrətri/ 79 lack /læk/ 19 ladder /'lædə(r)/ 31 lake /leɪk/ 12 land /lænd/ 52 landscape /'lændskeɪp/ 43 lane /leɪn/ 22 lap /læp/ 45 largely /'lɑ:dʒli/ 76

knickers /'nıkəz/ 23

knowledge /'nplidy/ 11

knock /nok/ 34

last /la:st/ 70 lately /'lertli/ 77 latest /'leitist/ 23 launch /lo:ntf/ 38 laughing as in burst out laughing /'la:fm/ 34 lava /'la:və/ 14 law /lo:/ 35 lawn /lo:n/ 30 lazy /'leizi/ 6 lead /li:d/ 30 lead singer / li:d 'smp(r)/ 44 lead to /'li:d tə/ 37 leader /'li:də(r)/ 39 leader as in market leader /'li:do(r)/ 56 leading role /'li:dm roul/ 42 leaf /li:f/ 34 leak N, v /li:k/ 26 least as in at least /li:st/71 leather /'leða(r)/ 23 leave out /li:v 'aut/ 4,75 leaves /li:vz/ 34 lecture /'lektfə(r)/ 50 lecturer /'lektfərə(r)/ 50 leek /li:k/ 16 left-hand /'left hænd/ 33 legal /'li:gl/ 35 legible /'ledgibl/ 72 leisure /'leʒə(r)/ 33 lend sb a hand /lend ... a 'hænd/ 77 length /leng/ 45 lens as in zoom lens /lenz/ 43 lenses as in contact lenses /'lenziz/ 5 leopard /'lepad/ 15 let /let/ 28, 64 letter as in capital letter /letə(r)/ 4 letter box /'leta boks/ 31 lid /lrd/ 34 life expectancy /'laif ik spektonsi/ 15 lifeboat /'laifbout/ 57 lifespan /'laifspæn/ 15 light bulb /'lart balb/ 26 light-skinned / last 'skind/ 5 light sleeper / last 'sli:pə(r)/ 19 light sth up / lart ,... 'Ap/ 48 like (= similar to) /laɪk/ 32 like (= such as) /lark/ 4, 32 likely to /'larkli tə/ 59

limit as in speed limit

limited /'limited/ 58

/'limit/ 21

linesman /'lamzmən/ 45 lion /'larən/ 15 liquid /'likwid/ 13 list /list/ 4 listen /'lɪsn/ 32 litre /'li:tə(r)/ 79 litter /'lıtə(r)/ 29 live /larv/ 44 lively /'larvli/ 29 liver /'hvə(r)/ 16 living /'lrvin/ 44 loads /loudz/ 77 load sth up / loud 'Ap/ 72 loan /loon/ 50 loathe /louð/ 62 lobster /'lobstə(r)/ 16 local /'loukl/ 29 lock /lok/ 72 log as in sleep like a log /lpg/ 19 long /lon/ 45 long as in as long as /lon/ 68 look /luk/ 32 look after / lok 'a:ftə(r)/ 71 look forward to /.luk 'fo:wed te/ 24, 65, 78 look like /'luk lark/ 9 look out / lok 'aut/ 67 look through /'lok |0ru:/ 47 loosen /'lu:sn/ 26 lose /lu:z/ 56 lose weight /,lu:z 'weit/ 17 lose your hair /,lu:z jo: 'heə(r)/ 5 lose your sight /,lu:z .jo: 'sart/ 37 lose your temper /.lu:z .jo: 'tempə(r)/ 66 loss /lps/ 55 loud /laud/ 34 love /lav/ 78 love from /'lav from/ 78 low tide / loo 'taid/ 12 loyal /'loral/ 8,72 lungs /lanz/ 37 lyrics /'lırıks/ 44

ml (millilitre(s))
/'mɪlili:tə(z)/ 79
mm (millimetre(s))
/'mɪlimi:tə(z)/ 79
MP (Member of Parliament)
/ˌem 'pi:/ 38
mph (miles per hour)
/ˌmaɪlz pər 'auə(r)/ 79
mad /mæd/ 6

mad about (= liking very much) /'mæd ə.baot/ 62 Madam /'mædəm/ 78 main difference /mein 'difrans/ 60 main road / mem 'roud/ 80 mainly /'memli/ 76 maintain /mem'tem/ 14 majority /məˈdʒɒrəti/ 38 make as in can you make it? /merk/ 61 make (= perform an action) /merk/ 1, 10, 65 make a claim /meik ə 'kleim/ 66 make a complaint /merk a kam'plemt/ 53, 66 make a note / meik a 'nout/ 1 make a profit /meik a 'profit/ 55 make a promise /meik a 'promis/ 41 make a speech /meik ə 'spi:tf/ 10 make an appointment / meik an a pointment/ 24 make an enquiry /meik ən m'kwaiəri/ 53 make arrangements /merk a'remdymants/ 52 make friends / meik 'frendz/ 8 make mistakes /merk mr'sterks/ 1 make plans /,merk 'plænz/ 65 make progress /meik 'prougres/ 2 make sb do sth /merk 'du: .../ 64 make sb redundant /merk ... rr'dandent/ 53 make sth up / merk ... 'Ap/ 75 make sure /, merk 'fuo(r)/ 53, 66 make the most of /,merk ðo 'moust ov/ 71 male /merl/ 5, 15 mall /mo:l, mæl/ 80 manage /'mænids/ 50, 52, 71. 74 management /'mænidsmant/ 52 manager /'mænɪʤə(r)/ 45 manual /'mænjuəl/ 47 manufacture /,mænju'fæktfə(r)/ 52, 57

manufacturing /mænju'fæktfərm/ 52 mark as in exclamation/ question mark /ma:k/ 4 market as in target market /'ma:krt/ 58 market leader /,ma:kit 'li:də(r)/ 56 market research /ma:kit ri's3:tf, 'ri:s3:tf/ 56 marketing /'ma:kətɪŋ/ 58 marks as in quotation marks /ma:ks/ 4 marriage /'mæridy/ 10 mash /mæs/ 17 massive /'mæsrv/ 18 masterpiece /'ma:stəpi:s/ 43 match /mætf/ 23 mate /mert/ 77 material /mo'troriol/ 23 mature /mə'tfuə(r)/ 63 maximum /'mæksıməm/ 45 may /mei/ 36, 59 mean /mi:n/ 6 mean a lot /mi:n a 'lot/ 48 meant as in be meant to /ment/ 22, 61 meantime as in in the meantime /'mi:ntam/ 70 meanwhile /'mi:nwarl/ 70 measure /'mezə(r)/ 73 measurement /'meʒəmənt/ 73 mechanic /məˈkænɪk/ 52 medal /'medl/ 31,46 melody /'melodi/ 44 melt /melt/ 13 member /'membə(r)/ 9 Member of Parliament /member ev 'pa:lement/ 38 member of the public /member ev ðe 'pablik/ 53 memory loss /'memori .los/ 37 mend /mend/ 26 mention /'menfn/ 66 metal /'metl/ 31 method /'meθod/ 1 metric /'metrik/ 79 metric capacity /metrik kə pæsəti/ 79 metric length /metrik 'len0/ 79 metric weight /metrik 'weit/ 79 mice /mais/ 15 middle /'midl/ 33 might /mart/ 36, 59

mild /maild/ 13 miles per hour /mailz per 'aue(r)/ 79 millilitre /'mılili:tə(r)/ 79 millimetre /'mılimi:tə(r)/ 79 military /'mılətri/ 52 minced /mmst/ 17 mind /mamd/ 74 mind as in on your mind /mamd/ 19 mind your head /,mamd jo: 'hed/ 67 minimum /'mmməm/ 45 minor /'mamə(r)/ 35 minority /mar'noreti/ 38 mint /mint/ 16 mirror as in rear-view / wing mirror /'mirə(r)/ 21 miserable /'mizrəbl/ 7 mist /mist/ 13 mistake as in make mistakes /mr'sterk/ 1 misty /'misti/ 13 mixed feelings /mikst 'fi:linz/ 69 moan N, v /moun/ 66 modern /'mpdn/ 69 money /'mani/ 79 monkey /'manki/ 15 mood /mu:d/ 7 moody /'mu:di/ 7 moon /mu:n/ 11 mop /mop/ 27 moral /'moral/ 72 moreover /mo:r'auva(r)/ 68 mosquito /mp'ski:təu/ 15 most as in make the most of /moust/ 71 motivated /'moutrvertrd/ 2 motivation / moutr'verfn/ 2 motorbike /'moutobark/ 79 motorway /'moutower/ 80 mourners /'mo:nəz/ 10 mourning as in in mourning /'mo:nm/ 10 mouse /maus/ 15 movie /'mu:vi/ 42,80 movie theater /'mu:vi ,010to(r)/ 80 moving /mu:vin/ 42 mud /mAd/ 27 muddy /'mʌdi/ 27 mug /mag/ 35 mugger /'magə(r)/ 35 mugging /magn/ 35

manufacturer

/mænju'fæktfərə(r)/ 57

muggy /'mʌgi/ 13
multi-storey car park
/ˌmʌlti ˌstɔ:ri 'kɑ: ˌpɑ:k/ 29
murder n, v /'mɜ:də(r)/ 35
murderer /'mɜ:dərə(r)/ 35
musical instrument
/ˌmju:zɪkl 'mstrəmənt/ 44
musician /mju:'zɪʃn/ 44
mussel /'mʌsl/ 16

mystery /'mɪstri/ 47

nail /neil/ 26 nanny /'næni/ 52 nap as in have a nap /næp/ 19 narrow /'nærəu/ 12 nasty /'na:sti/ 20 national /'næsnəl/ 41 NATO /'nertəu/ 79 natural /'nætfrəl/ 69 nearby /,niə'bai/ 78 neat /ni:t/ 5 necklace /'neklas/ 23 need as in a need for /ni:d/ 38 need as in desperately need /ni:d/ 76 needle /'ni:dl/ 26 negative ADJ /'negativ/ 69 negative n /'negətiv/ 43 negotiate /nr'gəufiert/ 39 neighbourhood /'neibəhud/ 48 neutral /'nju:trəl/ 23,77 nevertheless / nevəðə'les/ 68 nightie /'narti/ 19 nightmare (= bad dream) /'nartmeə(r)/ 19 nightmare (= bad experience) /'naitmeə(r)/ 22 no problem /neu 'problem/ 77 non-alcoholic /,non ælkə'holik/ 72 non-fiction /,non 'fikin/ 47 non-metric /non 'metrik/ 79 nonsense /'nonsns/ 77 not at all / not at 'a:1/ 62 not ... yet /,not ... 'jet/ 70 note as in make a note of /nout/ 1 notice v /'noutis/ 32 notice as in hand in your notice /'nautis/ 53 nothing much /,nAθin 'mAtf/ 77 novel /'novl/ 47 now and again

/nav and a'gen/ 70

nowadays /'nauədeiz/ 70 nuisance /'nju:sns/ 66 number plate /'nʌmbə ˌpleɪt/ 21

obedient /ə'bi:diənt/ 64 obese /əu'bi:s/ 37 obesity /əu'bi:səti/ 37 obey /ə'beɪ/ 64 obey the law /ə,ber ðə 'lɔ:/ 35 object /'pbczekt/ 52 objective /əb'dzektrv/ 58 obligatory /ə'bligətri/ 64 observant /əb'za:vənt/ 32 obvious /'pbviəs/ 2 occasion /ə'kerʒn/ 48 occasionally /ə'kerznəli/ 70 occur /ə'k3:(r)/ 22 ocean /'əʊʃn/ 12 off (= money off) /of/ 18 off as in time off /pf/ 54 wolldage offence /ə'fens/ 35 days and original offend /ə'fend/ 3 offender /ə'fendə(r)/ 35 offensive /ə'fensiv/ 3 oil paints /'oil peints/ 43 oils /oilz/ 43 old-fashioned objection and Ale /ould 'fæsnd/ 69 lindings old friend / ould 'frend/ 8 omit /ə'mɪt/ 4, 75 on board / pn 'bo:d/ 71 on display / on di'splei/ 43 on my mind /pn mar 'maind/ 19 on my way / on mai 'wei/ 22 on purpose / pn 'ps:pss/ 71 on show /, on 'fou/ 43 on the horizon / on de he'raizn/ 12 on the one hand /,pn ðə 'wan ,hænd/ 68 on the other hand / nn ði 'aða hænd/ 68 on the way / on do well 22 on the whole / on oo 'houl/ 76 on time /,on 'taım/ 50 on your mind /, on .jo: 'maind/ 19 one-sided / wan 'saidid/ 46 only child / ounli 'tfaild/ 9 onto /'pntə/ 70 operate /'pparent/ 25

operating costs

/'ppereitin kosts/ 55

operating theatre /'ppereitin , 0 iete(r)/ 25 operation / ppə'reisn/ 25 opinion as in in my opinion /ə'pmjən/ 63 opponent /ə'pəunənt/ 46 opportunity / ppə'tju:nəti/ 1, 50,58 oppose /ə'pəuz/ 38 opposed to /ə'pəuzd tə/ 63 opposition / ppe'zıſn/ 38 Opposition as in the Opposition / ppa'zrsn/ 38 optimistic / pptr'mistik/ 59 optional /'ppfənl/ 64 or /o:(r)/ 68 or else /,o:r 'els/ 68 order as in out of order /'o:də(r)/ 26 orchestra /'ɔ:kɪstrə/ 44 ordinary /'o:dnri/ 42 organ /'o:gən/ 44 organist /'o:gənist/ 44 original /əˈrɪʤənl/ 30 originally /əˈrɪʤənəli/ 9 otherwise /'Aðawaiz/ 68 out loud /aut 'laud/ 34 out of focus /aut av 'faukas/ 43 out of order /aut av 'a:da(r)/ 26 out of the blue /aut əv ðə 'blu:/ 77 out of work / aut av 'wa:k/ 53 outfit /'autfit/ 23 outsider /aut'saidə(r)/ 46 outskirts /'autska:ts/ 22 outstanding /aut'stændin/ 42, oval ADJ, N /'auvl/ 31 oven /'avn/ 17 over /'auva(r)/ 70 over-ambitious /,auvar æm'bisas/ 56 over-optimistic / auver opti'mistik/ 56 over there /, ouvo 'deo(r)/ 70 overall / jouvar's:1/ 46 overall /'auvara:1/ 69 overcharge / ouvo'tfa:d/ 56 overestimate / auvar'estiment/ 56 overhear / auva hia(r)/ 32

overnight / ouvo'nart/ 22

oversleep / ovvo'sli:p/ 19

overtake / ouvo'terk/ 21

overtime /'əuvətaɪm/ 54 owe /əʊ/ 18 own /əʊn/ 18 oyster /'əɪstə(r)/ 16

p (pence) /pi:, pens/ 79 PM (prime minister) /,pi: 'em/ 38 pack /pæk/ 72 painful /'peinfl/ 24, 73 painless /'peinles/ 73 paint /peint/ 33 painter /'peintə(r)/ 33 painting /'peintin/ 33 pale-skinned / peil 'skind/ 5 papaya /pə'paɪə/ 16 paper (= exam paper) /'peipə(r)/ 49 paper (= newspaper) /'perpə(r)/ 79 paperback /'perpəbæk/ 47 parade /po'reid/ 48 parallel /'pærəlel/ 31 parent as in foster parent /'pearant/ 9 parliament /'pa:ləmənt/ 38 particular as in in particular /pə'tıkjələ(r)/ 78 parsley /'pa:sli/ 16 part /pa:t/ 29 participate /pg:'tisipeit/ 46, 48 particular as in in particular /pə'tıkjələ(r)/ 78 particularly /pə'tıkjələli/ 78 parting /'pa:tm/ 28 partly /'pa:tli/ 76 partnership /'pa:tnəʃɪp/ 57 party as in political party /'pa:ti/ 39 pass out /pa:s 'aut/ 20 passage /'pæsidy/ 30 passion fruit /'pæsn fru:t/ 16 patience /'persns/ 6 patient ADJ /'persnt/ 25 patient N /'persnt/ 6 pause /po:z/ 4 pavement /'pervment/ 29 pay /pei/ 55 peace /pi:s/ 39 peace settlement /'pi:s setlment/ 39 peak /pi:k/ 55 pebbles /'peblz/ 12 peel /pi:l/ 17 pence /pens/ 79

penny /'peni/ 79 pension /'pensn/ 41 pensioner /'pensono(r)/ 41 perform /pə'fɔ:m/ 46 performance /po'fo:mons/ 42, perm /p3:m/ 28 permanent /'ps:mənənt/ 69 permit as in work permit /'ps:mrt/ 51 permit v /pə'mɪt/ 64 person as in in person /'p3:sn/ 66 personally /'pa:sənəli/ 63 persuade /pə'sweid/ 38, 74 pessimistic / pesi'mistik/ 59 petrol /'petrol/ 80 photo /'fautau/ 43 photo album /'fautau ,ælbam/ 43 photograph /'fəutəgra:f/ 43 photographer /fə'togrəfə(r)/ 43 photography /fə'togrəfi/ 43 pianist /'pianist/ 44 piano /pi'ænəu/ 44 pick up / pik 'Ap/ 22, 75, 77 PIN (personal identification number) /pm/ 79 pin /pm/ 26 pipe /parp/ 31 pitch /pitf/ 45 pity /'pɪti/ 29 plan /plæn/ 65 plane /plem/ 79 planet /'plænit/ 11 planning /'plænin/ 49 plastic /'plæstik/ 31 pleased /pli:zd/ 69 pleasure /'ple3ə(r)/ 47 pledge N, v /pledy/ 41 plenty /'plenti/ 17 plot /plot/ 42 plug in /,plag 'm/ 72 plum /plam/ 16 plumber /'plamə(r)/ 52 plump /plnmp/ 5 plus /plas/ 68 pocket /'ppkrt/ 23 poem /'paum/ 47 poetry /'pəuətri/ 47 point (= purpose) /pomt/ 66 point (= shape) /point/ 31

point as in there's no point in

... /point/ 66

point as in what's the point of ...? /point/ 66 pointed /'pointid/ 31 poison /'poizn/ 15 poisonous /'poizonos/ 15 pole /paul/ 13 policy /'ppləsi/ 38 polish N, V /'polis/ 27 polite /pə'laɪt/ 69 political party /pa,litikl 'pa:ti/ 38 politician / pplə'tr[n/ 38 pollute /pə'lu:t/ 13 pollution /pə'lu:fn/ 13 pomegranate /'ppmi,grænit/ 16 pond /pond/ 12 pool /pu:l/ 45 pop /pop/ 79 portrait /'po:treit/ 43 position /pəˈzɪʃn/ 51 positive /'pozetry/ 69 postpone /pə'spəun/ 61 potential /po'tens1/ 57 pour /po:(r)/ 13 pouring /'po:rm/ 13 power as in in power /'pava(r)/ 38 powerful /'pauəfl/ 73 powerless /'pauələs/ 73 practical /'præktikl/ 73 praise N, v /preiz/ 46 predict /pri'dikt/ 13 predictable /pri'diktəbl/ 13 prefer /pri'f3:(r)/ 73 preference /'prefrans/ 73 pregnant /'pregnant/ 5 premises /'premisiz/ 67 prepare /pri'pea(r)/ 21 prepared /pri'pead/ 21 present /'preznt/ 47 president /'prezident/ 40 press v /pres/ 32 press as in the press /pres/ 41 pre-tax / pri: 'tæks/ 55 pretend /pri'tend/ 74 pretty (= attractive) /'priti/ 5 pretty (= rather) /'priti/ 76 prevent /prr'vent/ 20 prevention /pri'vensn/ 20 previous /'pri:viəs/ 9 prime minister / praim 'mmstə(r)/ 38 prince /prms/ 40 princess / prin'ses/ 40

pennies /'peniz/ 79

principle as in in principle /'prmsəpl/ 63 print /print/ 43 priority /prar'prati/ 38 prison as in go to prison /'prizn/ 35 private as in in private /'praivet/ 71 private sector /'prarvet sekte(r)/ 52 problem as in no problem /'problem/ 77 process /'prouses/ 51 produce (a film) /prə'dju:s/ 42 produce (goods) /'prodju:s/ 57 producer (of films) /prə'dju:sə(r)/ 42 producer (of goods) /prə'dju:sə(r)/ 57 product /'prodakt/ 52 profession /prə'fesn/ 52 professional /prə'feʃənl/ 46 professor /pro'feso(r)/ 50 profit /'profit/ 55 progress /'praugres/ 2 promise /'promis/ 41 promote /prə'məut/ 53 promotion /prəˈməʊʃn/ 53 pronounce /prə'nauns/ 1 pronunciation /prə nansi'eisn/ 1 proof /pru:f/ 36 properly /'propəli/ 26 property /'propeti/ 35 proposal /prə'pəuzl/ 63 propose /pro'pouz/ 63 prosecute /'prosikju:t/ 36 prosecution / prosi'kju: sn/ 36 prospects /'prospekts/ 53 protect /pro'tekt/ 12 protected /pro'tektid/ 12 protection /prə'tekfn/ 12 protest N /'proutest/ 41 protest v /pro'test/ 41 proud /praud/ 7 prove /pru:v/ 36 provide /pro'vaid/ 3 provided /prə'vaidid/ 68 pub /pab/ 79 public as in in public /'pablik/ 71 public as in member of the public /'pablik/ 53 public as in the public /'pablik/ 53 public house /pablik 'haus/ 79

public sector /.pablik 'sektə(r)/ 52 publish /'pablis/ 41,52 publishing /'pablifin/ 41,52 puddle /'pʌdl/ 12 punish /'panis/ 64 punishment /'panisment/ 64 purchase N, v /'pa:tfəs/ 77 purpose /'pa:pas/ 68 purpose as in on purpose /'p3:pas/ 71 purse /p3:s/ 80 put on weight /, put on 'west/ 17 put back / put 'bæk/ 75 put down /,put 'daun/ 75

put back /,put 'bæk/ 75
put down /,put 'daun/ 75
put off /,put 'pf/ 61
put on /,put 'pn/ 75
put out /,put 'aut/ 75
pyjamas /pə'dʒɑ:məz/ 19

qualifications
/ˌkwolɪfi'keɪʃnz/ 52
quality /'kwoləti/ 56
queen /kwi:n/ 9
question mark
/'kwestʃn ˌma:k/ 4
quit /kwɪt/ 53
quite /kwart/ 76
quotation marks
/kwəʊ'teɪʃn ˌma:ks/ 4

rabbit /'ræbit/ 16 race /reis/ 46 racing driver /'reisin draivə(r)/ 45 railings /'reilinz/ 31 railroad /'reilroud/ 80 rainbow /'rembou/ 13 rainforest /'reinforist/ 13 raise capital /,reiz 'kæpitl/ 55 range as in wide range /reinds/ 2 rare /reo(r)/ 69 rarely /'reəli/ 76 raspberry /'ra:zbəri/ 16 rat /ræt/ 15 rather /'ra:ðə(r)/ 76 rather as in would rather /'ra:ðə(r)/ 62 rather than /'ra:ðə ðən/ 21 reach /ri:tf/ 11 reach an agreement /,ri:tf ən ə'gri:mənt/ 39 react /ri'ækt/ 73 reaction /ri'æksn/ 73

read widely / ri:d 'waɪdli/ 50 readable /'ri:dəbl/ 47 real /'ri:əl/ 69, 73 realism /'ri:əlizəm/ 43 realistic /ri:ə'lıstık/ 43, 58 reality /ri'æləti/ 73 realize /'ri:əlaɪz/ 8 rear /rip(r)/ 70 rear-view mirror / rrə vju: 'mrə(r)/ 21 reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ 69 recall /ri'ko:1/ 74 receding /ri'si:din/ 5 receipt /rɪ'si:t/ 18 recent /'ri:snt/ 70 recently /'ri:sntli/ 70 reception /ri'sepsn/ 10 recipe /'resəpi/ 17 reckon /'rekon/ 63,77 recognition /,rekag'nɪʃn/ 1 recognize /'rekəgnaiz/ 1 record n /'reko:d/ 46 record v (= make a note) /rr'ko:d/ 1 record v (= put onto a disc) /ri'ko:d/ 44 recording /ri'ko:din/ 44 recover /ri'kavə(r)/ 25 recruit /ri'kru:t/ 52 recruitment /rɪ'kru:tmənt/ 52 rectangle /'rektængl/ 31 rectangular /rek'tængjələ(r)/ 31 reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 18, 58, 63 reduction /ri'daksn/ 18,58 redundant /rr'dandant/ 53 reel /ri:1/ 26 ref /ref/ 45 referee (at a sports match) /,refə'ri:/ 45 referee (for a job) / refe'ri:/ 51 referee's assistant /refə,ri:z ə'sıstənt/ 45 reference /'refrans/ 51 reference book /'refrans buk/ 47 refine /rr'fam/ 57 refund /'ri:fand/ 18 refuse /ri'fju:z/ 74 regards as in kind regards /rɪ'ga:dz/ 78 region /'ri:don/ 29 regret /ri'gret/ 8,74 regularly /'regjololi/ 76 relate /ri'leit/ 3

related (= connected) /rr'lertrd/ 3 related (= in the same family) /ri'leitid/ 9 relation /ri'leisn/ 9 relationship as in in a relationship /rɪˈleɪʃnʃɪp/ 8 relative /'relativ/ 9 release (= set free) /rr'li:s/ 40 release N, v (an album) /rɪ'li:s/ 44 relevant /'relevent/ 2,72 reliable /rɪˈlaɪəbl/ 8 relief /rr'li:f/ 49 relieved /rɪ'li:vd/ 49 religious /rɪˈlɪʤəs/ 10 religious ceremony /rr.lidges 'seremeni/ 10 rely on /ri'lar on/ 8,71 remain unchanged /ri,mem an'tfemded/ 55 remind /rr'mamd/ 74 remote /rr'mout/ 69 remove /rɪ'mu:v/ 26 rent /rent/ 22 rep as in sales rep /rep/ 52 repair /rr'peo(r)/ 26 repeat /rr'pi:t/ 1 repetition /repo'tisn/ 1 replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ 26 report /ri'po:t/ 36 represent / repri'zent/ 38 representative /,repri'zentatry/ 52 republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 40 reputation / repju'tersn/ 56 request /rr'kwest/ 51 require /rr'kwarə(r)/ 51 research as in do research /ri's3:tf, 'ri:s3:tf/ 57 research as in market research /rr's3:tf, 'ri:s3:tf/ 56 rescue /'reskju:/ 14 residence as in hall of residence /'rezidens/ 50 resign /rr'zam/ 53 resist /rr'zist/ 46 resistance /rɪ'zɪstəns/ 46 resolve /ri'zplv/ 66 resource /rr'so:s, rr'zo:s/ 58 respond /ri'spond/ 58 response /ri'spons/ 58 responsibility /rr.sponsə'biləti/ 53 responsible (= sensible)

responsible (= having control) /rr'sponsabl/ 53, 71 restless /'restles/ 19 result as in as a result /rr'zalt/ 68 retail /'ri:terl/ 52 retain /rr'tem/ 57 retention /ri'ten [n/ 57 return as in day return /rɪ'ta:n/ 22 revenue as in sales revenue /'revənju:/ 55 reverse /rɪ'va:s/ 21 revise /rr'varz/ 1,50 revision /ri'vi3n/ 50 revolution / revo'lu: fn/ 40 revolve /ri'volv/ 11 reward N, v /ri'wo:d/ 53 rid as in get rid of /rid/ 71 ridiculous /ri'dikjələs/ 73 right as in have the right to /rart/ 54 right-hand /'rart hænd/ 33 ring /rm/ 23 rise /razz/ 13,55 risk /risk/ 25, 56 risky /'rıski/ 56 rival /'rarvl/ 56 roast /roust/ 17 rob /rob/ 35 robber /'robə(r)/ 35 robbery /'robori/ 35 rock /rok/ 12 rocket /'rokit/ 11 rocks /rpks/ 12 role /roul/ 42 roll of film / roul av 'film/ 43 roof /ru:f/ 30 rope /roup/ 26 rosemary /'rəuzməri/ 16 rough (of a surface) /rnf/ 5 rough (of the sea) /rxf/ 12 roughly /'rafli/ 11,76 round /raund/ 31 round trip / raund 'trip/ 80 roundish /'raundis/ 5 row as in have a row /rau/ 8 royal /'rorol/ 9 rub /rab/ 32 rubber /'rabə(r)/ 31 rubbish /'rabis/ 77 rude /ru:d/ 69 rugby player /'ragbi pleiə(r)/ 45 ruin /'ru:m/ 66

rule /ru:1/ 64

/,ranın 'wo:tə(r)/ 20 rural /'ruərəl/ 69 rush /ras/ 29 rush as in in a rush /ras/ 71 rush hour /'raf avə(r)/ 22 sack N, v /sæk/ 53 safety helmet /'seifti helmit/ 57 sales as in the sales /seilz/ 18 sales rep /'seilz rep/ 52 sales representative /'seilz reprizentativ/ 52 sales revenue /'serlz revenju:/ 55 salmon /'sæmən/ 16 salty /'so:lti/ 32 same as in all the same /serm/ 68 sand /sænd/ 12 sandy /'sændi/ 12 satellite /'sætəlart/ 11 satisfaction / sætis fæk [n/ 66 satisfied /'sætisfard/ 69 satisfying /'sætisfam/ 69 saucepan /'so:spen/ 17 save /serv/ 14 saxophone /'sæksəfəun/ 44 saxophonist /sæk'spfənist/ 44 say /ser/ 61 scan /skæn/ 25 scar /ska:(r)/ 5 scare /skea(r)/ 41 scared stiff /,skead 'stif/ 7 scene /si:n/ 33 scholarship /'skpləfip/ 50 science /'sarəns/ 11 science fiction /saions 'fikin/ 47 scientific / sarən'tıfık/ 11 scientist /'saientist/ 11 scissors /'sızəz/ 26, 28 sci-fi /'sar far/ 47 scratch N /skrætf/ 18 scratch v /skrætf/ 34 scream /skri:m/ 34 screw /skru:/ 26 screwdriver /'skru:drarvə(r)/ 26 sea bass /'si: ,bæs/ 16 section /'seksn/ 41 sector /'sektə(r)/ 52,58 secure /sr'kjuə(r)/ 72 see (with your eyes) /si:/ 32

run out /,ran 'aut/ 75

running water

/ri'sponsabl/ 6

see (in your mind) /si:/ 6 seek /si:k/ 67 seem as in it seems to me /si:m/ 63 seldom /'seldəm/ 76 select /sr'lekt/ 3 selection /sr'leksn/ 3 self-confident /,self 'konfident/ 6 Sellotape /'selsterp/ 26 semicolon /, semi'kəulən/ 4 semi-detached /,semidr'tætft/ 30 semi-final /,semi'faml/ 46 seminar /'semma:(r)/ 50 sense /sens/ 33 sense of humour /, sens əv 'hju:mə(r)/ 6 sensible /'sensəbl/ 63 sensitive /'sensatry/ 7 sentence N, v /'sentens/ 36 separate ADJ /'sepret/ 30 separate v /'separeit/ 4 serious /'sieries/ 22, 35 seriously /'sɪəriəsli/ 76 servant as in civil servant /'sa:vent/ 52 service as in civil service /'s3:vis/ 52 services as in emergency services /'s3:visiz/ 22 set the alarm /,set ði ə'la:m/ 19 set up a business /set ap a 'biznas/ 56 settle /'setl/ 66 settlement as in peace settlement /'setlment/ 39 several /'sevrəl/ 41 severe /si'viə(r)/ 52 sew /sau/ 26 sex /seks/ 5 shade /ferd/ 33 shadow /'sædəu/ 33 shake /ferk/ 34 shall /[æl, fəl/ 51 shallow /'sæləu/ 12 shame /ferm/ 29 shape /serp/ 31 shape as in in good/bad shape /serp/ 5 -shaped /ferpt/ 31 share /fea(r)/ 56 shares /feaz/ 56 shark /fa:k/ 15 sharp /fa:p/ 55

sharply /'sa:pli/ 55, 76 shell /sel/ 16 shift work /'sift wa:k/ 54 ship /ʃrp/ 12 shirt /ʃ3:t/ 23 shocked /fpkt/ 69 shocking /'sokin/ 69 shockproof /'spkpru:f/ 73 shoe /fu:/ 23 shoelace /'fu:leis/ 72 shoot /fu:t/ 35 shooting /'su:tɪŋ/ 46 shoplifter /'splifte(r)/ 35 shoplifting /'spliftin/ 35 shopping list /'sppin ,list/ 4 shopping mall /'fppin mo:1, mæl/ 80 shore /so:(r)/ 12 short sleeves / fo:t 'sli:vz/ 23 shoulder /'soulda(r)/ 5 shout /faut/ 34 show as in on show /sou/ 43 show your feelings / ʃəʊ jɔ: ˈfi:lɪŋz/ 7 shutters /'ʃʌtəz/ 30 sick pay /'sik pei/ 54 side as in left/right-hand side /sard/ 33 side (in a war) /said/ 39 sidewalk /'saidwo:k/ 80 sigh /sar/ 34 sight /sart/ 37 sign a contract /sam a kontrækt/ 57 significant /sig'nifikənt/ 55 significantly /sig'nifikantli/ 55 silence /'sailens/ 34 silent /'sailent/ 34 silk /sılk/ 23 silly /'sıli/ 63 silver /'silvə(r)/ 31 similar /'smələ(r)/ 60 similarity /smə'lærəti/ 60 simple /'smpl/ 69 since /sms/ 68 sincerely as in yours sincerely /sm'srəli/ 78 singer as in lead singer /'sma(r)/ 45 single parent /singl 'pearant/ 9 sink /sink/ 12 Sir /s3:(r)/ 78 skid /skid/ 21, 22 skier /'ski:a(r)/ 45

skilful /'skilfl/ 58

skill /skil/ 58 skilled /skild/ 43, 58 skim /skm/ 47 skin /skin/ 5 skinned as in dark/light/paleskinned /skind/ 5 skinny /'skini/ 5 slang /slæŋ/ 3 slash /slæf/ 4 sleep N, v /sli:p/ 19 sleep like a log /sli:p lark a 'log/ 19 sleepy /'sli:pi/ 19 sleeve /sli:v/ 23 slender /'slendə(r)/ 5 slight /slart/ 55 slightly /'slartli/ 55 slim /slim/ 5 slip /slrp/ 23 slipped /slrpt/ 20 slow down / slou 'daun/ 21 small letters /'smo:l ,letəz/ 4 smash /smæf/ 34 smell /smel/ 32 smooth /smu:ð/ 5 smoothly as in go smoothly /'smu:ðli/ 65 snack /snæk/ 17 snake /sneik/ 15 sneeze /sni:z/ 34 snore /sno:(r)/ 19 so /səʊ/ 68 so that /'səv ðət/ 68 soaked /soukt/ 13 soaking wet / saukin 'wet/ 13 sociable /'səufəbl/ 8 social worker /'sausl ,wa:ka(r)/ 52 soft /spft/ 69 solar system /'saula_sistam/ 11 soldier /'səuldə(r)/ 39 solid /'splid/ 13 solo artist /'səuləu a:tist/ 44 solution /sə'lu: sn/ 53 solve a problem /splv a 'problem/ 53 songwriter /'sonrartə(r)/ 44 sorry to bother you /spri tə 'boðə ju:/ 66 sort /so:t/ 43 sort of /'so:t av/ 77 sort out /,so:t 'aut/ 65 sound like /'saund ,lark/ 32 space (= area round planets) /speis/ 11

space (= area that is empty) /spers/ 29 spacious /'sperfos/ 30, 69 specialist /'spefəlist/ 25 specialized /'spefəlaizd/ 2 spectacular /spek'tækjələ(r)/ 48 spectators /spek'tertəz/ 45 speech as in make a speech /spi:tf/ 10 speed /spi:d/ 79 speed limit /'spi:d ,limit/ 21 speedometer /spi:'domito(r)/ 21 spicy /'sparsi/ 73 spider /'spaido(r)/ 15 spinach /'spinitf, -ids/ 16 spite as in in spite of /spart/ 68 split up /split 'Ap/ 8 spoil /spoil/ 66 spot /spot/ 59 spots /spots/ 15 spray /sprei/ 34 spread /spred/ 13 square ADJ, N /skweə(r)/ 31 squeeze /skwi:z/ 34 squid /skwid/ 16 stab /stæb/ 35 stability /stə'bıləti/ 55 stable /'sterbl/ 55 stadium /'sterdiam/ 45 stain /stem/ 26 staircase /'steakers/ 30 stand as in can't stand /stænd/ 62 stand for /'stænd fo:(r), fo(r)/ 79 standard /'stændəd/ 45 stare /stea(r)/ 32 star /sta:(r)/ 11 starve /sta:v/ 14 starve to death /sta:v tə 'de0/ 14 stay the same /ster ðə 'serm/ 55 steadily /'stedili/ 55 steady /'stedi/ 55 steal /sti:1/ 35 steel /sti:l/ 31 steep /sti:p/ 12 steer /stra(r)/ 21 steering wheel /'strarm wi:1/ 21 stepbrother /'stepbraðə(r)/ 9 stepdaughter /'stepdo:to(r)/ 9 stepfather /'stepfa:ðə(r)/ 9

stepmother /'stepmodə(r)/ 9 stepsister /'stepsisto(r)/ 9 stepson /'stepsan/ 9 stick /strk/ 26 stick together /stik tə'geðə(r)/ 26 stiff as in scared stiff /stif/ 7 still /strl/ 68 still life / stil 'laif/ 43 sting /stm/ 15 stink /stmk/ 32 stir /sta:(r)/ 17 stock /stok/ 55 stocky /'stoki/ 5 stone (= seed of a fruit) /staun/ 16 stone (= building material) /staun/ 30 stop as in full stop /stop/ 4 stop off /stop 'pf/ 22 storage /'sto:rids/ 30 store n /sto:(r)/ 80 store v /sto:(r)/ 30 straight /strett/ 31 straightaway / streite wei/ 25 stranger /'stremcho(r)/ 78 strategy /'strætədsi/ 58 stream /stri:m/ 12 strength /strenθ/ 58 stress (= emphasis) /stres/ 3 stress (= anxious state) /stres/ 54 stressful /'stresfl/ 54 strict /strikt/ 64 strike /straik/ 14 striking /'straikin/ 48 string /strin/ 26 stripe /stram/ 15 stroke /strauk/ 37 strongly /'stronli/ 76 struggle N, v /'stragl/ 56 stubble /'stabl/ 5 stuck /stak/ 22 studio /'stju:diou/ 43 stuff /staf/ 77 stupid /'stju:pid/ 6 style (in fashion) /stail/ 23 style (= way sth is written or drawn) /stail/ 3,43 stylish /'starlif/ 23 subject to /'sabdakt to/ 51 substantial /səb'stænsl/ 30 suburb /'sab3:b/ 29 subway (= path under a road/

subway (= underground railway) /'sabwei/ 80 succeed /sək'si:d/ 49 success /sək'ses/ 49 successful /sək'sesfl/ 25 such as /'satf əz/ 4 sudden /'sʌdn/ 14 suddenly /'sʌdənli/ 14 suede /sweid/ 23 suffer from /'safe from/ 19 suit /su:t/ 23 suitable /'su:təbl/ 42 sun /san/ 11 supplier /sə'plaɪə(r)/ 56 supply N /sə'plai/ 14 supply v /sə'plaɪ/ 56 support N, v (= agreement/ agree) /sə'po:t/ 63 support v (= help) /sə'po:t/ 9 support v (= follow a team) /sə'pɔ:t/ 45 supporters /sə'po:təz/ 45 supporting role /sə'pɔ:tɪŋ ˌrəʊl/ 42 supportive /sə'pɔ:tɪv/ 7 suppose as in I suppose so /sə'pəuz/ 65 supposed as in be supposed to /sə'pəuzd/ 61 sure as in make sure /ʃuə(r)/ 53,66° surface /'ss:fis/ 12 surfer /'s3:f2(r)/ 57 surgeon /'ss:don/ 25 surgery /'s3:dori/ 24 surrender /sə'rendə(r)/ 39 surrounded by /sə'raundıd bai/ 29 surrounding ADJ /sə'raundın/ 14 surroundings N /sə'raundıŋz/ 14 survival /sə'varvl/ 15,56 survive /sə'varv/ 15,56 suspect /'saspekt/ 36 suspicious /sə'spɪʃəs/ 69 swallow /'swolau/ 67 swear /swea(r)/ 42 swearing /'swearin/ 42 sweater /'swetə(r)/ 23 sweep /swi:p/ 27 sweetcorn /'swi:tko:n/ 16 sweets /swi:ts/ 80 swimmer /'swimp(r)/ 45 swimming pool /'swimin_pu:1/ 45

250 WORD LIST

railway) /'sabwei/ 29

switch off /,swiff 'pf/ 75 switch on /,swiff 'pn/ 75 swollen /'swoulen/ 20 syllable /'silepl/ 3 symbol /'simbl/ 3 sympathetic /,simpe'0etik/ 7 symptom /'simptem/ 20 system as in solar system /'sistem/ 11

t (tonne) /tan/ 79 tail /terl/ 15 take a tooth out /teik a 'tu:0 aut/ 24 take advantage of / terk ad'va:ntida av/ 71 take after /'teik a:fta(r)/ 9,75 take care / terk 'keo(r)/ 77, 78 take care of / teik 'kear av/ 25, 52,71 take notes / teik 'nouts/ 50 take out / terk 'aut/ 50, 55 take over / teik 'auva(r)/ 56 take part in / terk 'pa:t m/ 46, take pictures / terk 'prktfoz/ 43 take place / teik 'pleis/ 36, 46 take sb on / terk 'on/ 56 take sth off / terk 'pf/ 75 take time off /terk tarm 'of/ 54 takeover /'teikəuvə(r)/ 56 talent /'tælent/ 44 talented /'tæləntɪd/ 44 tallish /'to:lis/ 5 tan /tæn/ 5 tanned /tænd/ 5 tap /tæp/ 32 target v /'ta:git/ 58 target market /,ta:git 'ma:kit/ 58 task /ta:sk/ 27 taste /teist/ 32 tax /tæks/ 55 tear as in burst into tears /tip(r)/34tear up / tear 'Ap/ 34 technique /tek'ni:k/ 43 television /'telrvi3n/ 79 tell /tel/ 5 telly /'teli/ 79 temper as in keep/lose your temper /'tempə(r)/ 66

temporarily /'temprərəli/ 20

temporary /'temprəri/ 69

tend /tend/ 74

tendency /'tendensi/ 74 tennis player /'tenis pleio(r)/ 45 terrible /'terabl/ 66 terribly /'terabli/ 76 terrified /'terrfard/ 7, 69 terrifying /'terrifamy/ 69 test /test/ 25 text /tekst/ 1 the accused /oi ə'kju:zd/ 36 the defence /oa dr'fens/ 36 the outskirts /ði 'autska:ts/ 22 the point is /oe 'point iz/ 63 theater as in movie theater /'θιətə(r)/ 80 theft /0eft/ 35 theory as in in theory /θrari/ 63 therefore /'ŏeəfɔ:(r)/ 68 these days /'ði:z deiz/ 70 thesis /'0i:sis/ 50 thief /0i:f/ 35 think /0mk/ 63 think as in I (don't) think so $\theta mk / 65$ third quarter /,θ3:d 'kwo:tə(r)/ 55 thoroughly /'0arəli/ 20 though /ðəu/ 68 though as in even though /ðau/ 68 thread /0red/ 26 threat /0ret/ 41,58 threaten /'oretn/ 41 thrilled /0rild/ 7 throughout /0ru:'aut/ 70 throw /θrau/ 48 throw away / Orou o'wei/ 27 thyme /tam/ 16 tidal wave /'taidl werv/ 14 tide /taid/ 12 tidy up / taidi 'Ap/ 27 tie /tai/ 26 tie up / tai 'Ap/ 72 tied up / taid 'Ap/ 61 tiger /'targə(r)/ 15 tighten /'tartn/ 26 tights /tarts/ 23 time as in from time to time /taim/ 70 time as in in time /tam/ 50 time as in on time /tam/ 50 time off / taim 'pf/ 54 tiny /'tami/ 30 tip /tip/ 21, 58

title /'tartl/ 47

to a certain extent /tu a 'sa:tn ik stent/ 76 to go /tə 'gəu/ 70 to some extent /tə 'sam ık, stent/ 76 toast as in drink a toast /taust/ 10 together as in get together /tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61 tolerance /'tolerans/ 6 tolerant /'tolerant/ 6 toll as in death toll /tol/ 14 ton /tan/ 48 tonne /tʌn/ 79 tools /tu:lz/ 26 tooth /tu:0/ 24 toothache /'tu:θeik/ 24 top /top/ 33 totally /'təutəli/ 76 touch /tatf/ 32 toward /tə'wo:d/ 70 towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ 70 toy /tor/ 31 track /træk/ 45 trade union / treid 'ju:nion/ 54 traditional /trə'dıfənl/ 10 traffic jam /'træfik dæm/ 22 train /trem/ 52 training /'tremny/ 52 transfer /træns'f3:(r)/ 43, 53 transform /træns'fo:m/ 23 translate /træns'leit/ 1 translation /træns'leisn/ 1 trap /træp/ 14 trapped /træpt/ 14 trash /træs/ 80 trash can /'træf kæn/ 80 travel /'trævl/ 76 travel agent /'trævl_eident/ 52 treat /tri:t/ 24, 25 treatment /'tri:tmont/ 24, 25 trend /trend/ 55 trial /'traiol/ 36 triangle /'trarængl/ 31 triangular /trar'ængjələ(r)/ 31 trim N, V /trim/ 28 trip /trip/ 22 tropical /'tropikl/ 73 trouble /trabl/ 22 trout /traut/ 16 truck /trak/ 80 trumpet /'trampit/ 44 trumpeter /'trampitə(r)/ 44 trunk /trank/ 15 trust /trast/ 8

try /trai/ 36
tube /tju:b/ 34
tuition fees /tju'rfn ,fi:z/ 50
tune /tju:n/ 44
turkey /'ts:ki/ 15
turn down /,ts:n 'daon/ 77
turn up /,ts:n 'Ap/ 22
turnover /'ts:nəʊvə(r)/ 55
tutor /'tju:tə(r)/ 50
TV (television) /,ti: 'vi:/ 79
two as in fold in two /tu:/ 34
typhoon /tai'fu:n/ 14
tyre /'taiə(r)/ 21, 31

UFO (unidentified flying object) /ju: ef 'au/ 79 **UN (United Nations)** /ju: 'en/ 79 UEFA /ju'erfə/ 79 umpire /'Ampaiə(r)/ 45 unacceptable /, anak 'septabl/ 72 unambitious / næm'bifəs/ 6 unconscious /, n'konfos/ 20 underestimate /, ander 'estiment/ 56 undergraduate /, \nda'grædjuat/ 50 underneath /, and θ'ni:θ/ 70 underpants /'Andapænts/ 23 underwater /, \ndə'wo:tə(r)/ 12 underwear /'Andawea(r)/ 23 undo /, An'du:/ 72 unemployed /, nnm'ploid/ 53 unexpected / nnik spektid/ 69 unfair /, nn'feo(r)/ 72 unfasten /, An'fa:sn/ 72 unhealthy /, n'helθi/ 17 union /'ju:niən/ 54 universe /'ju:niv3:s/ 11 unless /ən'les/ 68 unlikely / An'laikli/ 59 unlimited / n'limitid/ 58 unload /, n'laud/ 72 unlock / An'lok/ 72 unpack /, n'pæk/ 72 unplug /,nn'plag/ 72 unpredictable /, Anpri'diktəbl/ 13 unreasonable /, \n'ri:znabl/ 69 unskilled / n'skild/ 58 unsuitable / nn'su:təbl/ 42

up as in it's up to me /Ap/ 64 up as in what's up? /Ap/ 77 up to /'Ap tə/ 15 upset /Ap'set/ 7 upturn /'Apts:n/ 58 urban /'s:bən/ 69 urgent /'s:dənt/ 25 useful /'ju:sfl/ 73 useless /'ju:sləs/ 73

VAT (value added tax) /,vi: ei 'ti:/ 79 vacancy /'verkənsi/ 51 vacation /və'kersn/ 80 vacuum /'vækjuəm/ 27 vacuum cleaner /'vækjuəm kli:nə(r)/ 27 vague /verg/ 77 valid /'vælrd/ 22, 51 value N. v /'vælju:/ 18 van /væn/ 22 vanish /'vænɪʃ/ 13 variety /vəˈraɪəti/ 43 vary /'veəri/ 15, 43 veal /vi:l/ 16 vehicle /'vi:əkl/ 22,52 versatile /'va:sətail/ 23 vertical /'vs:tikl/ 31 very /'veri/ 7 vest /vest/ 23 vet /vet/ 79 victim /'viktim/ 36 violence /'varələns/ 14, 35 violent /'varələnt/ 14,35 violin /varə'lın/ 44 violinist /varə'lmıst/ 44 vital /'vartl/ 69 vitally /'vartəli/ 76 v-neck /'vi: nek/ 23 voice /vois/ 44 volcanic /vol'kænik/ 14

waistcoat /'weiskəut/ 23
wake /weik/ 19
wall /wo:l/ 30
walled /wo:ld/ 30
wallet /'wolit/ 80
war /wo:(r)/ 39
ward /wo:d/ 25
warmth /wo:m0/ 33
warn /wo:n/ 67, 74
warning /'wo:nij/ 22, 67
washable /'wofəbl/ 73
washing up /wofij 'np/ 27

volcano /vol'kemau/ 14

vote N, v /vout/ 38

waste of money /, weist av 'mani/ 17, 18 waste of time /weist ov 'taim/ 17 watch /wotf/ 32 watch out / wotf 'aut/ 21,67 water as in running water /'wo:ta(r)/ 20 watercolour /'wo:təkalə(r)/ 43 waterfall /'wo:təfo:l/ 12 waterproof /'wo:təpru:f/ 73 wave /weiv/ 12 wave as in tidal wave /werv/ 14 wax /wæks/ 31 way as in on my/the way /wei/ 22 weakness /'wi:knos/ 58 wealthy /'welθi/ 18 wedding /'wedin/ 10 wedding reception /'wedin ri,sepsn/ 10 weigh /wei/ 15 weight /weit/ 15 weightlifting /'weitliftin/ 46 well /wel/ 25 well built / wel 'bilt/ 5 well informed / wel m'fo:md/ 47 well known / wel 'noun/ 47 well off / wel 'of/ 18 well written / wel 'ritn/ 47 whale /werl/ 15 what about ...? /'wpt a baut/ 61 what do you think about ...? /wot do ju: Onk a baut .../ 63 what does your job involve? /wot daz jo: dab/ m'volv/ 53 what for? / wpt 'fo:/ 77 what's more / wots 'mo:(r)/ 68 what's the point of ...? /'wots ðə pəmt əv/ 66 what's up with ...? /wots ,Ap wið '.../ 77 what've you been up to? /wotev ju: bm 'Ap tu:/ 77 wheel /wi:l/ 21 whereas / wear'æz/ 68 whether /'weðə(r)/ 78 while as in after a while /wail/ 2 whisper /'wispo(r)/ 34 whistle /'wisl/ 29

untie /, An'tai/ 72

unwilling /ˌʌnˈwɪlɪŋ/ 39

unwrap / An'ræp/ 72

whole /həul/ 41 whole as in on the whole /haul/ 76 wide /ward/ 12, 45 wide awake / ward ə werk/ 19 wide range / ward 'reinds/ 2 widely /'wardli/ 76 widow /'widou/ 10 widower /'widouo(r)/ 10 width /wid0/ 12, 45 wife /waif/ 10 wild (= living in natural conditions) /warld/ 15 wild (= exciting and enjoyable) /waild/ 48 will /wil/ 10 willing /'wılın/ 39 win /win/ 42 windscreen /'windskri:n/ 21 windscreen wiper /'windskri:n ,waipə(r)/ 21 wing /win/ 15 wing mirror /'win ,mirə(r)/ 21 winner /'wmə(r)/ 42 wipe /warp/ 27 wiper as in windscreen wiper /'warpə(r)/ 21 wire /'waia(r)/ 26 wish /wis/ 10 wishes as in best wishes /'wɪʃɪz/ 78 witness /'witnes/ 36 wonder /'wandə(r)/ 29 words as in in other words /w3:dz/ 11 wood /wod/ 31 wooden /'wudn/ 31 wool /wul/ 31 woollen /'wolan/ 31 work (= get a result) /w3:k/ 1 work (= function) /w3:k/ 26 work as in out of work /w3:k/ 53 work as in shift work /ws:k/ 54 work of art /ws:k əv 'a:t/ 43 work out /ws:k 'aut/ 75 work overtime / ws:k 'auvatam/ 54 work permit /'ws:k ps:mit/ 51 working conditions /'wa:kin kən dısnz/ 54 worldwide /wa:ld'waid/ 45 worth /w3:θ/ 18 would rather / wud 'ra:ðə(r)/ 62 wound /wu:nd/ 20 wrap up / ræp 'Ap/ 72 wrestling /'reslin/ 46 wrinkles /'rmklz/ 5 write a thesis / rait a '0i:sis/ 50 writing as in in writing /'raitin/ 66 wrong /ron/ 26 wrong as in go wrong /rpn/ 8, 65

x-ray /'eks rei/ 25

yawning /ˈjɔ:nɪŋ/ 19 yeah /jeə/ 77 you must be joking /ju: ˌmʌst ˌbi ˈʤəʊkɪŋ/ 77 you're joking /jɔ: ˈʤəʊkɪŋ/ 77 youngish /ˈjʌŋɪʃ/ 5 yours faithfully /jɔ:z ˈfeɪθfəli/ 78 yours sincerely /jɔ:z sɪnˈsɪəli/ 78

zoom lens /'zu:m ,lenz/ 43

Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain English Centre, Valencia, Spain Tti School of English, London, UK Bell International, London, UK Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House, Bath, UK Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank:

Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.

The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material.

Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko (Poland); Ilaria Milisenna (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinnirello (Colombia); and Nina Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.

Suzanne Williams for picture research.

Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0x2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008 2012 2011 2010

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the EUT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462004 8

Printed in China

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by Anne Cakebread pp 12, 13, 20, 21, 58, 79; Mark Duffin pp 36, 56, 62, 86, 115, 116, 164, 197, 198; Stephane Gamain p 8; Nick Hawken pp 38, 53, 55, 93, 100, 174; Gavin Reece pp 30, 40, 48, 67, 78, 92; Willie Ryan pp 29, 41, 47, 51, 60, 64, 66, 76, 77, 87, 89, 97, 103, 104, 119, 120, 135; Tony Sigley pp 32, 61, 99, 118, 179.

Commissioned photography by MM Studios pp 7, 8 (hand and pencil), 53 (kidney), 53 (carp).

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp 44 (earthquake/Yoshiaki Nagashima/ Pacific Press Service), 46 (gorilla/David Fleetham), 52 (plum/Tim Hill), 52 (grapefruit/Keith Leighton), 52 (avocado/Iconotec), 52 (passion fruit/ foodfolio), 52 (papaya/Iconotec), 52 (pomegranate/Keith Leighton), 52 (spinach/ignazuri), 52 (chick peas/Sara Danielsson/Bon Appetit), 52 (fennel/Tim Hill), 52 (artichoke/Sue Wilson), 52 (asparagus/Emilio Ereza), 52 (beetroot/Emilio Ereza), 52 (parsley/artpartner-images. com), 52 (mint/foodfolio), 52 (basil/foodfolio), 52 (thyme/foodfolio), 52 (rosemary/foodfolio), 53 (trout/Brigitte Krauth/Bon Appetit), 53 (Tim Hill), 53 (squid/Iconotec), 53 (lobster/Dieter Heinemann/Photostock), 53 (crab/D. Hurst), 53 (clam/Theresa Raffetto/Bon Appetit), 74 (hospital ward/WR Publishing), 84 (house/Malcolm Fairman), 98 (police arrest/ Arthur Turner), 114 (oil paints/Andrew Paterson), 114 (watercolours/ Chris Rose), 116 (Dex Image), 124 (Rio Carnival/Demetrio Carrasco/ Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 153 (Sam/John Eccles), 159 (Janine Wiedel Photolibrary), 171 (niceartphoto), 174 (Tony Craddock/Images Etc Ltd); Corbis pp 24 (Franck Seguin/TempSport), 42 (the earth/NASA), 42 (rainforest/Louise Murray/Robert Harding World Imagery), 44 (hurricane/Henry Romero/Reuters), 44 (volcano/Jim Sugar), 46 (eagle/ Daniel J. Cox), 47 (shark/Stuart Westmorland), 74 (operating theatre/ Mediscan), 90 (Georges Seurat, Bathers at Asnières, 1883-84, The National Gallery/By kind permission of the Trustees of the National. Gallery, London), 90 (Georges Seurat, Sunday Afternoon on the Island of La Grande Jatte, 1884-86, The Art Institute of Chicago/The Gallery Collection), 98 (courtroom/Heide Benser/zefa), 114 (portrait/Self-Portrait by Mary Cassatt ca. 1880/Smithsonian Institution, Washington DC), 114 (landscape/ Vincent van Gogh, Landscape with Green Corn, 1889/The Gallery Collection), 114 (still life/ Paul Cezanne, Fruit on a Cloth, ca. 1890/The Gallery Collection), 114 (abstract painting/ Wassily Kandinsky, Improvisation with Green Center (No. 176), 1913/Burstein Collection/Barney Burstein © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2008); Courtesy of Gecko Headgear p 146 (www.geckoheadgear.com); Getty Images pp 22 (Dan/Justin Pumfrey/Iconica), 22 (Giles/Victoria Snowber/ Photographer's Choice), 28 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix Inc./Time & Life Pictures), 28 (Bill Clinton/Scott Morgan), 44 (drought/ Angelo Cavalli/Stone), 46 (lion/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (tiger/ Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (monkey/Tatsuhiko Sawada/amana images), 46 (fly/James Cotier/Stone), 46 (whale/Jeff Hunter/Riser), 46 (mosquito/Frank Greenaway/Dorling Kindersley), 52 (raspberry/ Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 52 (fig/Christian Teubner/ StockFood Creative), 52 (broccoli/Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 74 (x-ray/Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice), 83 (Jonnie Miles), 101 (3D4Medical.com), 104 (Alexander Nemenov/AFP), 124 (La Tomatina festival /Jose Jordan/AFP), 158 (London Express/ Hulton Archive), 165 (E. Dygas), 193 (Lyn Holly/Photographer's Choice RR); MorgueFile.com pp 84 (brick wall/bosela), 84 (stone wall/bosela); Photolibrary.com pp 44 (tidal wave/Vince Cavataio/Pacific Stock), 53 (veal/Philip Wilkins/Fresh Food Images), 53 (cod/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 53 (oyster/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 153 (Jake/Ulrika Malm/Nordic Photos), 154 (Photodisc); Punchstock pp22 (Kaz/Stockbyte), 46 (bee/Don Farrall/Photodisc), 46 (shark/DLILLC), 52 (apricot/C Squared Studios/Photodisc), 52 (celery/ Stockbyte), 53 (calf's liver /Foodcollection.com), 53 (duck meat/ Foodcollection.com), 53 (rabbit meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (sea bass/ Foodcollection.com), 53 (mussel/Melba Photo Agency), 98 (fingerprints/ Steve Allen/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 152 (Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 153 (Boss/Purestock), 155 (Stockbyte); Rex Features pp 37, 124 (cherry blossom festival/Sinopix Photo Agency Ltd); Royalty-free pp 46 (leopard/Photodisc), 46 (spider/Photodisc), 46 (elephant/Ingram), 46 (camel/Photodisc), 46 (bear/Photodisc), 46 (snake/Photodisc), 47 (snake/ Ingram), 52 (coconut/Ingram), 52 (leek/Photodisc), 52 (sweetcorn/ Stockbyte), 173 (Photodisc); Science Photo Library p 74 (scan/just SPL) Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.u Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

Intermediate

Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)

See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English

Practise using the vocabulary

Revise what you've learned

Improve your vocabulary-learning skills

Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



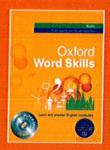
Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

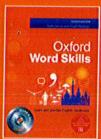


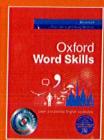
It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills







OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt



